# Eulachon past and present

by

Megan Felicity Moody

B.Sc., The University of Victoria, 2000

A THESIS SUBMITTED IN PARTIAL FULFILMENT OF
THE REQUIREMENTS FOR THE DEGREE OF

MASTER OF SCIENCE

in

The Faculty of Graduate Studies

(Resource Management and Environmental Studies)

THE UNIVERSITY OF BRITISH COLUMBIA
(Vancouver)

March 2008

# Abstract

The eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus)*, a small anadromous smelt (Family Osmeridae) found only along the Northwest Pacific Coast, is poorly understood. Many spawning populations have suffered declines but as their historic status is relatively unknown and the fisheries poorly documented, it is difficult to study the contributing factors. This thesis provides a survey of eulachon fisheries throughout its geographical range and three analyses aimed at improving our understanding of past and present fisheries, coast-wide abundance status, and the factors which may be impacting these populations.

An in-depth view of the Nuxalk Nation eulachon fishery on the Bella Coola River, Central Coast, BC, is provided. The majority of catches were used for making eulachon grease, a food item produced by First Nations by fermenting, then cooking the fish to release the grease. Catch statistics were kept yearly from 1945-1989 but have since, rarely been recorded. Using traditional and local ecological knowledge, catches were reconstructed based on estimated annual grease production. Run size trends were also created using local Fisheries Officers and Nuxalk interview comments.

A fuzzy logic expert system was designed to estimate the relative abundance of fifteen eulachon systems. The expert system uses catch data to determine the exploitation status of a fishery and combines it with other data sources (e.g., CPUE) to estimate an abundance status index. The number of sources depended on the existing data and varied from one to eight. Using designed heuristic rules and by adjusting weighting parameters a final index was produced. Results suggest that there have been recent and extended declines in several eulachon rivers particularly the Klamath, California; Bella Coola, BC; Wannock, BC; and Kitimat, BC. Seven of the fifteen abundance time-series were used to evaluate the potential relationships between the declines and some of the factors that impact eulachon. Results suggest increases in shrimp and hake catches, seal and sea lion abundance, and sea surface temperatures were weakly associated with the declines. But contrary to expectations, adult hake biomass showed a positive association with four eulachon relative abundance time-series, suggesting that common environmental factors influenced both species.

# Table of contents

# List of tables

# List of figures

# Acknowledgements

I would first like to thank the members of the Nuxalk Nation who took part in the research I conducted within their community. I am extremely appreciative for their willingness to participate and for volunteering their time so that I may understand and document the importance and the demise of the Nuxalk eulachon fishery. I would also like to thank the local experts, government workers and the members of several First Nation communities (specifically members of the Tsimshian, Haisla, Wuikinuxv, Da'naxda'xw/Awaetlala and Tsawataineuk Nations) who took time during this project to discuss eulachon issues and to also allow me access to their valuable information

I am very grateful for the opportunity I had to learn from and work with the members of my committee- Doug Hay and Steve Martell - whose knowledge and insight was very much appreciated and my supervisor, Tony Pitcher - who was instrumental in motivating me and helping to structure the thesis.

I would also not have been able to complete this project without the generous help and advice provided to me by the students of my graduate group (Fisheries Ecosystem Restoration Research) to whom I am extremely grateful. I would like to extend a special thank you to Dr. William Cheung who spent a great deal of his time discussing and explaining to me the complexities of fuzzy logic. His patience and willingness to help always amazed me. And to Divya Varkey who was always willing to help with coding and statistics problems.

Thank you, to my family, friends and community who have continued to support and encourage me throughout my graduate school experience. With a special thank-you to my parents and siblings who have listened, shared their own experiences, and extended never-ending support.

And last but not least, I'd like to thank, Nigel Haggan, who first convinced me to attend grad school and then provided the final edits to the draft.

I would finally like to thank the Nuxalk Education Authority for sponsoring me throughout the duration of my project and the Faculty of Graduate Studies at the University of British Columbia for financial support in the form of a fellowship.

# Co-authorship statement

The research for Chapters 2-5 of this Thesis were identified and designed by myself, with the help of my supervisor, Tony J. Pitcher. I performed all research, data analysis and manuscript preparation of these chapters. Tony J. Pitcher also reviewed the prepared manuscripts and also helped with the data analysis used in these chapters. William Cheung, a postdoctoral student, reviewed the prepared manuscript for Chapter 4 and helped to develop the fuzzy logic system used in the data analysis for this chapter.

# 1 Introduction

The eulachon, *Thaleichthys pacificus*[1] (Richardson 1863), a small anadromous smelt (Family Osmeridae), is found only along the North American Pacific Coast from northern California to the southern Bering Sea. It is commonly recognized as the ooligan, eulachon, hooligan, olachen, olachon, oolachan, oolichan, and oulachan. The origin of its name was originally derived from the Chinook Indian trade language. However, each First Nation group possesses a different word for the fish specific to their own language. It has also been termed the 'candlefish', as its high oil content allows it to burn like a candle when dried (Swan 1880) and the 'salvation' fish, as it historically arrived when First Nations people were starving or low on winter food supplies, "should the run of oolachans fail, hundreds of Indians literally die of starvation" (Bland n.d.). The eulachon was first recorded in British Columbia (BC) waters, in 1866, after specimens were collected near Vancouver Island (Clemens and Wilby 1961). In this paper the fish will be referred to as 'eulachon' as this is the most common spelling in today's literature.

## 1.1 Problem statement

Eulachon feed on plankton at sea and return to rivers only to spawn, where the eggs hatch and the larvae drift back out to sea. Eulachon have historically returned to approximately ninety-five rivers along the Pacific Northwest Coast (= the Northeast Pacific; BC: 35 rivers, Hay and McCarter 2000; Alaska: ~35 rivers, Kito 2000; Washington and Oregon: 20 rivers, Willson *et al*. 2006; California: 5 rivers, Odemar 1964). The number of total eulachon rivers varies depending on how one classifies an eulachon river. Here, an eulachon river is defined as one that has been previously documented or one has previously had an annual eulachon fishery. Nearly all eulachon spawning runs from California to southeastern Alaska have shown some sign of decline especially since the mid 1990s (Hay and McCarter 2000) and some of these rivers no longer have eulachon returning to them in harvestable numbers. The reason for the recent, sharp decline remains uncertain. My interest in the eulachon originates from my home town, Bella Coola, BC, the traditional territory of the Nuxalk Nation. I am a

[1] Translated means "oily fish of the Pacific"

member of the Nuxalk Nation and previously fished for eulachon as a child. Eulachon historically returned to the Bella Coola River in masses, but in the spring of 1999, they failed to return and today the run remains a very small fraction of its historical size. The Nuxalk community has suffered an enormous loss with the disappeaence of the Bella Coola eulachon, as the fish and the production of grease, formed an integral part of the Nuxalk culture. In November 2001, I was hired as the Nuxalk Fisheries Program manager. One of my main tasks was to design and manage an annual Nuxalk eulachon study. The study ultimately assessed the population status and the biology of the Bella Coola eulachon population. Since the 2002, I have either managed or been indirectly involved with the annual study. The possible impacts that may have affected the Bella Coola eulachon population and other eulachon populations along the Pacific Northwest Coast are difficult to study, as data for each area is limited and much of the existing data is unpublished, and lies scattered throughout the offices of First Nations, private consultants and provincial, state or federal governments. An understanding of the past history of the eulachon is critical when studying the possible reasons for the decline of the species.

## 1.2 Background

### 1.2.1 Biology

Eulachon return to most rivers in the early spring to spawn. In BC, they return in peak abundance to the Nass, the Kemano and the Bella Coola Rivers during March and to the more southern BC runs, the Fraser, the Kingcome and Klinaklini Rivers in April. Maps of all river locations will be shown in Chapter 2. The more southern Columbia River, Washington/Oregon run peaks in abundance during February (Washington & Oregon Departments of Fish and Wildlife (WDFW & ODFW) 2005) several months earlier than the runs in Alaska. In Southeastern Alaska eulachon can spawn as early as April whereas in the Central and Western Alaskan rivers they can return as early as May (Alaska Department of Fish and Game 2007). The one common aspect of these rivers is that they have a spring freshet that is typical of glacial rivers (Hay and McCarter 2000).

Mature eulachon are dark blue-grey with black speckling and a silvery white underbelly. They range in size from 135 to 151 mm (total length) in the offshore waters of California (Odemar 1964); the mean standard lengths in the Fraser River, BC, 150 to 180 mm (Hart and McHugh 1944) and in the Nass River, BC, 161 to 177 mm (Langer *et al.* 1977); and 100 to 253 mm (fork length) in the Twentymile River, Alaska (Spangler 2002). Spangler *et al.* (2003) suggest that the larger body size of eulachon in northern rivers is the result of the more favorable feeding conditions in northern latitudes. The sex of the fish can easily be distinguished during spawning, as males have a longer pelvic fin, a rougher texture, nuptial tubercles on the skin, and a large mass of muscle that develops along the lateral line. The female is smaller, smoother, shiner and has a smaller pelvic fin. Fecundity increases with age, length and weight (Spangler 2002) and generally ranges between 20,000 and 40,000 eggs (Hay and McCarter 2000).

Spawning occurs primarily over small gravel and coarse sand in moderately flowing water (Smith and Saalfeld 1955). The fertilized eggs are approximately 1 mm in diameter and have an outer membrane that ruptures to form an adherent peduncle which attaches itself to the substrate (Parente and Snyder 1970). Artificially fertilized eggs taken from the Cowlitz River, a tributary of the Columbia River, were found to hatch in 19 days in 9.4°C to 12.7°C water (369.6 Accumulated Thermal Units (ATUs)) (Smith and Saalfeld 1955) and those taken from the Bella Coola River, in 54 days in ~6°C water (~340 ATUs) (Moody 2004). Newly hatched eulachon larvae are transparent, approximately 4 mm in length and feeble swimmers which move at the mercy of the river current (Parente and Snyder 1970). There is little information on where juvenile eulachon inhabit in the marine environment. Barraclough (1964) suggests that eulachon larvae and juveniles spend a considerable portion of their first two years in the plankton-rich echo-scattering layers of coastal waters. The location and marine abundance of juvenile and pre-adult eulachon in BC waters has been estimated since 1973 by the Department of Fisheries and Oceans (DFO) from eulachon caught as by-catch in trawl fisheries and in multi-species research trawls (Hay and McCarter 2000).

The age of eulachon maturity has been estimated in the past by counting the annual rings of scales or the spatial deposition of rings on hard structures such as otoliths. Using these methods, the age of the Columbia River eulachon has been estimated between three and four

years (Smith and Saalfeld 1955), the Kitimat River, BC eulachon, between three and six years (Pederson *et al*. 1995) and the Copper River, Alaska, eulachon between three and five years (Joyce *et al.* 2004). Recently, Clarke *et al.* (2007) have suggested that whole eulachon otoliths possess numerous dark bands or "psuedo annuli" which make identifying the specific increments difficult and thus may be wrongly interpreted. Researchers in the past have admitted to the difficulty of interpreting eulachon scales and otolith readings and have expressed doubts concerning the accuracy of their results (Ricker *et al.* 1954). Therefore, Clark *et al*. (2007) used an alternative method which examined the seasonal oscillation of Ba:Ca concentrations in eulachon otoliths. This method estimated the age of eulachon maturity from five rivers and determined that the more southerly populations spawned at an earlier age. The Columbia River eulachon were estimated to spawn after 2 years; the eulachon from the three BC rivers (Fraser, Kemano and Skeena) after three years; and the Copper River, Alaska, eulachon after four years.

### 1.2.2 Importance of the eulachon

Eulachon are an important prey species for marine and freshwater fish, mammals and birds as they provide a large amount of energy rich food during the spring when food supplies are low. The Nuxalk people of Bella Coola and the Wuikinuxv people of Rivers Inlet both identified the beginning of their eulachon runs with the arrival of seagulls (*Larus occidentalis*), eagles (*Haliaeetus leucocephalus*), seals (*Phoca vitulina)* and sea lions (*Eumetopias jubatus*) (Winbourne 2002). Collison (1916) witnessed eulachon followed into the mouth of the Nass River BC, by "hundreds of seals, porpoises (*Phocoena vomerina)*, sea-lions, and fin back whales (*Balaenoptera physalus)*, feasting both on the olachans and upon one another." In 1997, the area-wide bird and mammal tallies for Berners Bay, Southeastern Alaska, during eulachon runs to the Berners, Lace and Antler Rivers, were 36,500 avian predators, including 536 bald eagles, and 422 marine mammals (Steller sea lions and harbour seals) (Marston *et al.* 2002). During this study mammalian predators were found to commonly feed on eulachon in the lower reaches of the rivers whereas the birds fed farther upriver on weak or dead eulachon. The benefit for predators in consuming eulachon during this time rather than other prey is the high energy to cost ratio (Marston *et al.* 2002) because eulachon are extremely high in lipids, the raw fish oil content has been measured at 11.21%

(Daughters 1918), 16.7% (Kuhnlein *et al.* 1996), and 15.0 to 25.3% (Iverson *et al.* 2002) and minimal time is needed to capture the weak swimming fish. In addition, eulachon spawn at a time of year when many predators have high energy costs, for example, reproductive success (Sigler *et al.* 2004). Marine fish, such as dogfish (*Squalus acanthias)*, salmon (*Oncorhynchus* spp.), hake (*Merluccius productus*), Pacific cod *(Gadus macrocephalus)* and lingcod (*Ophiodon elongates)* have also been identified as predators of the eulachon (Barraclough 1964) and in fresh water eulachon are a large part of a sturgeon's (*Acipenser transmontanus*) diet during the spring (Prince 1899).

Eulachon are also a particularly important to First Nations people. They are eaten fresh, dried, smoked, salted, and frozen whole, however, the product of greatest cultural, nutritional, social and economic value is the 'grease' rendered from the fish. Eulachon grease was produced by First Nations groups of the Central and the North Coasts of BC and by some First Nations groups in Alaska. The First Nations south of Knight Inlet did not produce grease but caught eulachon for smoking and for fresh consumption. Eulachon grease is produced from aged or rotted fish that are cooked until the oil of the fish has separated and can be removed. The grease is a very nutritious food that is high in unsaturated fats and is superior at providing vitamin A, E and K when compared to other common fat sources (Kuhnlein *et al*. 1982). The grease is used as a staple in many First Nations diets and is distributed widely in potlatches, traded with neighbouring Nations and relied upon as a medicine. The importance of grease is best signified by the ancient trade routes used to link the coastal First Nations with the interior First Nations. These routes are famously referred to as "grease trails" as the heaviest traffic occurred during the eulachon season to trade for grease (Collison 1941).

## 1.3 Research objectives

Although the eulachon is of great importance to First Nations people its low commercial value has resulted in limited recording of past catches and few assessment surveys of spawning abundance. Thus the status of many eulachon systems is only known through hearsay and the extent and cause of eulachon population declines are unknown. This project aims to summarize the information on eulachon that exists, gather new information from the

local knowledge of the First Nations people, synthesize this material to examine the past history of Pacific North Coast eulachon fisheries, estimate the past and present status of specific eulachon populations, and identify any significant impacts that may have been responsible for recent declines.

## 1.4 Thesis outline

The thesis is organized into six chapters, of which 2-5 comprise potential publications in reports or peer reviewed journals. This is the first chapter, which gives background information on the biology of the eulachon, its importance, states the objectives of the research, and outlines the structure of the manuscript. Chapter 2 introduces the reader to the geographic range of the eulachon, separates this range into 7 areas, and summarizes each area's current and past eulachon fishery, past catches, past declines, current run status, and past/present management. An extensive literature review was conducted using the internet and by contacting known eulachon experts from First Nations organizations, government agencies, and private consultants. Sources included published and unpublished reports, local Fisheries Officer reports and videos on eulachon fisheries (Elsey 1964; Cranmer and National Film Board of Canada 1999) and eulachon grease making.

The importance of the eulachon to coastal First Nations communities is illustrated in Chapter 3 by a detailed description of the Nuxalk Nation eulachon fishery on the Bella Coola River (map in section 2.4.2.3) in the Central Coast of BC. Traditional Ecological Knowledge (TEK) and Local Ecological Knowledge (LEK) information was gathered during 29 interviews with Nuxalk grease makers and eulachon fishers. The information was used to reconstruct past catches based on the ratio of raw eulachon used to produce eulachon grease. The interviews also provided background information on the Nuxalk eulachon fishery, changes that have occurred in the fishery, abundance trends, and details on the grease making process.

As the historic status of spawning eulachon populations along the Pacific North Coast is largely unknown, Chapter 4 uses a fuzzy logic expert system to estimate the relative abundance of 15 eulachon systems. Fuzzy logic uses fuzzy sets or terms to define general categories instead of presenting specific numbers as alternative to classical mathematics. The

transition from one category to another is gradual with some states having greater or lesser membership probability than another (Cox 1999). The fuzzy expert system for this project uses catch data to determine the exploitation status of a fishery and combines this information with other data sources (e.g. catch-per-unit-effort data (CPUE)) to estimate an annual abundance status index. The final annual abundance indices are estimated by combining the abundance levels derived from each available data source, based on designed heuristic rules and by adjusting weighting parameters.

Chapter 5 summarizes the hypotheses regarding the recent decline of several eulachon populations along the Pacific North Coast. The estimated indices derived from Chapter 4 are used to evaluate the potential relationships between eulachon declines and some of the possible factors impacting these populations, for example, intensification of the shrimp by trawl fishery resulting in increased eulachon by-catch, changes in climate indices, and increases in eulachon predators such as, seals or hake.

The final chapter provides a summary of the three components of this thesis and their results. The strengths and the weaknesses of the approaches discussed in addition to how the thesis results can be used by future researchers and fisheries managers.

# References


Barraclough, W.E. 1964. Contribution to the marine life history of the eulachon *Thaleichthys pacificus*. *Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada* **21**(5): 1333-1337.

Bartlett, L. & Dean, A. 2007. Eulachon: wildlife notebook series. Alaska Department of Fish and Game. Retrieved January 20, 2007, from http://www.adfg.state/ak.us/pubs/notebook/fish/eulachon.php

Bland, H. n.d. The oolachan or candle fish. *British Columbia Magazine*. [no volume: 703-4]

Clarke, A., Lewis, A., Telmer, K. & Shrimpton, J. 2007. Life history and age at maturity of an anadromous smelt, the eulachon *Thaleicthys pacificus* (Richardson). *Journal of Fish Biology* **71**: 1-15.

Clemens, W.A. & Wilby, G.V. 1946. Fishes of the Pacific Coast of Canada (1st edition). Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin no. 68. 368 p.

Clemens, W. A. & Wilby, G. V. 1961. Fishes of the Pacific Coast of Canada (2nd edition). Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin no. 68 (rev.). 443 p.

Collison, H. 1941. The oolachon fishery. *British Columbia Historical Quarterly* **5**(1) (January): 25-31.

Collison, W. H. 1916. *In the wake of the war canoe: a stirring record of forty years' successful labour, peril, and adventure amongst the savage Indian tribes of the Pacific Coast, and the piratical head-hunting Haidas of the Queen Charlotte Islands, B. C.* The Museum Book Company, Toronto, Ontario.

Cox, E. 1999. *The fuzzy systems handbook: a practitioner's guide to building, using, and maintaining fuzzy systems*. AP Professional, San Diego, California.

Cranmer, B & National Film Board of Canada. 1999. Tlina: the rendering of wealth. Nipkish Wind Productions in co-production with the National Film Board of Canada. Colour, 50 minutes.

Daughters, M. R. 1918. The food value of eulachon. *The Journal of Biological Chemistry* **35**(22): 297-299.

Elsey, A. 1964. Grease: a documentary of the Nuxalk Nation and the ooligan oil production on the Bella Coola River. A film by Al Elsey. Colour, 30 minutes.

Hart, L. & McHugh, J. 1944. The smelts of British Columbia. *Fisheries Research Board of Canada* **64**: 10-14.

Hay, D. E. & McCarter, P. 2000. Status of the eulachon *Thaleichthys pacificus* in Canada. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Canadian Stock Assessment Secretariat, research document 2000/145. 92 p.

Iverson, S., Frost, K. & Lang, S. 2002. Fat content and fatty acid composition of forage fish and invertebrates in Prince William Sound, Alaska: factors contributing to among and within species variability. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* **241**: 161-181.

Joyce, T. L., Lambert, M. B. & Moffitt, S. 2004. Eulachon subsistence harvest opportunities final report. Office of subsistence management, United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Cordova, Alaska.

Kito, B. 2000. Eulachon Research Council May 2000. Minutes summarizing meetings in New Westminister, Terrace and Bella Coola, BC. In formal report prepared jointly by BC Forests and Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 24 p.

Kuhnlein, H., Chan, A., Thompson, J. & Nakai, S. 1982. Ooligan grease: a nutritious fat used by native people of coastal British Columbia. *Journal of Ethnobiology* **2**(2): 154-161.

Kuhnlein, H., Yeboah, F., Sedgemore, M., Sedgemore, S. & Chan, H. 1996. Nutritional qualities of ooligan grease: a traditional food fat of British Columbia First Nations. *Journal of Food Composition and Analysis* **9**(4): 18-31.

Langer, O.E., Shepherd, B.G. & Vroom, P.R. 1977. Biology of the Nass River eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*). Department of Fisheries and Environment Canada, Technical report series no. PAC/T-77-10. 56 p.

Marston, B. H., Willson, M. F. & Gende, S. M. 2002. Predator aggregations during eulachon *Thaleichthys pacificus* spawning runs. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* **231**: 220-239.

Moody, M. F. 2004. 2003 Nuxalk Nation incubation studies of the eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*). Nuxalk Nation Fisheries Department, Bella Coola, British Columbia.

Odemar, M. W. 1964. Southern range extension of the eulachon, *Thaleichthys pacificus*. California Department of Fish and Game **50**(4): 305-307.

Parente, W. D. & Snyder, G. R. 1970. A pictorial record of the hatching of early development of the eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*). *Northwest Science* **44**(1): 50-57.

Pedersen, R. V. K., Orr, U. N., and Hay, D. E. 1995. Distribution and preliminary stock assessment (1993) of the eulachon, *Thaleichthys pacificus*, in the lower Kitimat River, British Columbia. Canadian manuscript report of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences no. 2330. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Prince Rupert, BC, North Coast Division and Habitat and Enhancement Branch, Pacific Biological Station. 23 p.

Prince, E. 1899 The food of the sturgeon. *Canada Sessional Papers,* Department of Marine and Fisheries, 1898, 1vi-1v.

Richardson, J. 1836. The fish. *In*: Fauna Boreali-Americana; or the zoology of the northern parts of British America: containing descriptions of the objects of natural history collected on the late northern land expeditions, under the command of Sir John ranklin, R.N. Fauna Boreali-Americana Part 3: i-xv + 1-327, page 226. Note from Langer *et al.* (1977): "Apparently describes type specimen from Columbia River locality (named *Salmo* (*Mallotus*) *Pacificus*)."

Ricker, W. E., Manzer, D. F., and Neave, E. A. 1954. The Fraser River eulachon fishery, 1941-1953. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, manuscript report no. 583. 35 p.

Sigler, M. F., Womble, J. N. & Vollenweider, J. J. 2004. Availability to Steller sea lions (*Eumetopias jubatus*) of a seasonal prey resource: a prespawning aggregation of eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*). *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Science* **61**: 1475-1484.

Smith, W. E. & Saalfeld, R. W. 1955. Studies on Columbia River smelt, *Thaleichthys pacificus* (Richardson). Washington Department of Fisheries, fisheries research papers 1(3): 3-26.

Spangler, E. A. K. 2002 The ecology of eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*) in Twentymile River, Alaska. M.S. Thesis. Fairbanks: University of Alaska.

Spangler, E. A., Spangler, R. E. & Norcross, B. L. 2003. Eulachon subsistence use and ecology investigations. United States Fish and Wildlife Service office of subsistence management, fisheries resource monitoring program, final report no.00-041, Anchorage, Alaska.

Swan, J. G. 1881. The eulachon or candle-fish of the Northwest Coast. Proceedings of the United States National Museum **3**: 257-264. Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collection 1882, 22, article 1. Smithsonian Institution, Washington.

Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife & Oregon Department of Fish Wildlife. 2005. Joint staff report concerning commercial seasons for sturgeon and smelt in 2006.

Willson, M., Armstrong, R., Hermans, M. & Koski, K. 2006. Eulachon: a review of biology and an annotated bibliography. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Juneau, Alaska.

Winbourne, J. L. 2002. 2002 Central Coast eulachon project: final report of traditional ecological knowledge surveys. Consultant's report prepared for the Oweekeno-Kitasoo-Nuxalk Tribal Council. Bella Coola, British Columbia.

# 2 A review of historical eulachon fisheries[2]

Approximately ninety-five rivers across its endemic range in the Pacific Northwest are known to have had regular or intermittent, eulachon spawning populations (BC: 35 rivers, Hay and McCarter 2000; Alaska: ~35 rivers, Beth Kito 2000; Washington and Oregon): 20 rivers, Willson *et al*. 2006; California: 5 rivers, Odemar 1964). However, some of these rivers no longer have eulachon returning to them in harvestable numbers. The possible impacts are difficult to study, as data for each area are limited. Much of the existing data are unpublished and lie scattered throughout the Pacific North Coast in offices of First Nations, private consultants and provincial, state or federal governments. This chapter summarizes the past and current information on eulachon fisheries and eulachon populations. As information is limited, only 'key' eulachon systems will be discussed, for example, those which have previously been documented and/or those which have been regularly fished by either a First Nations group or by a commercial fleet. The information collected will then be used in Chapter 4 to estimate the coast-wide abundance of 15 eulachon systems. Chapter 5 uses these abundance estimates to test some of the hypotheses suggested for the recent decline of eulachon populations.

## 2.1 Sources of information

An extensive literature review was conducted using the internet and known eulachon experts from First Nations organizations, government agencies, and private consultants. Sources include: published and unpublished reports, local fisheries officer reports, as well as, videos on eulachon fisheries and eulachon grease making (Elsey 1964; Cranmer and National Film Board of Canada 1999). Formal and informal meetings[3] were also attended in order to discuss current and past eulachon issues and to meet new eulachon experts and gather additional information.

[2] A version of this chapter will be submitted for publication. Moody, M.F. and Pitcher T.J. A review of historical eulachon fisheries.

[3] A workshop to determine research priorities for eulachon, February 20-22, 2007, Richmond, BC
Eulachon crisis gathering 2007, June 11-12, 2007, Bella Coola, BC

The information collected was divided into seven geographical areas: California, Oregon/Washington, South, Central and Northern BC, Southeastern Alaska and South Central Alaska (Figure 2.1) each mapped and discussed in a section of this chapter. Local First Nation's traditional territory rivers are identified for each area, along with other First Nations who were historically invited to fish in the area. A separate section discusses BC's former commercial eulachon fishery. Current and past fisheries (First Nation, commercial, or recreational), past catches, past declines, current run status, and past/present management are also discussed.

## 2.2 Geographic range

The portion of the Pacific North Coast which encompasses eulachon bearing rivers, extends from Bristol Bay in the southern Bearing Sea (Hay 1995) in the north to the offshore areas of Northern California (Odemar 1964) in the south. Figure 2.1 displays the seven geographical areas and the sub-areas or rivers they encompass. Alaska is divided into two coastal sections: Southeastern and South Central Alaska. Southeastern Alaska covers the areas of Lynn Canal/Berners Bay, the Ketchikan area and the Yakutat area, while the South Central Alaskan region includes the Copper River of Prince William Sound and the rivers of Cook Inlet. British Columbia has been divided into three sections: the North, the South and the Central Coasts. The North Coast includes discussion of the Skeena and Nass Rivers. The Central Coast covers Johnstone Strait, Bella Coola, Rivers Inlet, Douglas Channel and the Gardner Canal. The South Coast includes the Fraser River Area. In the United States, Washington and Oregon make up one section and are represented by the Columbia River and its tributaries. California has a separate section on its six potential eulachon-bearing rivers.

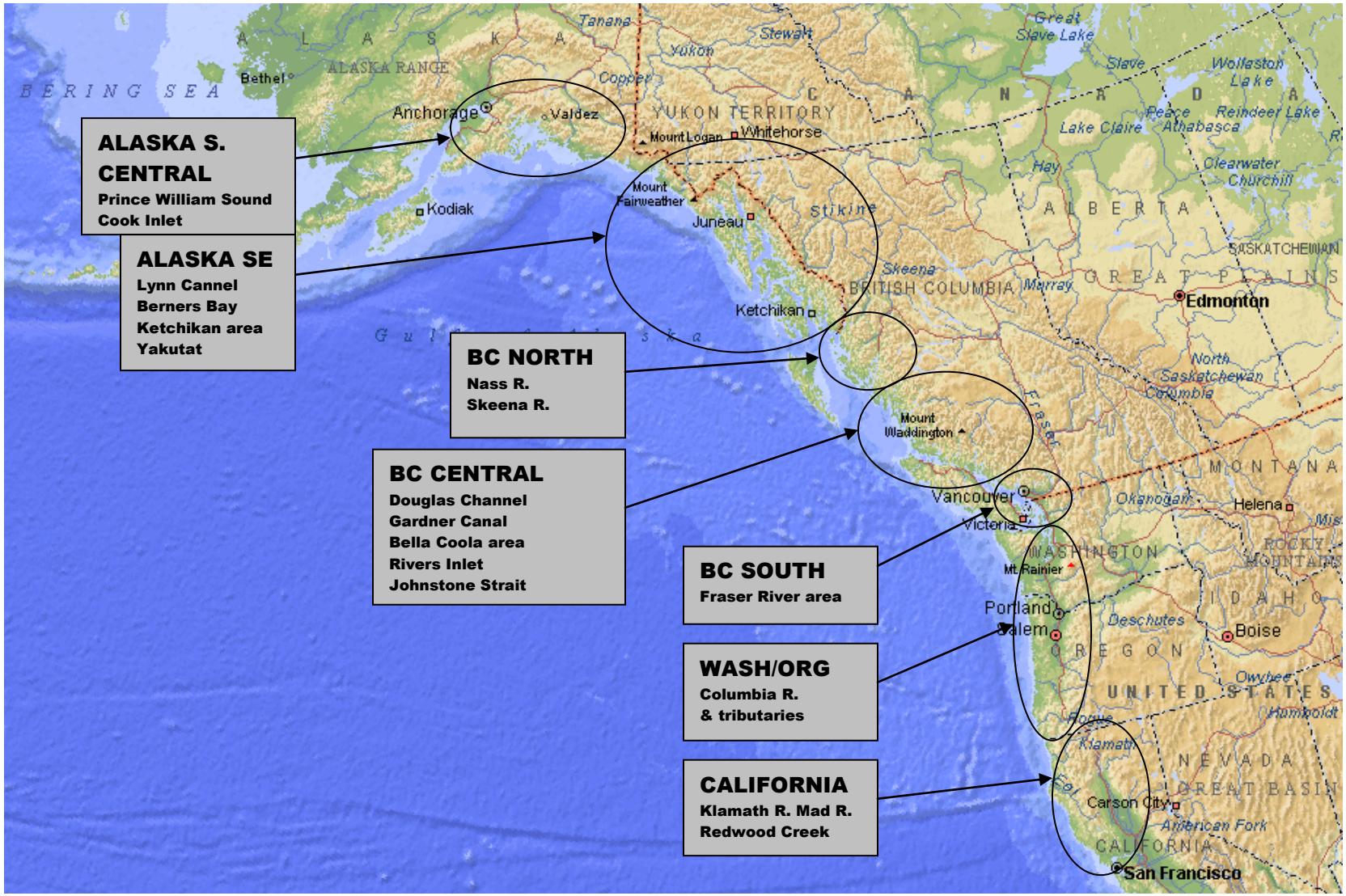



Figure 2.1. Locations of areas with eulachon runs on the Pacific North Coast.

## 2.3 Alaska

Approximately 35 rivers in Alaska are reported to have eulachon returns, (Kito 2000). The largest are: the Unuk, Stikine, Taku, Mendenhall and Chilkat Rivers in Southeastern Alaska, the Situk River near Yakutat, the Copper River near Cordova and the Kenai, Susitna and Twentymile Rivers in Cook Inlet (Bartlett and Dean 1994). The eulachon in the southeastern rivers return as early as April, while the central Alaskan rivers, commonly return in May (Bartlett and Dean 1994). The coast of Alaska has been divided into two sections: Southeastern Alaska and South Central Alaska.

### 2.3.1 South Central Alaska

#### 2.3.1.1 Prince William Sound

The Copper River located east of Prince William Sound (Figure 2.2) and is one of the larger eulachon rivers in Alaska (Bartlett and Dean 1994). The Copper River Delta, from the west to east, consists of the five other known eulachon spawning systems: the Eyak River, Ibeck Creek, the Scott River, Alaganik Slough and the Martin River (Table 2.1). Although the Copper River Delta is not located immediately in Prince William Sound it is managed under the Prince William Sound Eulachon Smelt Management Plan (Moffit 2002) and thus is categorized into this sub area. There are two fishing sectors, the subsistence fishers (which include tribal and non-tribal fishers) and a small commercial fishery. First Nation people are referred to as 'tribal members' in the United States. Most of the tribal catch in the past has come from: Ibeck Creek, the Alaganik River and the Copper River (Joyce *et al*. 2004). The closest community to the Copper River is Cordova. Alaskan First Nations, from the Eyak Tribe, reside in Cordova and in the villages of Chenega and Tatitek. The eulachon return to this region in several waves, with the largest wave commonly returning during May, however, in recent years eulachon have been found as early as January and as late as June (Joyce *et al*. 2004).

Table 2.1. Eulachon rivers located along the South Central Coast of Alaska

| Area | Eulachon spawning sites | Past/Present Fisheries |
|---|---|---|
| **Prince William Sound Area**[a] | Copper, Martin, Alaganik Slough, Scott, Ibeck and Eyak R. | Small tribal fishery<br>Small recreational<br>Small commercial |
| **Cook Inlet** | Susitna (Big and Little), Kenai, Kasilof, Twentymile R. | Small tribal fishery<br>Small recreational<br>Small commercial |

[a]Reported by Moffitt *et al.* 2002

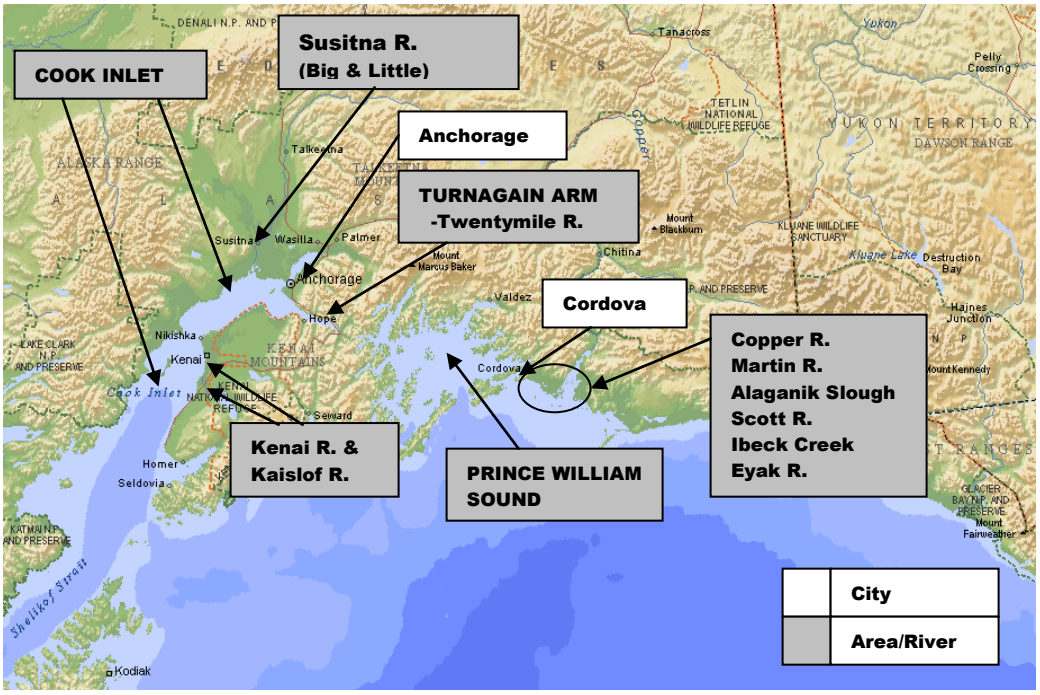



Figure 2.2. Locations of eulachon spawning rivers, with reference cities, in the South Central Coast Area of Alaska.

The commercial fishery in this area began in 1995 as result of dramatic decreases in commercial catches of eulachon and eulachon abundance in the southern Columbia and Fraser rivers (Moffit *et al*. 2002). The Copper River commercial eulachon fishery was first conducted in both the marine and fresh water and managed through an open-access Commissioners permit. Initially eulachon were caught in marine waters by purse seine and in fresh water by dipnet. However, there were no significant catches until 1998, when a total of 78.3 t was landed (Figure 2.3) (Moffit *et al*. 2002). For greater control, the Alaskan Board of Fisheries established the Prince William Sound eulachon smelt management plan in 1999 and

changed the fishery to a departmental test fishery. This test fishery was conducted by dip net only in the fresh water, with a maximum allowable catch (MAC) of 272 t (Moffit *et al*. 2002). The MAC was reduced in 2000 to 182 t, due to the "apparent low abundance of fish" in 1999, which resulted in a total catch of 59.2 t (Moffit *et al*. 2002). The MAC was again reduced in 2001 to 136.5 t because the Department had not completed the biomass estimate; and a total of 71 t were caught in 11 days (Moffit *et al*. 2002).

The Alaskan Department of Fish and Game estimated the biomass for 2001 at Flag Point Channel located at the 27 mile bridge in the Copper River between 2300 and 8000 t (Moffit *et al.* 2002). In 2002, the test fishery bid was rejected and no commercial fishery took place. This same year subsistence users expressed concerns regarding the commercial fishery. The Native village of Eyak requested an emergency closure to the river for all fishers, except for federally qualified subsistence users. Community subsistence needs were estimated during the 2002 and 2003 eulachon seasons, and ranged up to 5 t annually (Figure 2.3) (Joyce *et al*. 2004). Thus the biomass estimated in 2002 would seem more than sufficient to fulfill subsistence needs, however, there was no final statement made regarding what the sufficient amount was. The study did conclude that information gathered during the study would be used to assist in determining future eulachon subsistence needs for the Copper River Delta.

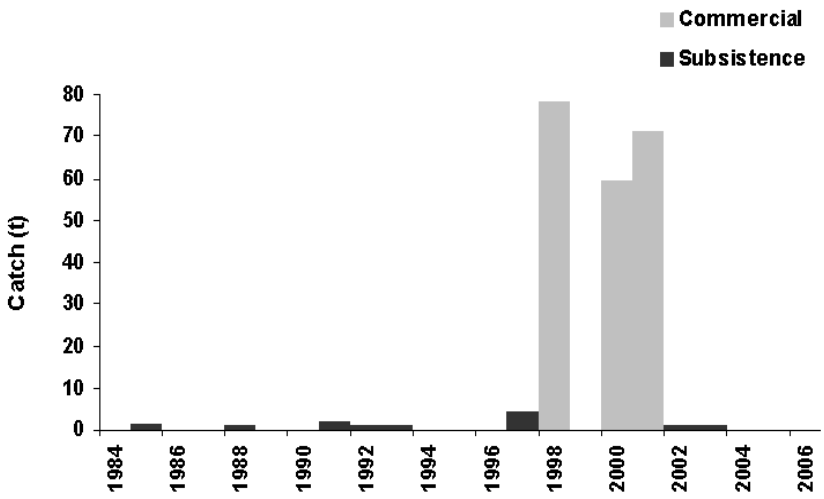



Figure 2.3. Eulachon commercial and subsistence catch from the Copper River Delta. Source: Joyce *et al.* 2004; Moffit *et al.* 2002.

### 2.3.1.2 Cook Inlet

The Upper Cook Inlet area has two large eulachon runs, the Susitna and the Kenai and a smaller run that returns to the Twentymile River (Table 2.1). Portage Creek and the Placer River, both adjacent to the Twentymile River, were reportedly fished for eulachon in the past (Spangler *et al.* 2003). Eulachon start to return to Cook Inlet from mid-May to mid-June (Shields 2005). This area supports subsistence and personal use fisheries and a limited commercial fishery.

The personal use fishery can occur in both salt (gillnet) and fresh water (dip net) with no bag or possession limits (Shields 2005). Most of the catch from this fishery occurs in the Twentymile and the Kenai Rivers. The annual catches ranged between 2 and 5 t from 1993 to 2003 (Figure 2.4) (Shields 2005). These catch estimates are possibly under-reported as some participants confuse subsistence and personal use catch and currently there are no records for subsistence catch (Shields 2005). However, a study conducted on the Twentymile River in 2002 estimated the subsistence use at 14.9 t (Spangler *et al*. 2003) whereas the ADFG reported the total 2002 personal use smelt catch at 4.1 t (Shields 2006).

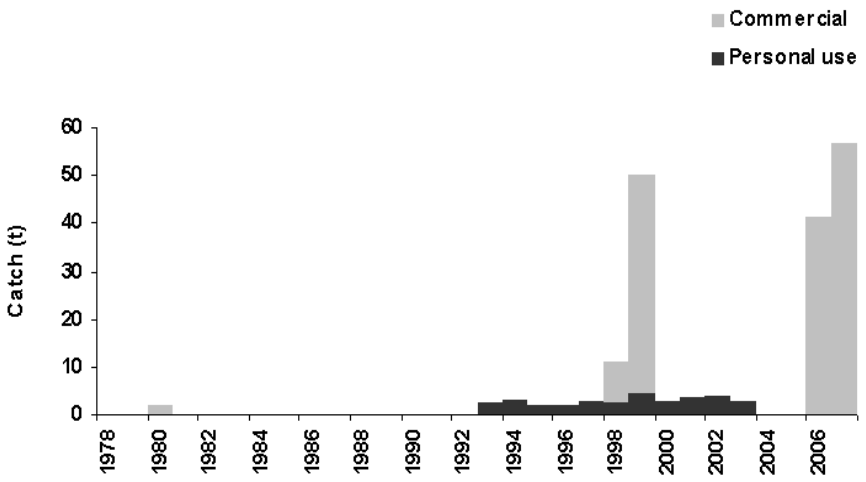



Figure 2.4. Eulachon commercial and sport catch from Cook Inlet.
Source: Moffit *et al.* 2002; Joyce *et al.* 2004.

Commercial catches have only been recorded in 4 seasons: 1978, 1980, 1998 and 1999. The catches ranged from 300 pounds (0.14 t) to 100,000 pounds (45 t) caught in 1999 (Figure 2.4)

(Shields 2005). The commercial fishery had a catch limit of 45 t, until after the 1999 season (Shields 2006). All catches occurred in salt water near the Susitna River and gear was limited to gillnet use, but the catch increased after dip nets were allowed in 1998. The Alaskan Board of Fisheries closed the entire commercial fishery after the 1999 season, after they adopted the Forage Fish Management Plan. The fishery was reopened in 2005 with a total catch limit of 100 t but was limited to dip net capture in salt water. There was no fishery in 2005, primarily due to logistical issues involved with getting the catch to market (Patrick Shields pers. comm. 2007). Although there has been no biomass assessment calculated in this area, the stocks are believed to be plentiful, "undoubtedly be measured in thousands of tonnes, likely even 10's of thousands of tonnes" (Shields 2005). The 2006 and 2007 season had commercial catches of approximately 41 and 56.7 t and eulachon returns appear to be strong with no declines in abundance seen over the past two decades (Patrick Shields pers. comm. 2007).

### 2.3.2 Southeastern Alaska

Southeastern Alaska has approximately sixteen eulachon rivers (Willson *et al.* 2006) and has been divided into three areas: the area surrounding Ketchikan, the area of Lynn Cannel/Berners Bay, and the Yakutat area (Figure 2.5 and Table 2.2). As only the Unuk River, the Chilkat/Chilkoot Rivers and the Berners Bay rivers have information on eulachon, only they will be discussed in this section.

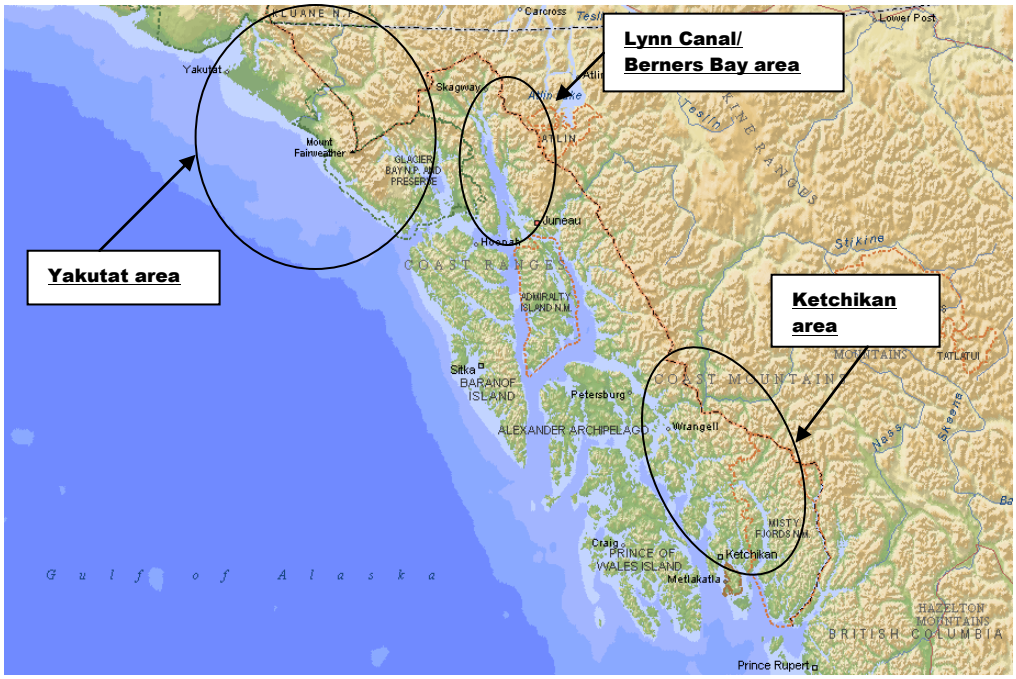



Figure 2.5. General locations of eulachon spawning rivers in Southeastern Alaska.

Table 2.2. Eulachon rivers located along the Southeastern Alaskan Coast

| Area | Eulachon spawning sites | Past/Present fisheries |
|---|---|---|
| Ketchikan | Wilson/Blossom, Chickamen, Klahini, Hooligan, Grant, **Unuk**, Bradfield and Stikine Rivers | Small tribal fishery<br>Small recreational |
| Lynn Cannel/ Berners Bay | Endicott, **Chilkat/Chilkoot**, Ferebee, **Taiya,** Skagway and Katzehin, **Berners, Lace, Antler**, Eagle, Mendenhall, Taku, Speel, Whiting and Excursion Rivers | Small tribal fishery<br>Small recreational |
| Yakutat | Dixon, Fairweather, Sea Otter, Clear, Doame, Alsek, Akwe, Italio, Dangerous, Ahmklin, Situk, Lost | Unknown |

Source: sites compiled by J.N. Womble and reported in Willson *et al.* 2006

### 2.3.2.1 Ketchikan Area

The rivers located nearest to Ketichikan, northeast of the city, include the Wilson/Blossom, Chickamen, Klahini, Hooligan, Grant and Unuk Rivers (Figure 2.6). The runs in this area are considered small when compared to other runs, such as the Copper River of Prince William

Sound (Bartlett and Dean 1994). Fisheries for eulachon in this area include subsistence and personal use, however, from 1969 to 1999 eulachon were sold commercially (United States Forest Service (USFS) 2006). Since 2001, the Forest Service has conducted aerial surveys, and monitored yearly returns and catches by qualified subsistence and personal use fishers. The eulachon return to the Unuk River during the middle of March (Bartlett and Dean 1994). The majority of subsistence and personal use catch has come from the Hooligan River, a tributary to the Unuk River. The Hooligan River is perceived by local residents to have the most consistent run from year to year when compared to other areas of the Unuk estuary (Tisler and Spangler 2003). Prior to 2001, the Alaskan Department of Fish and Game monitored the Unuk run on a very limited basis (USFS 2006).

In 2002 and 2003, eulachon were observed in the Hooligan River (USFS 2006). Also, in 2003, they were observed in the Klahini River but not in the Chickamin (USFS 2006). By 2004, the eulachon run was "well below average" and only small schools were observed in the Hooligan River, with a total catch of 0.73 t of fish (USFS 2006). Twenty years ago, eulachon catches from the Unuk River ranged from 7 to 14 t per year (Morphet 2005). The 2005 season saw no improvement and no catch, as the run was reportedly "very poor overall" and "absent on the Unuk River" (Morphet 2005). The 2006 eulachon run was "nearly absent" as only 34 male eulachon and 1 dead female were seen in the area (USFS 2007). It is unknown why the eulachon have not returned in good numbers to this area for the past three seasons.

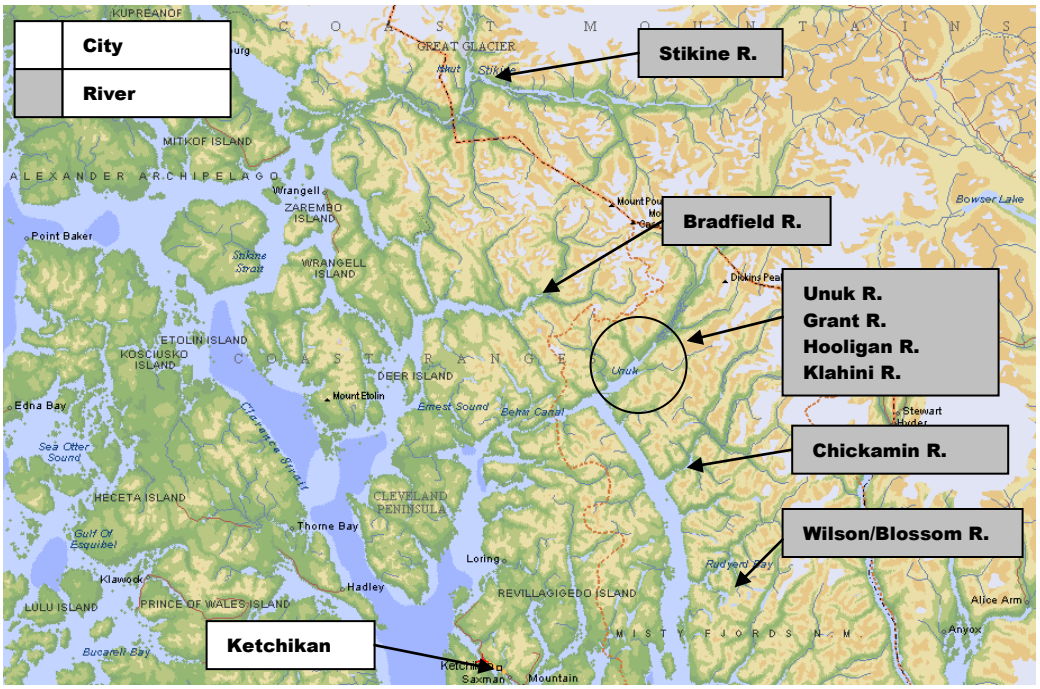



Figure 2.6. Locations of eulachon spawning rivers, with reference cities, in the Ketchikan Area.

### 2.3.1.2 Lynn Canal/Berners Bay

The Chilkat, Chilkoot, Taiya, and Ferebee Rivers are all eulachon rivers that flow into Lynn Cannel (Figure 2.7). The Chilkat River supports one of the larger eulachon runs in Southeastern Alaska (Betts 1994). The Chilkoot River flows parallel to the Chilkat River but its run is restricted to the lower part of the river, as the river is short. Both of these rivers support catches by the Chilkat and Chilkoot Tlingit people and local sports fishers. The Taiya River eulachon run is reportedly small thus is not fished (Betts 1994). The eulachon arrive to these rivers between mid and late May and are caught for one to two weeks (Mills 1982). The eulachon commonly arrive a few days earlier to the Chilkat River (Betts 1994). The fish are caught with long-handled dip nets from shore and the catch is prepared fresh, fried, boiled, smoked, frozen and used to render oil (Betts 1994). The Tlingits of Klukwan and Haines are one of only a few First Nations groups in Alaska which catch eulachon to render oil (Mills 1982).

A 1990 study of the Chilkat and Chilkoot river eulachon fisheries was initiated in response to local concern over the perceived decline in eulachon and concerns over modifications to the Haines airport (Betts 1994). Mills (1982) estimated the total catch for Klukwan and Haines, at 6 t in 1983 and 5.4 t in 1987. Historic documents and respondents from this area indicate that catch levels were once much larger during the early part of the twentieth century. Two reasons given for the smaller catches, the use of small dip nets instead of large in-river nets and the overall low strength of the run (Betts 1994). Early, but good returns, were seen in both rivers during 2001 (Chilkat Valley News 2001) but less productive runs were reported between 2002 and 2004 (Bigsby 2004). In 2005, the Chilkat River saw "appreciable numbers" however, the adjacent Chilkoot River run failed to materialize (Morphet 2005). Past disappearances have been reported for both rivers, as the fish were said to have "disappeared" from the Chilkat River for 5 years after highway construction during the 1940s (Betts 1994) with a similar "dry spell" during the late 1980s (Morphet 2005). The 2006 eulachon returns to the Chilkoot River were very good, as the river was described as "choked" with eulachon and "surging in black swaths" (Morphet 2006).

Berners Bay is located 65 km north of Juneau, Alaska (Figure 2.7). Berners Bay has three eulachon rivers that flow into it: the Berners, Lace and Antler Rivers. The eulachon usually begin to spawn in this area between late April and early May (Sigler *et al*. 2004). As these rivers are located at the edge of Tlingit traditional territories they are not caught by the Tlingits (Betts 1994). However, the Berners Bay eulachon have been studied in recent years because of their importance to the Steller sea lion's (*Eumetopias jubatus*) diet. Eulachon were found to have the highest fat content (15.0 to 25.3%) of 26 species of forage fish and invertebrates in Prince William Sound (Iverson *et al.* 2002). The Steller sea lion was listed in 1990 as a threatened species under the US Endangered Species Act (National Marine Fisheries Service 1992) and one of the leading hypotheses suggested that the rapid decline of Steller sea lions in the Gulf of Alaska and the Aleutian Islands was due to nutritional stress (Trites and Donnelly 2003).

Two factors supporting the nutritional stress hypothesis are a reduction in overall prey abundance or a change in the relative abundance of different types and quality of prey available (Trites and Donnelly 2003). The recent studies in Berners Bay focus on the aggregation of Steller sea lions during eulachon runs (Marston *et al.* 2002; Sigler *et al.* 2004;

Csepp and Vollenweider 2006). One objective of these studies was to estimate the biomass of prespawning aggregations of eulachon using hydroacoustic surveys (Sigler *et al.* 2004; Csepp and Vollenweider 2006) and a system of dip netting catch per unit effort (Marston *et al.* 2002). The mean index of eulachon abundance calculated in 1996 was found to be more than twice of that calculated in 1997 (Marston *et al.* 2002) and in 2002 eulachon abundance was higher than in 2003 (300 t vs. 113 t) (Sigler *et al.* 2004). Although different abundance calculation methods were used, it appears that overall eulachon abundance declined during each of the projects. In addition, the eulachon returns during the 2006 season were reported as "very low" (Csepp and Vollenweider 2006). Eulachon spawning rivers have also been reported in the Yakutat area (Figure 2.8) however, there is very little information on them, other than that eulachon are known to have spawned in them at one time in the past (Willson *et al.* 2006).

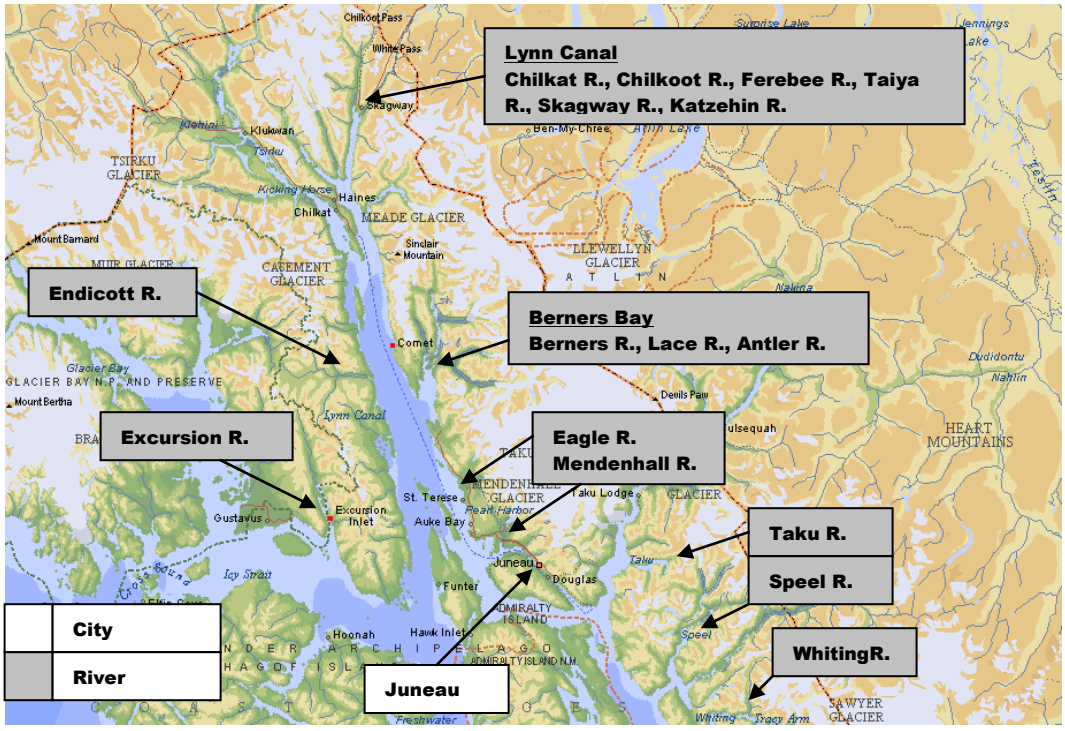



Figure 2.7. Locations of eulachon spawning rivers, with reference city, in the Lynn Canal/Berners Bay Area.

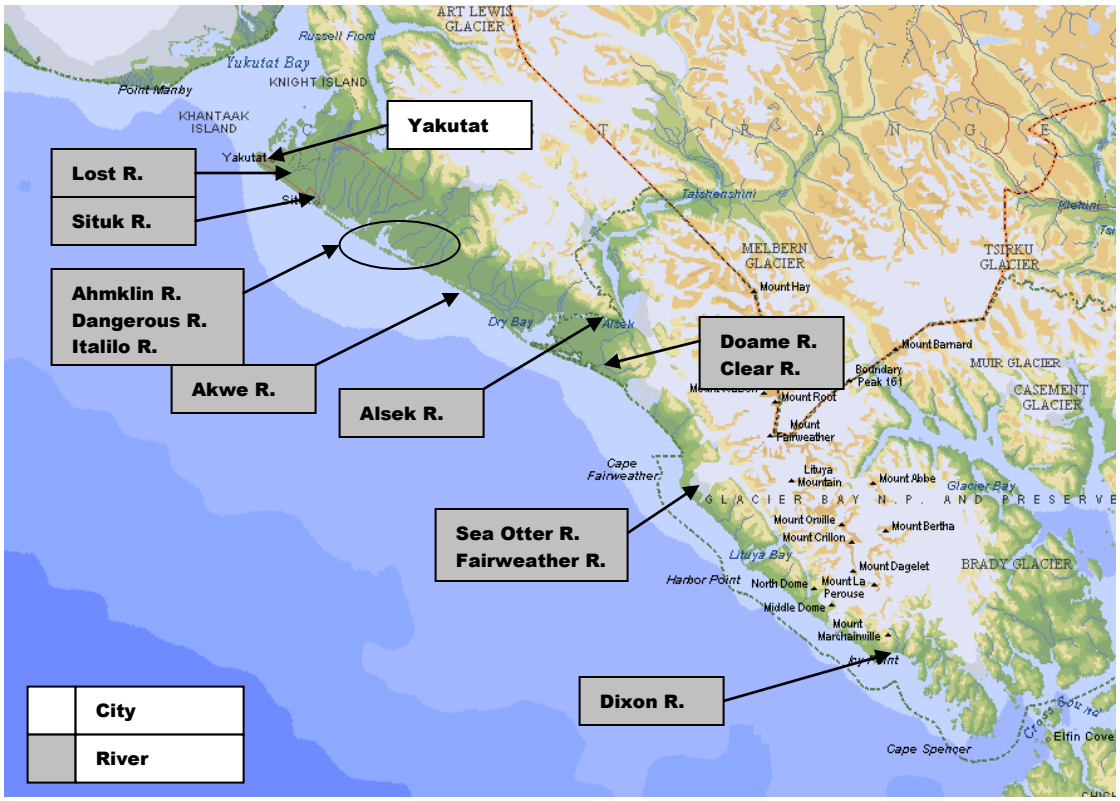



Figure 2.8. Locations of eulachon spawning rivers, with reference city, in the Yakutat Area.

## 2.4 British Columbia (BC)

The BC coast has approximately thirty-five eulachon rivers (Hay and McCarter 2000). However, of these, only the Nass and the Fraser River previously supported significant commercial catches. In the early twentieth century, small commercial catches were reported in the areas of Knight Inlet, the Skeena River District and the offshore areas between the mainland and southern Vancouver Island from 1917-1929 (Canada Bureau of Statistics 1917-1976). The majority of BC eulachon fisheries today are conducted, in-river, for food consumption by First Nations people. These will be discussed separately throughout this chapter. Three separate sources have been used to estimate the total BC eulachon commercial catch (Figure 2.9):

1. Canadian Bureau of Statistics: fisheries statistics of Canada 1917-1976
2. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Pacific Region, BC commercial catch statistics (1951-1995)

3. Eulachon catch statistics (1878-1941) from the Nass and Fraser River, figure 12 p. 14 (Clemens and Wilby 1946)

These three data sources follow a similar trend in years when the data overlap. They also complement each other, as one data set ends and the next data set begins. Each data set fills in missing data giving a continuous BC commercial eulachon catch time series. The graph indicates that commercial catches were highest in the early 1900s and the late 1950s. The highest catches were taken from the Nass River (~400 t) in 1903, however, these catches became minimal after 1920, with the last year of commercial catch reported in 1935 (~12 t). Thus the majority of commercial catch taken after 1920 reflects primarily Fraser River catch.

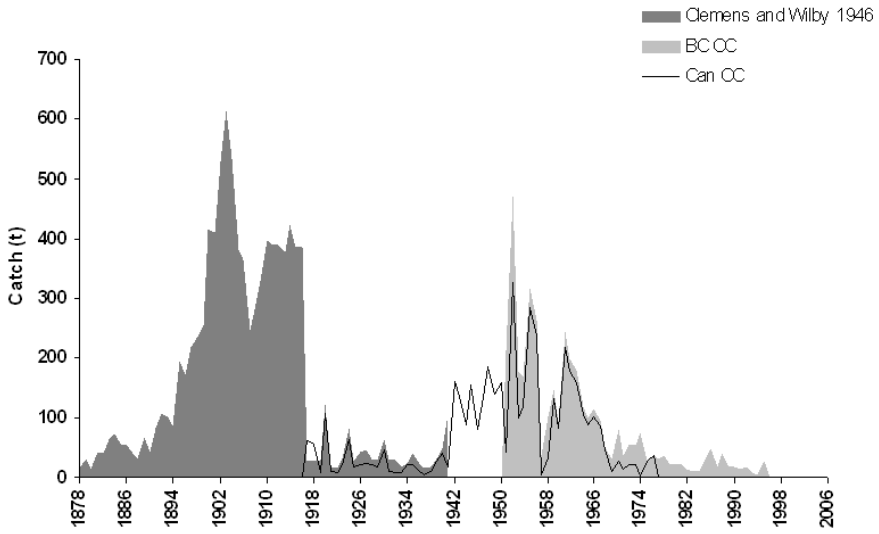



Figure 2.9. British Columbia commercial eulachon catch reported by three sources: (1) Canadian Bureau of Statistics (1917-1976) (2) BC commercial catch statistics (DFO 1951-1984; DFO 1985-1995) (3) Clemens and Wilby (1946).

## 2.4.1 BC North Coast

### 2.4.1.1 Nass River

**Rivers:** Nass and tributaries (Bear and Rainy)
**Fisheries:** First Nation fishery, commercial fishery (1877-1935)

The Nass River in Northern BC and is one of the largest eulachon runs located in BC (Figure 2.10). It has been argued that the Nass River produces a superior, richer quality of eulachon

than other rivers along the British Columbia Coast (Collison 1916; Barbeau 1952). The river was termed Nass, meaning "food depot", by the Tlingit people of south-eastern Alaska because they, as well as other First Nations people from the Interior and from the Queen Charlotte Islands, traveled great distances to the area to trade with the Nisga'a, "people of the Nass" (Collison 1916). It was observed in 1810 by the vessel, the *Hamilton*, that "300 canoes arrived at Nass Roads in one day in the middle of March and another 300 in one day at the beginning of April" (Gibson 1992).

There are four main communities located today in the Nass Valley: Gitwinksihlkw (Canyon City), Lakalzap (Greenville), Gilakdamiks (New Aiyansh) and Gingolx (Kincolith) (Petch and Vallieres 1979). Nass River eulachon usually arrive in early March and are fished mainly by the Nisga'a people. There are also Tsimshian people from Port Simpson, who are recognized as fellow tribesmen by the Nisga'a, and are permitted to fish for eulachon on the lower Nass (Collison 1916).

> The *Tsimpsheans* say that the Naas river clothes them and the Skeena river feeds them, because the *Hydahs*, from the Queen Charlotte Islands, and other tribes who are prohibited from fishing for the *Oulachan* in the Naas, come and purchase the oil from them, paying blankets for it, while the salmon of the *Skeena* supplies them with abundant supplies of food (Brown 1868).

It should be noted that Nisga'a and Tsimshian people during the late 1800s were closely associated, and thus written records taken by white explorers and missionaries, sometimes refer to both groups as the same people, "so closely are the deeds of the Thaimshim associated with the Indians of this river [Nass], that it is not unusual to hear these tribes referred to by the same name, or as the people of Thaimshim" (Collison 1916). The "Thaimshim" was described by Collison (1916) as "the great wonder-worker of the past, whose deeds are linked with the traditions of both Tsimsheans and the Nishkas." The tribes from Alaska, as well as the Haida and Tsimshian fought unsuccessfully to obtain control over the Nass eulachon fishery and had to settle for trading to obtain their eulachon and eulachon grease (Collison 1916). Today, there is a small catch that is taken for fresh consumption by local, non-native residents.

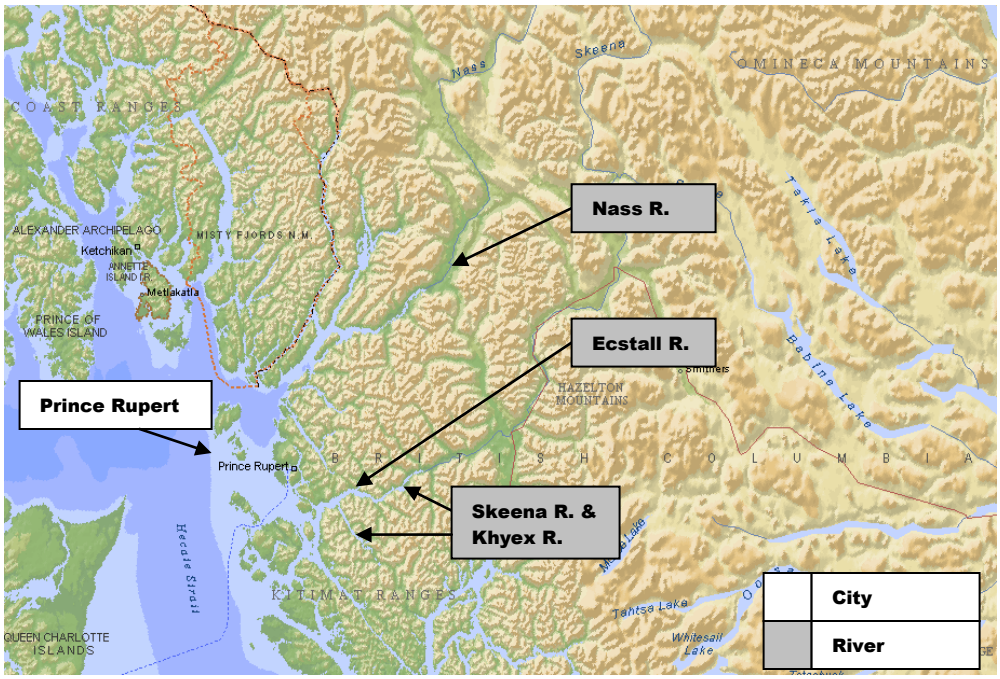



Figure 2.10. Locations of eulachon spawning rivers, with reference city, in the North Coast Area of British Columbia.

Historically, the Nisga'a held complete control over the area's eulachon run. "Oolichan oil assured the Nishga of wealth, power and a continuing source for barter. In the valley itself, each Nishga household consumed huge amounts of the oil each year," (Petch and Vallieres 1979). In a summary of the Nass Fishery, published in 1916, it was reported that "each [Nass] household…[would] have from five to ten tons of fish, and more, from which to extract oil or grease" (Collison 1916). In 1914 the Nisga'a people petitioned the government, to grant them exclusive rights over the Nass eulachon fishery, but the petition was rejected by the Fisheries Inspector, J.T.C. Williams, because he held the opinion that other natives in the area, such as the Tsimshian also had fishing rights and that there was no interest by "whites or Japanese" to enter into the eulachon fishery (Williams 1914). However, he also commented in the same letter:

> In the event of [others] entering this industry I should recommend that the Department formulate regulations for the protection of these fisheries, with special reference to the hereditary rights of the Indians. In the mean time it would be advisable for whites and Japs to continue purchasing the Oolichans they require from the Indians (Williams 1914).

Prior to this letter, a factory had been built on the Nass River to manufacture eulachon oil, (Clemens and Wilby 1946). The commercial sale of oil by those other than First Nations lasted for approximately 10 years from 1877-1878 (Canada 1877-1914). At first, eulachon oil was seen by non-First Nations as a potential money making business for British Columbia. However, the demand was never achieved overseas as the product was mainly sold locally to First Nations. The oil was "eagerly purchased by the natives of the neighboring coast, at a rate of one dollar per gallon, so that none remained for export, so as to test the extraneous market" (Canada 1878). Although the oil market did not succeed, eulachon were commercially caught until around 1935, with the highest catches coming during the 1910s (Figure 2.11). These catches were sold fresh, smoked and salted. During the late 1940s a small commercial fishery existed, and was run solely by First Nations, who sold their fresh catch directly to commercial buyers. However, by the 1950s the Nisga'a declared that eulachon were no longer to be sold commercially. The 1949 Native Brotherhood of BC Convention held at Bella Coola and the 1955 Nisga'a Tribal Council Convention at Greenville, introduced and adopted the following resolution "no Nass River caught Oolicans [*sic*] be sold commercially to any fresh fish processors, cold storage, cannery, or reduction plants, retail market shops, or to any other commercial enterprise outlets," this did exclude the sale of eulachon by resident First Nations, to other First Nations in the Prince Rupert area, for the purpose of home consumption (Province of British Columbia Legislative Assembly 1968). Although during the late 1960s and 1970s there was debate regarding the commercial sale of eulachon to other First Nations. A local First Nation fisher was fined in 1967 for the private sale of eulachon to members of the Port Simpson First Nation (Province of British Columbia Legislative Assembly 1968). In 1983 the British Columbia Fishery regulation stated "no person shall buy, sell, attempt to sell, barter or have in possession for commercial purposes any eulachons caught in District No.2" (Gordon 1983). Today trade of fresh eulachon and eulachon grease still exists between First Nations throughout this area. In the past few years, trade has even occurred between the Nisga'a, and other BC First Nations, who previously had eulachon runs (e.g. the Nuxalk Nation of Bella Coola).

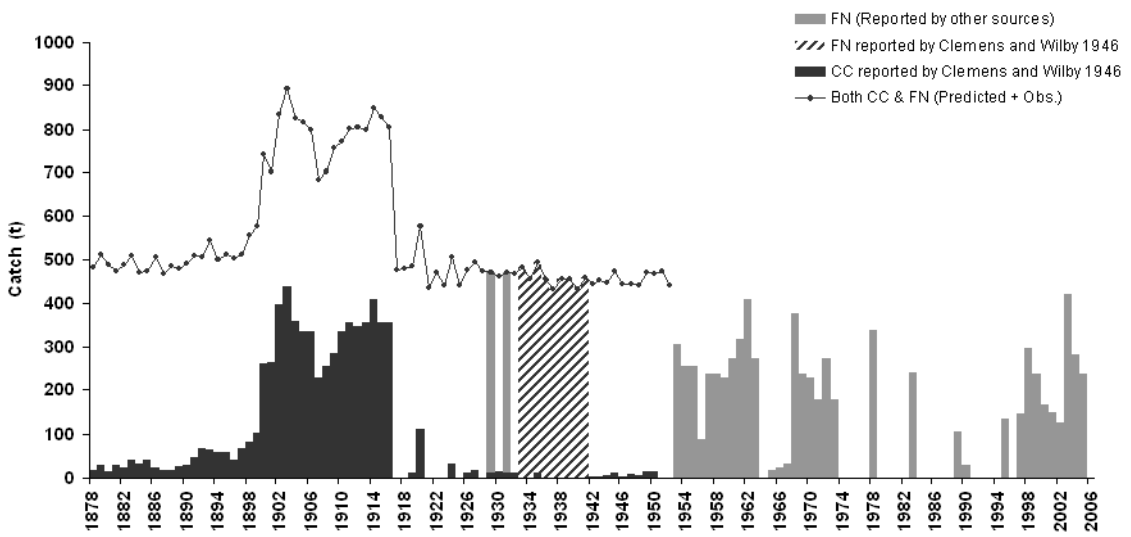



Figure 2.11. Eulachon catch from the Nass River. First Nation (FN) catch (diagonal stripes) and commercial catch (dark bars), Clemens and Wilby 1946. FN catch reported in 'other' sources (light grey bars) see Appendix 1. Estimated catch = FN estimated + commercial catch, Clemens and Wilby 1946 (line).

The eulachon run on the Nass arrives around the middle of March, however, Nisga'a fishers believe there are at least two spawning runs with the second arriving at the beginning of April (Langer *et al.* 1977). River conditions vary from year to year during the eulachon season, and fluctuate between complete ice blockage to completely free of ice. Fishing successfully in this area depends a lot on the weather and ice conditions. In the past eulachon were commonly caught through the solid ice with large conical nets. If the ice was too thin and broke up during the main run, fishing had to wait until the ice cleared out and be conducted from boats (McNeary 1974). However, ice cover has not occurred on the Nass River since 1988 (Pickard and Marmorek 2007). Today, eulachon are still caught using large conical nets which are checked using motorized punts (author's personal observation).

Over the past few centuries the Nass River has supported large catches of eulachon, by both First Nations and by a commercial fishery. In the early 1840s it was reported that "the Tsimshians brought more that 30,000 gallons of oolachan oil to Fort Simpson annually" (Gibson 1992). If this amount is converted to tonnes of fresh eulachon, using the Chapter 3 parameter of 14.1 gallons/t of fresh eulachon, this would equal approximately 2,100 t. This is probably an accurate estimate for this time period, as others estimates indicate that the

"Indian fishermen land[ed] thousands of tons" of eulachon a year (Collison 1916). Although it is difficult to obtain an accurate estimate of the quantity of eulachon taken from the Nass River during the late 1880s and into the early twentieth century, I have attempted to estimate an approximate catch time series using Nass River catch data from Clemen's and Wilby (1946) commercial catch data from 1878-1941 (Figure 2.11). These catches are highly erratic and it was suggested that part of the irregularity results from changes in methods of recording statistics, as it was common practice in the early part of the time series to include catch taken by First Nations and local residents (Clemens and Wilby 1946).

These catches appear to be very low, as others during this time have reported First Nations catches equaling thousands of tons of eulachon annually (Gibson 1992; Collison 1916). Thus presuming that these statistics consist only of commercial catches, and do not include First Nation catches, a considerable portion of the total catch would be missing. For example, the Clemens and Wilby (1946) report a total 1929 catch of 13.1 t. However, a separate fisheries report recorded 9,000 cwt or 457 t of eulachon, it stated that this catch was not included in the regular reporting schedules because the fish were "caught by Indians for their own consumption" (Department of Marine and Fisheries and the Dominion Bureau of Statistics 1929). Thus the catch reported by Clemens and Wilby (1946) must only have been commercial catch. First Nations catches were reported on the same graph by Clemens and Wilby (1946) in a separate, short, time series, from 1933 and 1941. This catch range (433-482 t) was used to randomly generate an approximate estimate of First Nations catches from 1878-1952 where only commercial catches were reported. These randomly generated values were then added to the total catch reported by Clemens and Wilby (1946) to give an approximate estimate of total catch from the Nass River during this time (Figure 2.11).

By the 1940s catches had decreased substantially, as the First Nations of this area and in other areas of BC continued to adopt the "white man's food and manner of life", and eulachon were not caught on the same "gigantic" scale as in the past (Collison 1941). Although the catch in recent decades may be smaller than in the past, the eulachon remain an integral part of the Nisga'a and Tsimshian culture and diet.

The abundance of the Nass River eulachon run has reportedly varied in the past:

> The quantity of the run of fish has varied; there have been peak years when the abundance of the oolachan baffled description, and years when it has not been so plentiful; but it has never, to my knowledge, completely failed (Collison 1941).

The Nisga'a people first expressed major concerns for the Nass run in 1968, after they suspected that log driving practices were having negative effects on the run. Log driving began on the Nass River in 1962 and continued until 1976. These operations released logs into the river, separately and in bundles, to transport the logs to the tide water at Nass Harbour. Unfortunately, log recovery rates were less than 10% of initial releases and massive log jams were formed throughout the area (Orr 1984). In response to these concerns, the Fisheries and Marine Service of Canada, carried out a study on the Nass River eulachon from 1969 to 1971 (Langer *et al.* 1977) and by 1978 no uncontrolled release of logs was permitted (Orr 1984). As a result of the study, logs had to be towed, under control, to Nass Harbour and timing restrictions were applied to delay the start up of towing until after the eulachon had spawned and their larvae were gone. The Nass River is one of the few rivers in BC that has not seen any major reductions in eulachon abundance over the past 10 years. However, a decline may be more difficult to identify in this system, as the river and the run, are large in comparison to other BC eulachon rivers, and fishing effort is not as high as in the past. Only one annual biomass estimate has been made for this system, based on data collected during the 1983 season, and was estimated at 1780 t (Orr 1984; McCarter and Hay 1999). Since 1997, the Nisga'a Fisheries has monitored the annual catch on the Nass River and recorded annual catches and hours of effort (Figure 2.12). The Nass River eulachon run appears to adequately supply First Nations catches which range between 146 and 420 t from 1997 and 2005 (Figure 2.12). In 2006 a fairly strong return was reported but no major fishery occurred as extensive ice cover limited the fishery (EcoMetrix 2006).

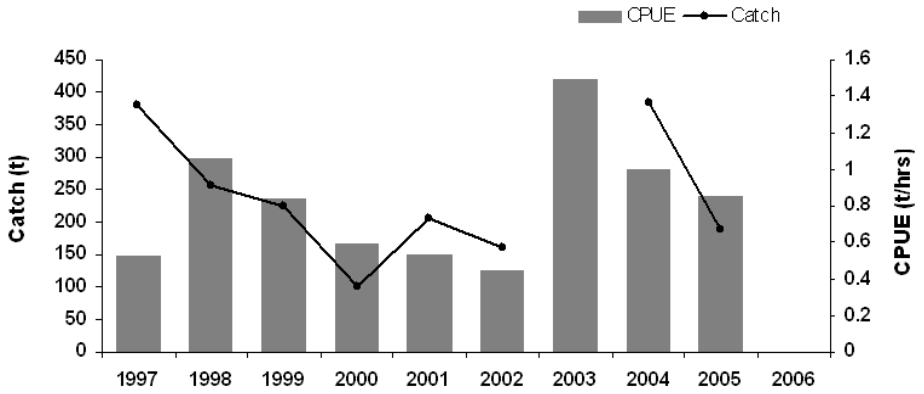



Figure 2.12. Eulachon catch and CPUE for the Nass River.
Source: Nisga'a Fisheries and Wildlife Department 2007.

### 2.4.1.2 Skeena Area

**Rivers:** Skeena River and its tributaries Ecstall and Khyex Rivers
**Fisheries:** Small First Nation fishery, small commercial fishery (1924-46)

The mainstem of the Skeena and its tributaries, the Ecstall and Khyex Rivers, support the only eulachon runs in this area (Figure 2.10). From 1924-1946, the Canadian Bureau of Statistics recorded commercial eulachon catches from the Skeena Area. These catches ranged from 17.3 t in 1924 to 1.0 tonne in 1935 (Canada 1917-1976). All other eulachon fisheries in this area were traditionally conducted by members of the Tsimshian First Nation, whose members include: Metlakatla, Lax Kw'Alaams, Kitsumkalum and Kitselas Bands (Teresa Ryan 2002). The Ecstall River was the only river fished by the Tsimshian, for the production of eulachon grease. The Ecstall eulachon were said to be of a different or "better" quality than the Skeena eulachon; as these eulachon were considered dry and bitter (Don Roberts, Kitsumkalum member, pers. comm. 2006). Experienced fishers from the area report that the run was historically small and short-lived. Thus the Tsimshian members usually obtained most of their eulachon catch from the Nass River (Steve Roberts 1997). In the 1950 DFO Fisheries Officer annual narrative report for the Prince Rupert waterfront, the eulachon of the Skeena and Ecstall rivers were reportedly "not fished commercially or for food purposes" (DFO 1941-73).

A study on eulachon life history, habitat use and spawner abundance was conducted on the Skeena River during the 1997 season and estimated at 3.0 t (Lewis 1997). Don Roberts, a Kitsumkalum member, was hired by the Tsimshian Tribal Council in 2000 to monitor the status of the Skeena eulachon. Roberts and his crew conducted plankton tows for the capture of eggs and larvae and set gillnets to capture adults. The run to the Skeena historically returned during the first week of March; however, in the past decade, it has occasionally returned earlier, during mid to late February (Don Roberts, pers. comm. 2006). By the mid 1990s the run to the Skeena area noticeably declined, with very few eulachon observed or caught between 1997 and 1999 (Don Roberts, pers. comm. 2006). In 2005, Roberts reported a good run in the area, but only in comparison to the previous 10 year average. However, in 2006 there was virtually no run to the Skeena River (Don Roberts pers. comm. 2007; EcoMetrix 2006).

## 2.4.2 BC Central Coast

### 2.4.2.1 Douglas Channel

**Rivers:** Kitimat and Kildala Rivers
**Fisheries:** First Nation fishery

The Kitimat and Kildala Rivers are located in Douglas Channel (Figure 2.13). Both rivers were historically fished for eulachon by members of the Haisla First Nation. However, in 1972, eulachon fishing was curtailed on the Kitimat River as pollution by industrial and municipal effluent discharges made the eulachon foul-tasting and inedible (Tirrul-Jones 1985). Prior to 1972, eulachon were caught for smoking, drying, and for producing eulachon grease. Annual catches from the Kitimat River, reported by DFO Fisheries Officers, from 1969-1971, ranged between 27.2 and 81.6 t (Figure 2.14) with additional catches taken from the Kildala and the Kemano Rivers. The eulachon run to the Kitimat River usually peaks during mid to late March but they have also been captured in late April and May (Kelson 1996). Eulachon grease had previously been produced in vast quantities in the 'Old Village' of Kitamaat (IR 1). According to a report by Tirrul-Jones (1985) the consultants estimated that at one time "at least 40 nets set…at one time and [if] worked seven days. Each net would catch a minimum of 1.8 t…with 40 nets working 508 t of eulachon were caught in a week's

time." Therefore, there was a significant amount of eulachon historically caught from the Kitimat River.

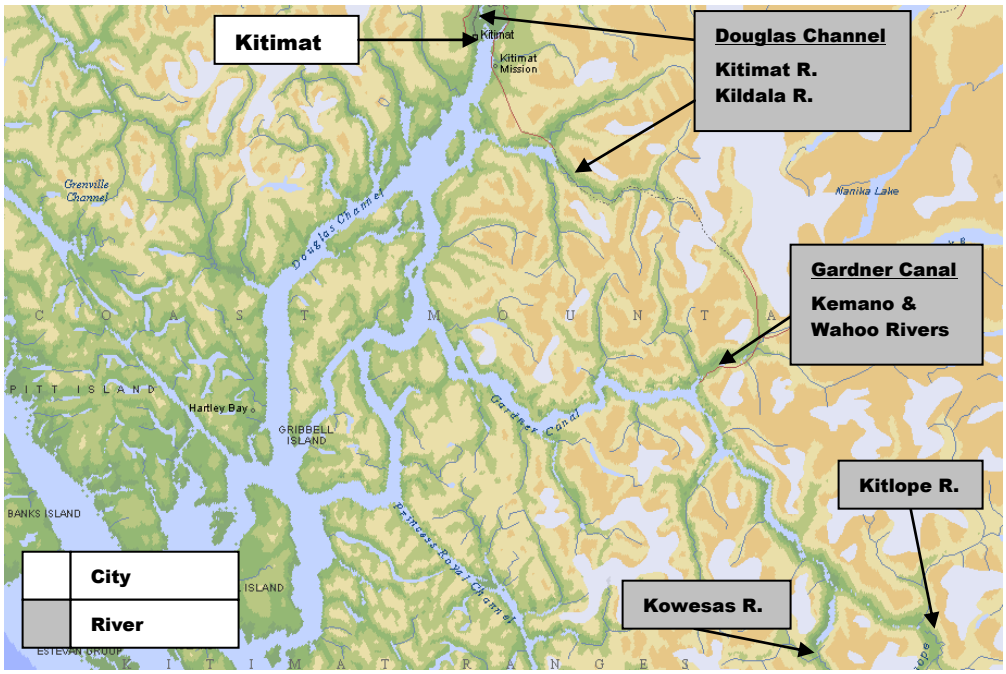



Figure 2.13. Locations of eulachon spawning rivers, with reference city, in Douglas Channel and Gardner Canal Areas.

A study on eulachon distribution on the Kitimat River and a preliminary stock assessment was conducted by DFO during the 1993 season (Pederson *et al.* 1995). The total estimated spawning biomass was calculated at 22.6 t or about 514,000 individuals (Pederson *et al.* 1995), significantly less than past catches. The last strong run returned to the Kitimat River in 1991 and runs from 1992-1996 were estimated at half the size of 1991 (Farara 2000). During the years 1994, 1995 and annually since 1998, Eurocan Pulp and Paper Company collected eulachon abundance and CPUE data from the Kitimat River (Figure 2.15). From 1994 to 1996 the estimated abundance ranged from 527,000 to 440,000 individual spawners and since 1998 even less, between 13,600 and <1000 (EcoMetrix 2006). CPUE was estimated between 50 and 60 fish per 24-hr gill net (7.6 m x 1.8 m, 3.8 cm mesh) set from 1994-1996 but since 1998 the CPUE has been less than 2 fish per 24-hr gill net set (EcoMetrix 2006). It should be cautioned that the CPUE estimates represent the sampling effort designed for the collection of a small sample of fish to be used for taint evaluations and not the fishing effort of the Haisla eulachon fishery. However, even if fish were still caught

for consumption, the returns would be too small to support a traditional fishery. The 2006 run was the lowest recorded and virtually non-existent with <1000 spawners estimated (EcoMetrix 2006). The abundance estimates were calculated using gill netting catches and split beam hydro acoustics (2001-2002 only) thus it is cautioned that these sampling methods are uncommon and do not represent the true abundance but do illustrate the relative abundance trend for this system. Since 1972 the Haisla people have traveled to the Kemano River or the Kildala River to fish for eulachon, however, in recent years these rivers too have suffered major declines.

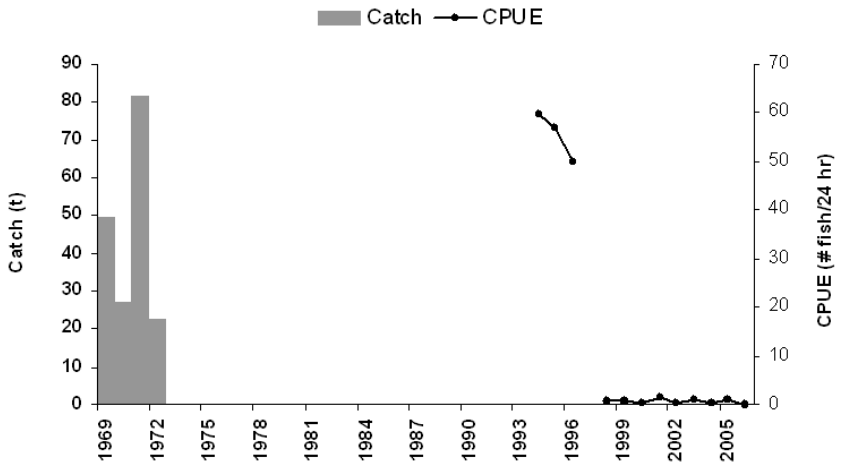



Figure 2.14. First Nation eulachon catch and CPUE from the Kitimat River.
Source: DFO 1969-1973; Pedersen *et al.* 1995; EcoMetrix 2006.

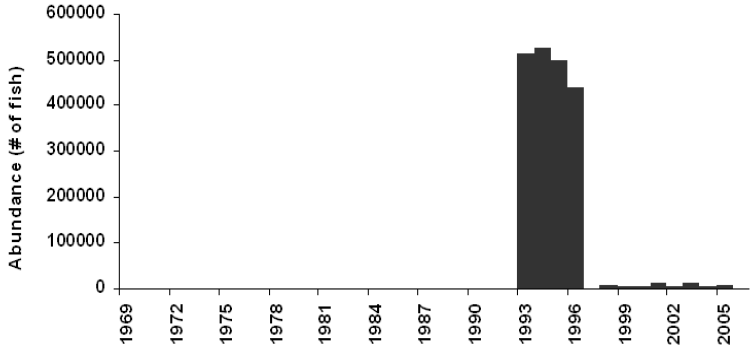



Figure 2.15. Estimated eulachon abundance in the Kitimat River.
Source: EcoMetrix 2006.

#### 2.4.2.2 Gardner Canal

**Rivers:** Kemano, Wahoo (Kemano tributary), Kowesas and Kitlope Rivers
**Fisheries:** First Nation fishery

The Kemano, Kowesas and Kitlope Rivers are located in Gardner Canal (Figure 2.13). The Haisla Fisheries Commission has monitored the Kowesas and Kitlope Rivers intermittently over the past two decades and the Kemano River has been monitored annually and studied extensively since 1988 (Lewis *et al*. 2002; Lewis and Ganshorn 2004). In 1996, DFO issued three commercial eulachon licenses for Gardner Canal. However, once the Kitamaat Village Council was informed, the fishery was curtailed and a committee was formed to develop an "Oolichan Management Plan" (Haisla Fisheries 2007). This section will focus on the Kemano Rivers as the source of the bulk of the recent Hasila eulachon catch.

Kemano River eulachon return to spawn in late March and early April (Lewis *et al*. 2002). The Kemano/Wahoo confluence is made up of the Aluminum Company of Canada (Alcan) Kemano powerhouse discharge and the flow from the Kemano River and its tributaries. The Kemano eulachon monitoring program was started by Alcan in 1988 and continued until 2004 on the Kemano/Wahoo Rivers (Lewis and Ganshorn 2004). Alcan's interest in the eulachon stems from their operation of the Kemano plant, a hydroelectric generating system, in the Kemano watershed (Lewis *et al*. 2002). As part of an environmental management plan, Alcan has monitored the abundance of eulachon and worked cooperatively with the Haisla First Nation to monitor the eulachon fishery (Lewis and Ganshorn 2004). The power plant is part of the Kitimat-Kemano project initiated by the BC government during the 1940s. The power plant began operations in 1954, and diverts an average of 133 $m^3/s$ of continuous water, or 57% of the flow on a mean annual basis, from the Nechako Reservoir into the Kemano River (Lewis *et al*. 2002).

This river system is fished by the Haisla people and their guests, comprising several bands of First Nations located throughout the Kemano and Kitimat valleys. Fishing for eulachon is conducted using mainly seine nets and dip nets, however, occasionally the traditional Takalth net (conical net) is used as an indicator of abundance. DFO annual narrative reports indicate that Kemano River eulachon catches from 1969 to 1973 averaged 44.3 t (range between 18.1 tonne to 81.7 t) annually (DFO 1967-1973). More recent reports from Alcan indicate an

annual average catch of 57 t from 1988 and 2002 (range 32.5 and 146.5 t) (Lewis and Ganshorn 2004) (Figure 2.16). The recent eulachon catches are based on verbally (hailed) numbers reported daily by eulachon fishers.

The Kemano eulachon studies contain rare data on catch per unit effort (CPUE), reported in t of eulachon caught per set (Figure 2.16). The CPUE was found to be useful as an indicator of abundance as it was positively correlated with other measured indicators of abundance on the Kemano River, such as, annual egg drift (r = 0.77) and the sum of egg mass volume (r = 0.9) (Lewis *et al*. 2002). Kemano River eulachon appear to have declined between 1988 and 1998, with no returns in 1999 (Lewis *et al*. 2002). The run remained depressed with low catches and low CPUE between 2000 and 2002; however, by 2003 there was a marked improvement in both values (Lewis *et al*. 2002). This trend did not last, as catch and CPUE declined again in 2004, and no catches were taken in 2005 and 2006, as the run failed to return (EcoMetrix 2006). Eulachon were seen in the Kemano estuary in 2007. However, they did not ascend the river (comment made by Ken Hall, member of the Haisla Nation during the Eulachon Crisis Meeting held in Bella Coola, BC June 10-11 2007). It should be noted that the Kemano eulachon reports contain extensive data on river hydrology, adult life history, biology, run timing, distribution, habitat use, and larval size, migration timing, density and egg-larvae survival.

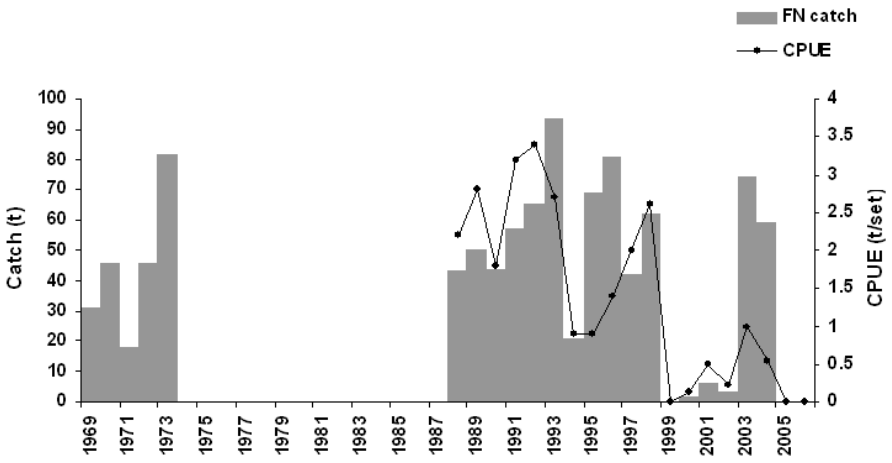



Figure 2.16. Eulachon catch and CPUE from the Kemano River
Source: DFO 1969-1973; Lewis *et al*. 2002; Lewis and Ganshorn 2004

### 2.4.2.3 Bella Coola Area

**Rivers:** Bella Coola, Paisla Creek, Necleetsconay, Dean, Kimsquit, Aseek, Taleomy, Noeick, Kwatna, Quatleena
**Fisheries:** First Nation fishery

Ten rivers in the Bella Coola area were known to have eulachon spawning populations (Figure 2.17). The Dean and the Kimsquit Rivers are located in the upper Dean Channel, the Taleomy, Noeick and Aseek Rivers in South Bentinck Arm, the Kwatna and Quatlena Rivers in Kwatna Inlet, and the Bella Coola River, the Neceleetsconay River, and Paisla Creek, in North Bentinck Arm. Historically, the four largest runs were the Bella Coola, Kimsquit, Taleomy and Kwatna Rivers. These were also locations of old Nuxalk village sites. Prior to the infectious disease epidemics of the late 1800s, these villages were inhabited and the rivers fished annually for eulachon. However, when these Nuxalk populations were decimated, they were all relocated to the Bella Coola area, and the Bella Coola River was the only river fished regularly for eulachon. Thus the majority of information for this area comes from this river. Chapter 3 provides a detailed description of the Nuxalk eulachon fishery and the Bella Coola River eulachon population.

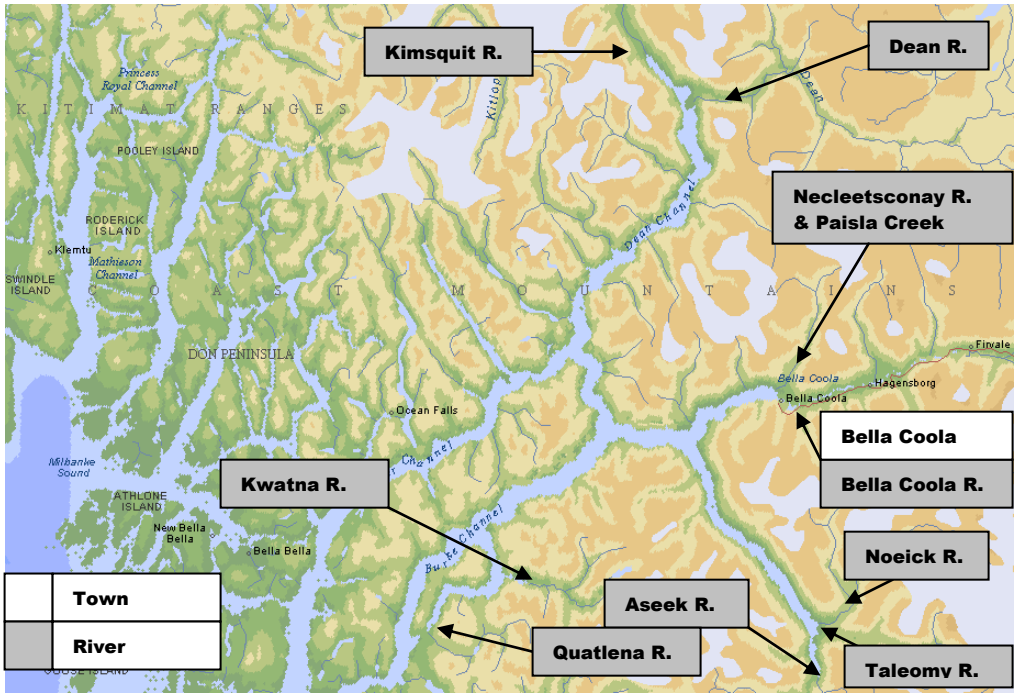



Figure 2.17. Locations of eulachon spawning rivers in the Bella Coola Area and the town of Bella Coola.

### 2.4.2.4 Rivers Inlet Area

**Rivers:** Wannock, Chuckwalla, Kilbella and Clyak Rivers
**Fisheries:** First Nation fishery

The Rivers Inlet area has four known eulachon rivers: the Wannock, Chuckwalla and Kilbella Rivers of Rivers Inlet, and the Clyak River at the head of Moses Inlet, located just north of Rivers Inlet (Figure 2.18). A large run previously returned to the Clyak River but has not been observed since the 1940s (Winbourne 2002). The eulachon of this area were fished by the Wuikinuxv Nation (previously spelt 'Oweekeno'). However, in the Canada Sessional Papers there are records of smoked eulachon and barrels of salted eulachon taken from the Rivers Inlet area and transported to the Skeena District between 1888 and 1892 (Canada 1878-1914). The amounts ranged between 75 and 125 barrels of salted eulachon and between 200 and 2000 lbs (0.09 t and 0.9 t) of smoked eulachon.

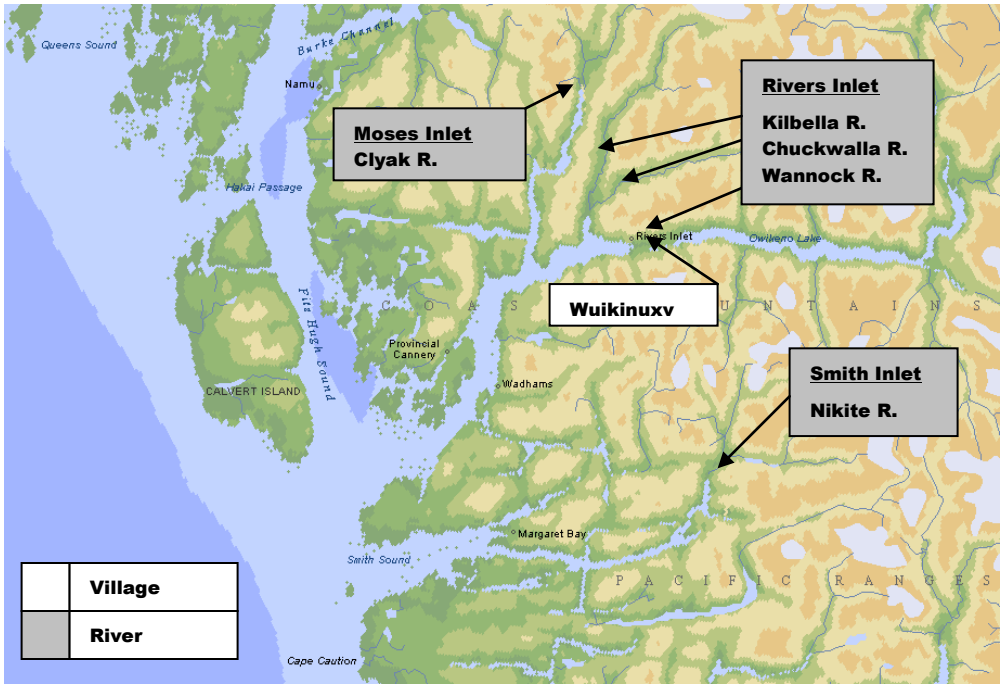



Figure 2.18. Locations of eulachon spawning rivers and Wuikinuxv village in Rivers Inlet Area.

The Wuikinuxv village is located on the Wannock River, between Oweekeno Lake and the head of Rivers Inlet (Figure 2.18). Because of accessibility, the Wannock River was the most regularly fished of the four rivers. The lower reaches of the Chuckwalla and the Kilbella

Rivers were usually only fished when the Wannock run was small. Catches by the Wuikinuxv people are small compared to other areas on the Pacific Coast. However, this may be indicative of a small village population and not necessarily a small eulachon run. Today the on-reserve population is approximately 83 residents (Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development Canada 2007) whereas, the population in 1968, as recorded by DFO Fisheries Officers, was only slightly larger, at 150 (DFO 1967-68 & 1971). The only catch figures reported for these rivers were found in Fisheries Officer's annual narrative reports for the years 1967, 1968 and 1971, with catches of: 1.81, 2.27 and 4.54 t on the Wannock (DFO 1967-68 & 1971). The runs during the early 1960s were also described by the Fisheries Officers as being "sufficient" and "adequate" to meet the needs of the Wuikinuxv people.

Community members interviewed in the 2002 Central Coast eulachon project reported that the run to the Wannock River had been gradually declining since the 1970s (Winbourne 2002). The last fishable run occurred in 1986 (Burrows 2006), however, the run has been "poor" since 1994 (Frank Johnson pers. comm. 2007). In 1997, a study was conducted on the Wannock River, in an attempt to measure the spawning biomass. However, virtually no eulachon eggs or larvae were found in any of the 376 samples taken from the river (Berry and Jacob 1998). In spite of this, the Wuikinuxv community members caught approximately 150 kilograms of eulachon from the Kilbella and Chuckwalla Rivers in 1997 (Berry and Jacob 1998). Also in 1997, eulachon larval surveys were conducted in Central Coast mainland inlets, Rivers and Smith Inlets being two of those sampled. The combined spawning biomass of these two areas was estimated at 6.46 t (McCarter and Hay 1999). Smiths Inlet had never been previously recorded as possessing an eulachon run, nevertheless this study suggests that because larvae were captured in the tows there may be a small eulachon run in the area. The Nekite River, located at the head of Smith Inlet, is most likely the eulachon bearing river in which these larvae originated, as one eulachon larvae was found in in-river plankton tows during the 2002 Bella Coola eulachon study (Winbourne and Dow 2002).

Since 1997, no eulachon have been caught in the Rivers Inlet area. To determine the current abundance in 2005 and 2006, the Wuikinuxv Fisheries Department conducted spawner abundance surveys on the Wannock River. Only eleven adults were captured in 2005, with an estimated 2,700 adults returning to spawn (Burrows 2005). In addition, three adults were

captured in the Kilbella River (Burrows 2005). In 2006, the study was repeated, with no adults captured, although nets were removed early because of requests made by elders, and an estimate of 23,000 adult spawners was calculated (Burrows 2006). The suggested reasons for the decline of the eulachon in this area, given by 2002 Wuikinuxv interview participants, strongly indicate the commercial shrimp trawl industry, as well as logging operations and changes in the environment (Winbourne 2002).

#### 2.4.2.5 Johnstone Strait Region

**Rivers:** Kingcome, Klinaklini, Franklin, Stafford, Apple and Homathko Rivers
**Fisheries:** First Nation fisheries

This area, referred to by McCarter and Hay (1999) as the Johnstone Strait Region has six known eulachon rivers: the Kingcome River of Kingcome Inlet, the Klinaklini and Franklin Rivers of Knight Inlet, the Stafford and Apple Rivers of Loughborough Inlet and the Homathko River of Bute Inlet (Figure 2.19). In 1997, larval surveys were conducted in this region, and larvae were found present at the head of Thompson Sound, suggesting eulachon spawning in the nearby, Kakweiken River, (McCarter and Hay 1999), thus identifying this river as another potential eulachon spawning river for the region. The eulachon migration to these areas occurs during April, with the peak of abundance returning by the middle of the month (Common Resources Consulting Ltd. 1998).

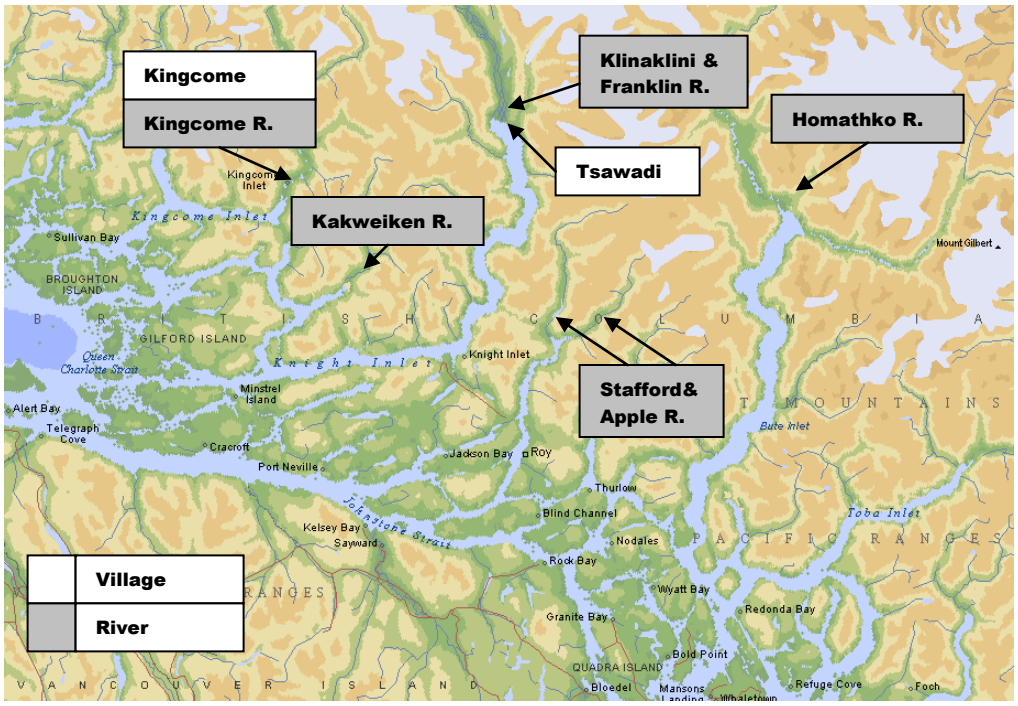



Figure 2.19. Locations of eulachon rivers, with reference villages, in the Johnstone Strait Region.

The First Nation people who fish for eulachon in this area have been referred to in the past as, Kwakiutl, by photographer and ethnologist Edward S. Curtis (1915) and German ethnographer Franz Boas (1909), but were also known as members of the Kwawkewlth Agency (Raibmon 2000). Today they are known collectively as the Kwakwaka'wakw. I was informed by Fred Glendale, a member of the Da'naxda'xw/Awaetlala and son of the hereditary chief of Knight Inlet, William Glendale, that the head of Knight Inlet or Tsawadi village is the traditional territory of the Da'naxda'xw/Awaetlala, one of the member groups within the Kwakwaka'wakw (Fred Glendale, pers comm. 2007). Some of the other First Nations in the surrounding villages are invited to fish for eulachon by the Da'naxda'xw/Awaetlala. According to Curtis (1915), these First Nations included: the Qagyuhl[4] (Kwaguilth) of Fort Rupert, Mamalelekala (Mamalilikulla) of Village Island, and Tlauitsis (Tlowitsis) and Matilpe (Matilpi) of Turnour Island. It has been reported that in the late 19th century, as many as 2,000 people annually visited the Tsawadi village. However, by the late 1960s, only a few family groups returned regularly to manufacture oil (McNair 1971).

[4] The spellings are those used by Curtis (1915) and the names in brackets are the spellings used today

Kingcome Inlet is the traditional territory of the Tsawataineuk First Nation who also historically allowed other First Nations from surrounding villages to fish for eulachon in the Kingcome River. According to Curtis (1915), these included: Koeksotenok (Kwicksutaineuk) of Gilford Island, Guauaenok (Gwawaenuk) of Drury Inlet, Hahuamis (Hakwamish) of Wakeman Sound and the Komkytis, of Thompson Sound. Today, there is a permanent village in Kingcome Inlet, with a population of approximately 100 people (Midori Nicolsen 2002), although both areas are only accessible by boat. The Stafford, Apple and Homathoko rivers were not known to have been fished commercially or by First Nations.

The First Nations people in this area held strong beliefs regarding the protection of the eulachon. In 1883, Captain Edward Brotchie, traveled to Knights Inlet to engage in the eulachon fishery. However, the Kwawkewlth people "refused to sell, give, or allow him to catch any," or to even take any of the plentiful black cod (*Anoplopoma fimbria)*, for fear that the eulachon would be "ashamed and never come back" (Swan 1881).

> Knight's Inlet (Twawattee)…is the great place of resort for all Kwaw-kewlth tribes. The delicious oulachan, so highly prized by the natives as an element of food, visit this place in unlimited numbers, and every year, without fail, afford these Indians a carnival of delight (Canada 1882).

Since the rivers of Knight and Kingcome Inlets were the only rivers fished regularly in this area, only they will be discussed in this section. The Klinaklini eulachon run was generally larger than that of the Kingcome River. This trend can generally be seen in the annual catches recorded from each river, between 1943 and 1977, by DFO (Figure 2.20). The eulachon catch in Knight Inlet were estimated between 18 and 90 t annually during this period. In the late 1800s, the Kwakwaka'wakw, were recorded to have caught "immense quantities" for food, oil and as articles of trade (Swan 1885). Kingcome Inlet catches have occasionally been included with Knight Inlet. However, when reported separately, they were estimated at around 9 t annually (1960 and 1966) (Common Resources Consulting Ltd. 1998). In the early 1900s, the annual combined grease production of Knight and Kingcome Inlets was approximately fifteen hundred gallons (Curtis 1915). When this amount of grease is converted to tonnes of fresh eulachon, using the Chapter 3 parameter of 14.08 gallons/tonne of fresh eulachon), the catch equals approximately 100 t of fresh eulachon. This estimation is comparable with years of high catches (91 t) recorded by DFO (Figure

2.20). In the past there have been a few years of eulachon commercial catches taken from this area (Figure 2.20). These commercial catches in the 1940s were caught and used for food supplies in the fur farm industry (Common Resources Consulting Ltd. 1998). This led to several separate demands by the First Nations in this area to reserve the eulachon fishery for their exclusive "use and benefit" and to stop commercial fishing in the area (Common Resources Consulting Ltd. 1998). Thus commercial eulachon fishing in the area was banned by DFO in 1947 to preserve "an ancient and traditional food supply for the Indians" (Common Resources Consulting Ltd. 1998). The only other eulachon fishery in this area was conducted by white fishers from Sointula (Figure 2.20) who supplied small quantities of eulachon for fresh consumption to the local people in the Alert Bay area, (Common Resources Consulting Ltd. 1998).

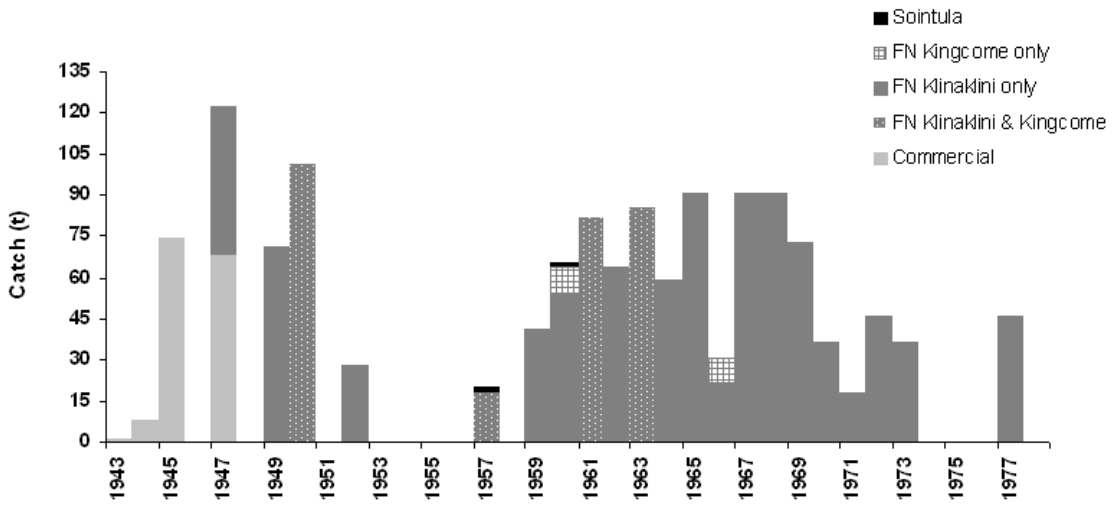



Figure 2.20. FN and commercial eulachon catches recorded in Knight and Kingcome Inlets. Commercial catch (light grey), Klinaklini First Nation (FN) catch (dark grey), Kingcome FN catch (grey checkered), Klinaklini and Kingcome FN catch (dark grey with spots) and Sointula fishers (black). Source: Common Resources Consulting Ltd. 1998

Declining runs in the Kingcome River were first reported in 1973, as a "very small" run was seen in 1971 and "light catches" were reported in 1972 (Common Resources Consulting Ltd. 1998). There is limited documentation for these river systems after 1977 and throughout the 1980s. By the mid 1990s, several BC eulachon runs, including the Klinaklini River, were thought to be in decline (Hay and McCarter 2000). A 1995 study estimated the Klinaklini

River's spawning biomass at approximately 40 t, which was thought to be approximately 15% of the historic run size (Berry and Jacob 1998). A similar 1997 study on the Kingcome River, estimated the biomass at 14.35 t, also thought to be a fraction of past runs (Berry and Jacob 1998). Larval surveys conducted in 1994 and 1997, estimated the approximate eulachon spawning biomass of the Johnston Strait Region at 107.43 t and 48.28 t, suggesting a greater than 50% decline in abundance between the 3 years (McCarter and Hay 1999). By 2000, the Kingcome run was reported to be "poor or nil" and the Klinaklini "very low" (Hay and McCarter 2000). However, in 2001 the Kingcome run improved and was considered "good" in 2002, with approximately 330 gallons of grease produced (Midori Nicolsen 2002). Since then the run has fluctuated. Midori Nicolsen, a member of the Tsawataineuk First Nation and a participant in the Kincome eulachon fishery, confirmed that the 2003 and 2004 seasons were poor and only an average run was seen in 2005 (Midori Nicolsen, pers. comm. 2007). In 2006, the Kingcome run was absent and only small returns were seen in 2007 (Midori Nicolsen, pers. comm. 2007). Over the past few decades, the Klinaklini River has suffered years with low returns, although never a complete failure of the run (Fred Glendale pers. comm. 2007). Robert Duncan, a member Da'naxda'xw/Awaetlala and an eulachon fisher witnessed low returns during the 2004 and 2005 seasons (Robert Duncan pers. comm. 2007). But in 2007, the Klinaklini returns improved and, overall, it appeared to be a "very good run," (Fred Glendale pers. comm. 2007).

## 2.4.3 BC South Coast

### 2.4.3.1 Fraser River Area

**Fisheries:** Fraser River and the Squamish River
**Rivers:** First Nation fishery, Commercial Fishery, large recreational fishery

The two known eulachon rivers in the South Coast area of British Columbia are the Fraser and Squamish Rivers (Figure 2.21). Of these, the Fraser River has the largest eulachon annual run and eulachon catches. The eulachon usually begin to ascend the Fraser River at the end of March and run until the middle of May (Robson 1993). The Fraser River is one of the larger eulachon rivers on the Pacific Coast and eulachon travel long distances up the river to spawn. The farthest distance that eulachon have been known to spawn is Hope (154 km

east of Vancouver) (DFO 1940-1979) (Figure 2.21). However, more commonly they do not pass Chilliwack (100 km east of Vancouver) (Duff 1952) and the main spawning areas seem to be in the thirteen km between Chilliwack and Mission (Scott and Crossman 1973). The three fishing sectors on the Fraser include: First Nation, commercial and recreation. Recent runs have been so poor that no eulachon have been captured from any of these fishing sectors. The First Nations groups that have participated in the Fraser River eulachon fishery in the most recent years are the: Musqueam, Tsawwassen, Kwantlen, Kwikwetlem, Katzie and Tsleil Watuth First Nations (DFO 2004) (Figure 2.21). However, other groups from the Stó:lō population[5] have fished for eulachon in the past. These groups caught eulachon for fresh consumption and for smoking, but did not produce eulachon oil (Duff 1955). The reasons for this can only be surmised. One reason may be that First Nations in this area historically did not need eulachon grease for winter survival, as the climate is much milder than that of Northern British Columbia. Or it could be possible that eulachon of the Fraser River were not captured when their fat resources were most plentiful, thus making grease production ineffective. A Musqueam First Nation man once reported that he had no recollection of eulachon being caught "going up the North Arm" as the fish migrated up the main river and were later swept down the North Arm in a weakened condition, thus eulachon caught in the North Arm were "good for eating fried but were mainly smoked" as the "oil was all gone [thus] they kept better" (Forbes and Harris 1974-1989).

[5] Stó:lō historically was the collective name of the First Nations located along the Upper Fraser River. However, the Stó:lō Nation today consists of 11bands and the Stó:lō Tribal Council includes 8 bands.


Figure 2.21. Approximate locations of eulachon rivers, First Nations reserves, and cities in the Fraser River/Vancouver Area.

The First Nations and recreational fisheries were estimated to generate a catch of 10 t of eulachon annually (Hay *et al*. 2003) although, at one time, a considerable portion of the eulachon catch was taken by First Nations and local residents for personal consumption (McHugh 1941). Recreational and First Nation catch data are limited for the Fraser River. However, for the Mission District between 1956 and 1982 some reports are available from local DFO Fisheries Officers (Figure 2.22). The only First Nations catch reported separately came from the Steveston District, for the Musqueam First Nation (Figure 2.22). The reported Musqueam catch was multiplied by six as an approximate way to include the catch of the other five main Fraser River eulachon fishing Nations. This is probably low as there were probably more than five First Nations groups fishing for eulachon historically. One year of recreational catch was found reported from the Steveston District, in 1982 (1,000 pounds or 0.45 t); thus a portion of recreational catch from the Fraser River is also missing from Figure 22. Therefore, the total recreational catch is probably slightly underestimated in this figure. However, this graph gives an approximate account of First Nation and recreational catches on the Fraser River for approximately thirty years. The total First Nation catch for the 2003 season was estimated to be 5,674 lbs or 2.57 t (DFO 2004).

Historically, there was no limitation on the recreational fishery and catches were submitted voluntarily using a log book program (DFO 2007). The daily limit was set at 20 kg, with a possession limit of 40 kg (DFO 2007). Due to low returns, the recreational sector was closed from 1998-2000 (Hay *et al.* 2003) and reopened from 2001-2004, after in-season estimates of abundance increased. Daily limits during this time were reduced to 5 kg/day and fishing times were restricted to daylight hours (Hay *et al.* 2003). Since 2005, the recreational fishery has remained closed.

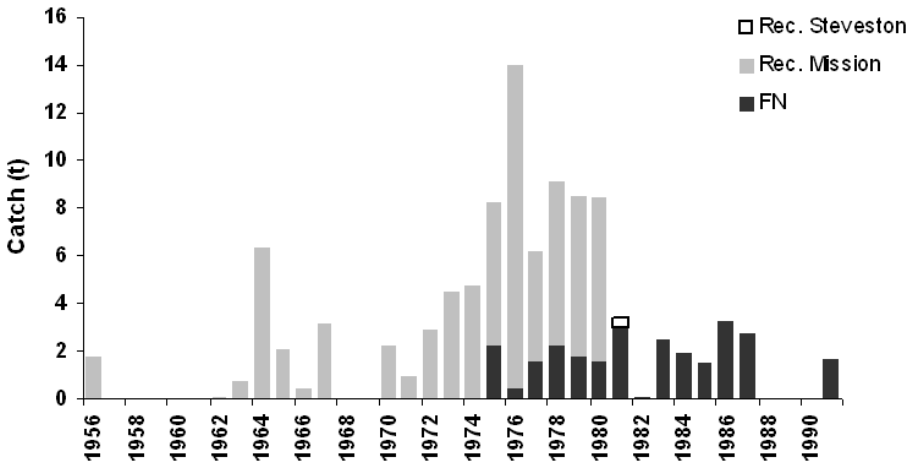



Figure 2.22. Recreational and First Nation eulachon catches in the Fraser River.
Source: FN catches- (Fast 1992); Steveston catch- (Forbes and Harris 1974-1989); Mission catch- (DFO 1940-1979)

Today the Fraser River eulachon commercial fleet is small, with a total of 16 eligible license holders, although historically the fishery has occurred since the early part of the twentieth century (Hay *et al.* 2003). A limited fishery was initiated in 1997, after more than 70 fishers participated during the 1996 season, an increase from the past average of 22, when rumours of future management changes circulated (Hay *et al.* 2003). The commercially caught eulachon have mainly been used for local food consumption, but in the past catches were also exported, as a source of feed, for fur farmers in the State of Washington (McHugh 1941). In 1903 the marketed value of the eulachon province wide was placed fifth among the fisheries of British Columbia, however, since 1938 the value of the fishery has been insignificant (McHugh 1941). Historically, the commercial fishery has been managed passively and driven by market demand. Thus the commercial catch is not a good indicator of relative abundance (McHugh 1941) as catch changes most likely reflect fishing pressure only fifty percent of the time and (Ricker *et al.* 1954).

The state of the Fraser River eulachon run first became worrisome in 1939, as local fishers and buyers voiced concerns, resulting in an investigation and the introduction of daily catch forms in the commercial sector (McHugh 1941). The conclusions of the 1939 investigation of catch statistics, suggested the run had declined from 1921 to 1939 (McHugh 1939). From 1941 to 1954 the run was thought to have improved as there was a gradual increase in catch

(Ricker *et al.* 1954). First Nations in this area have noticed declines in the run since 1952, as the eulachon are no longer seen spawning in some areas (Bailey 2000).

As mentioned previously, the area upstream of Mission was the main spawning grounds for the Fraser eulachon. From 1957 to 1961 the eulachon run failed to return east of Mission and much concern was expressed in 1961 by the Fisheries Officer, JB Hawley, who worked in Mission-Harrison District:

> No Oulachons have been reported in the Mission Area this month. I am of the opinion that the Oulachon run to the Fraser River is not receiving the protection it deserves. Numerous local fishermen are of the same opinion. These runs are no longer able to support a commercial fishery in my opinion (DFO 1940-1979).

In response to demands made by the United Fishermen and Allied Worker Union and the Native Brotherhood of BC, and possibly due to the lack of eulachon returning to their traditional spawning grounds, DFO announced changes to the regulations of the Fraser River eulachon commercial fishery in 1957. In "the interests of conservation" for eulachon, the use of drag nets and trawls were banned, the commercial fishery was closed during the weekend, and portions of the Fraser River, east of Mission Bridge and a portion of Pitt River, were closed for commercial purposes (Anonymous 1957). Thus, the commercial fishery was limited to the use of drift gill nets, which commonly take more of the larger sized males allowing the smaller females to get through (Anonymous 1957). It is possible that this type of eulachon fishing gear, unique to the Fraser River, is the reason that this is the only river to report that "males predominate early in the run and appear to be more numerous at all times than the females, which arrive later" (Scott and Crossman 1973). Other rivers such as the Kemano River (Lewis *et al.* 2002), the Nass River (Langer *et al.* 1977) and the Bella Coola River (Section 3.3.5.6) all report that females arrive first.

Although the stock has seen small declines over several decades, a sharp and very noticeable decline in catches occurred in 1994 (Hay and McCarter 2000). Early in the 1994 season, a moratorium was requested by the Musqueam First Nation, and then later declared by DFO, due to conservation concerns (VISTA Strategic Information Management Inc. 1994). The fishery was closed in 1997 and commercial catches have only been taken in two of the last

ten seasons, 2002 (5.76 t) and 2004 (0.44 t) (DFO 2006). On average, between 1941 and 1996 commercial catches were approximately 78 t annually (Figure 2.23).

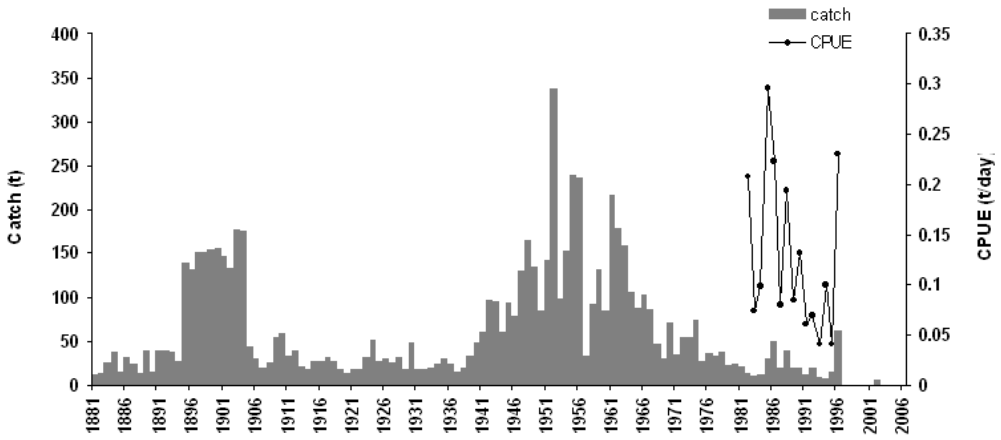



Figure 2.23. Commercial eulachon catch and CPUE from the Fraser River.
Sources: catch 1881-1940 Clemens and Wilby 1946; catch 1941-1953 (Ricker *et al*. 1954); catch 1954-2000 (Hay and McCarter 2000); catch 2001-2006 (DFO 2007); and CPUE data (DFO 2008).

## Current management

Currently DFO uses three pre-season and one in-season indicator, to manage the Fraser River eulachon fishery (Therriault and McCarter 2005). These indicators include Fraser River egg and larval surveys, the eulachon offshore biomass index from the shrimp survey, Columbia River catch and the Fraser River test fishery. The Fraser River test fishery is the only indictor for in-season abundance (Figure 2.24). It originally began in 1995 and operated on the number of cumulative catches. The reasoning behind the test fishery was that when less than 5,000 pieces (individual fish) indicated a low return, but when 10,000 or greater were caught, it indicated a good spawning run, and all sectors were open to fishing (DFO 2004). As it is self-funded and in the past few seasons all other indicators have pointed at low abundance, the test fishery has not operated since 2005 (DFO 2006).

The pre-season indicators are used as either a reference point for the next year's run strength or a measurement of the current year's run strength. The offshore eulachon abundance indices are based on the annual shrimp trawl surveys conducted by the DFO Science Branch

during May. These surveys have been conducted since 1973. The West Coast Vancouver Island (WCVI) estimates are used as a reference point for the next year's Fraser River run as it is generally accepted that the WCVI eulachon consists of Fraser and Columbia River eulachon (Therriault and McCarter 2005). The Columbia River catch is considered an indicator for the current year's Fraser run strength, as it is fished in January and February, before the Fraser run begins. It has been suggested that when Columbia River catches are less than 500 t, Fraser River eulachon may also suffer depressed catches (Hay *et al.* 2003). Lastly, the Fraser egg and larvae surveys provide an estimate of spawning biomass and an indication of the past year's run strength (DFO 2006) (Figure 2.24). The Fraser spawning stock biomass (SSB) has been estimated by DFO from 1995 to 2006. The biomass peaked in 1996 and has been very low from 2004-2006 (Therriault and McCarter 2005). Hay *et al.* (2003) have suggested that a low SSB (<150 t) is a cause for concern, and if it is low for two consecutive years, all fishing should be curtailed.

Mixtures of positive and negative indicators make it hard to decide when or if, to open this fishery and to which sectors (Hay *et al.* 2003). For 2005, the First Nations eulachon fishery was slated to open if 7500 pieces were caught in the test fishery, however, fewer than 900 were caught and no fishery occurred in any of the three fishing sectors for 2005 (Hay *et al.* 2003). For 2006, all three fishing sectors were closed to eulachon fishing due to conservation concern (DFO 2006).

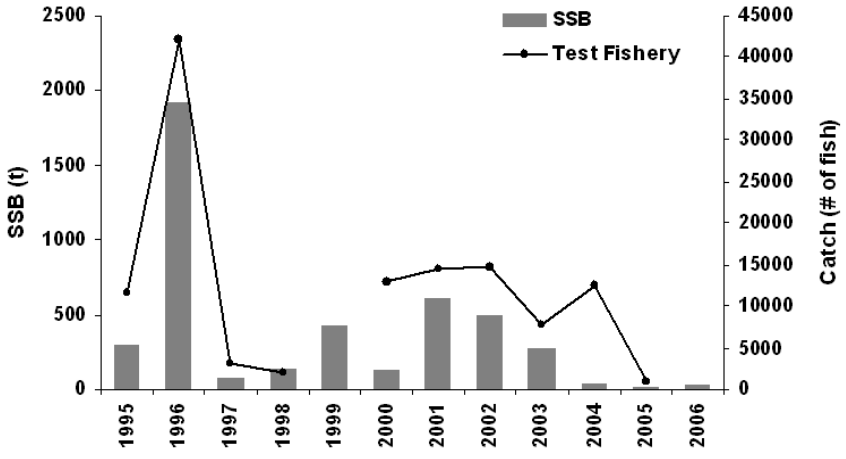



Figure 2.24. Eulachon spawning stock biomass (SSB) and number of eulachon caught in the test fishery in the Fraser River.
Source: DFO 2007.

## 2.5 Washington/Oregon

There are approximately twenty rivers within the states of Washington and Oregon that have had eulachon spawning runs (Table 2.3) (Willson *et al.* 2006). The Columbia River is the largest eulachon river in both of these states, and possibly the largest eulachon run in the world (Washington and Oregon Department of Fish and Game (WDFW & ODFW) 2004). The discussion for this area will focus on the Columbia watershed (Figure 2.25). The lower Columbia River separates the states of Washington and Oregon. Therefore, the Columbia mainstem is managed jointly by both states. The eulachon enter the lower Columbia River in early to mid January and peak in abundance during February, in the tributaries (WDFW & ODFW 2005). The eulachon travel annually up the Columbia River mainstem as far as the Bonneville Dam. However, prior to the dam being built, they were known to travel as far as the Hood River (Smith and Saalfeld 1955), approximately 35 km farther upstream. The eulachon are also known to return, although less regularly, to the Columbia River tributaries: Grays, Skamokawa, Cowlitz, Kalama, Lewis and Sandy Rivers (WDFW & ODFW 2001).

Table 2.3. Eulachon rivers located in the states of Washington and Oregon.

| State | Rivers | Past/Present Fisheries |
|---|---|---|
| Washington[a] | Bear, Naselle, Nemah, Wynoochee, Quinault, Queets, Nooksack | |
| Both States | **Columbia River and tributaries**: Grays, Skamokawa, Elchoman, Cowlitz, Kalama, Lewis and Sandy | Large commercial<br>Large recreational<br>Small First Nation |
| Oregon[b] | Yaquina, Siuslaw, Umpqua, Coos, Coquille, Sixes, Elk, Euchre, Rogue, Hunter, Pistol, Chetco, Winchuck | |

Source: [a]WDFW 2001; [b]Willson *et al*. 2006.

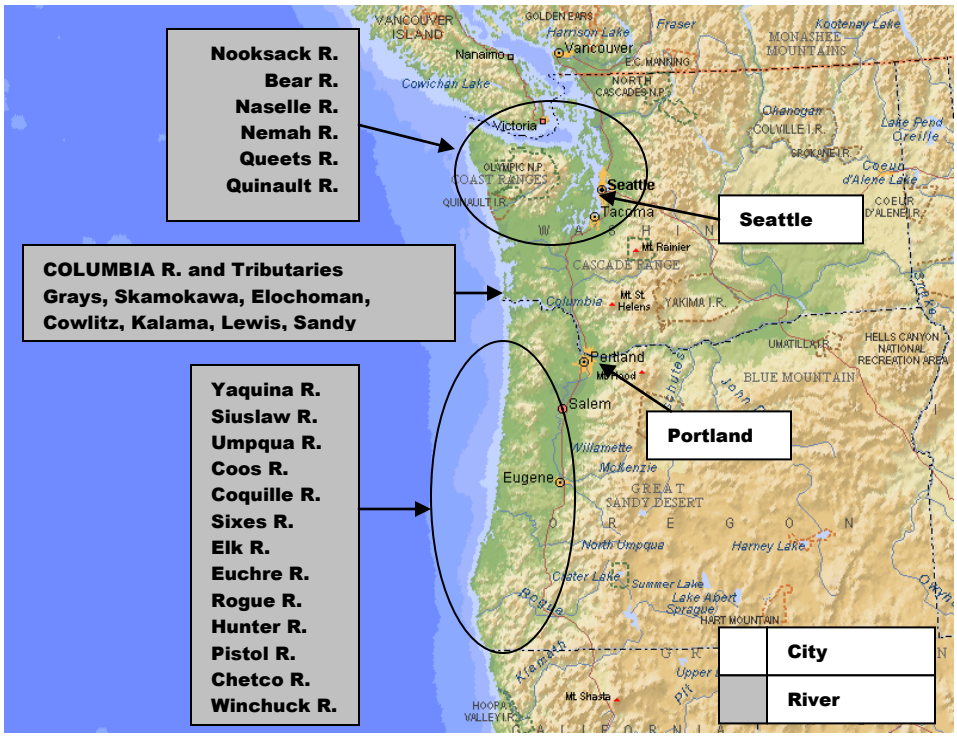



Figure 2.25. Eulachon rivers, with reference cities, in the states of Washington and Oregon.

The Columbia River eulachon fishery currently has three sectors: a small tribal fishery and a large commercial and recreational sector. The First Nations of the lower Columbia River have fished for eulachon for centuries. This is the subsistence sector of the eulachon fishery and involves the members of the Yakima Nation. The Yakima Nation includes members of the Cowlitz Band, whose annual catch is relatively small when compared to the commercial catch (WDFW & ODFW 2001). The commercial fishery first began around the late 1800s (Hinrichsen 1998) and has supplied fresh bait for sport sturgeon anglers and fresh fish for the market. Prior to 1995, the commercial and recreational sectors had only minor regulatory changes; from 1960 to 1977 the commercial fishery was open year round, 3 ½ days per week, but beginning in 1978 the season was expanded to seven days per week (WDFW & ODFW 2005). This is the largest eulachon commercial fishery in the world, with landings averaging 953 t annually from 1938-1989 (WDFW & ODFW 2004) (Figure 2.26). However, during the 1993 and 1994 seasons, commercial landings were down (226.8 t and 19.5 t) resulting in 1995 fishery restrictions that reduced the number of fishing days per week (WDFW & ODFW 2004). Further restrictions were introduced to the commercial fishery between 1997 and 2000, resulting in the fishery being modified to a test fishery to provide fisheries

managers with the data needed to assess run strength and provide biological samples (WDFW & ODFW 2004). The very popular dip net sport fishery, which historically was open year round, had limited openings during the low runs of 1997-2000 and 2004-2006 (WDFW & ODFW 2005). This fishery occurs primarily in the tributaries and catches rarely occur in the mainstem of the Columbia River (WDFW & ODFW 2001). Limited creel census data suggests that the catch of the recreational fishery, which involves thousands of participants when the eulachon run is abundant, may equal that of the commercial fishery (WDFW & ODFW 2005). The daily limits for the sports fishery range between 10 and 20 pounds (4.5 and 9 kg) per person in Washington and 25 pounds (~11kg) per person in Oregon (WDFW & ODFW 2005).

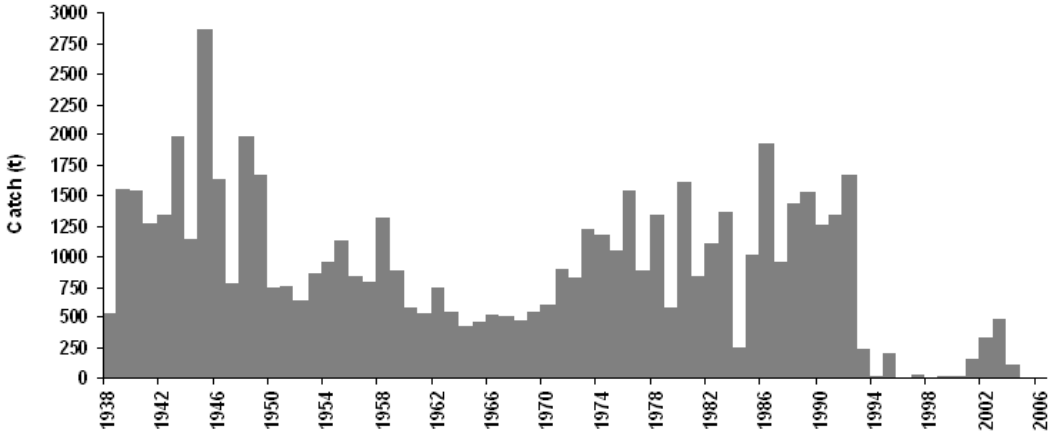



Figure 2.26. Eulachon commercial landings from the Columbia River.
Source: ODFW & WDFW 2005.

Up until the mid 1990s, commercial landings were quite stable in the Columbia River, with the exception of 1984, which was thought to have been affected by the 1982-83 El Niño event (WDFW & ODFW 2004). Even though the Columbia River catches declined suddenly in 1993 historical documents indicate that major declines have occurred in the past:

> [Eulachon] was once abundant in the Columbia, but that stream being now disturbed by the traffic of steamers, it is only now in exceptional years that they are caught there in any quantity (Brown 1868).
>
> Formerly resorting in enormous shoals to the estuary of the Columbia River, [eulachon] disappeared suddenly about the year 1837, and continued to

> absent itself for many years, until recently when it suddenly reappeared in shoals as numerous as of yore (Canada 1877).

A 1999 petition to list the Columbia River eulachon under the Endangered Species Act was accepted and reviewed by the National Marine Fisheries Service, but a listing was not proposed "due to the lack of adequate information for stock status determination" (WDFW & ODFW 2004). The runs to the Columbia tributaries have also failed in some years. The Cowlitz River eulachon were reported to be scarce (1938, 1949, 1959 and 1979) and absent (1950-51, 1965 and 1977) in some years (Hinrichson 1998). The Sandy River run also disappeared in the past (1988 to 1999) however, in 2000 the run returned and in 2003 there were commercial landing for the first time since the 1980s (WDFW & ODFW 2004). The Columbia River eulachon returns remained at record lows between 1994 and 2000, but improved CPUE in the commercial fishery and large larval abundance suggested the abundance had improved between 2000 and 2003 (Figure 2.27) (WDFW & ODFW 2005). However, poor returns were again seen in 2004 and 2005, with record low commercial landings in 2005 (0.09 t) (WDFW & ODFW 2005). The 2006 season was considered "poor" with only slight improvements in commercial catch (5.94 t) (WDFW & ODFW 2005). These are however extremely small when compared to historic catches.

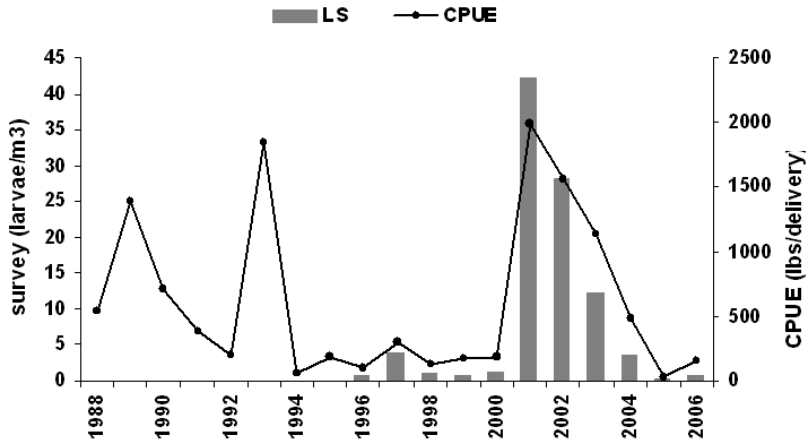



Figure 2.27. Eulachon larval survey estimates (LS) and CPUE from the Columbia River. Source: ODFW & WDFW 2005.

## 2.6 California

**Rivers:** Klamath, Redwood, Mad, Smith and possibly the Russian
**Fisheries:** First Nation (Yurok tribe) and recreational fisheries

Historically the major eulachon rivers in California were the Klamath River in Del Norte County and the Mad River and Redwood Creek in Humboldt County (Odemar 1964). There are incidental reports of eulachon returning to the Smith River. However, these runs were not large or regular (Moyle *et al.* 1995). The southernmost capture of eulachon was off the coast of California in April 1964, five miles southwest of Bodega Bay, Sonoma County (Odemar 1964). As a result of these catches, the California Department of Fish and Game increased the most southern range of eulachon, to approximately 180 miles south of the Mad River (Figure 2.28). Six fish were also captured near the mouth of the Russian River in April 1963. However, no runs have ever been reported returning to this river or any other river south of the Mad River (Odemar 1964). The eulachon runs in northern California start in December and January and peak in abundance during March and April (Larson and Belchik 1998). In California, eulachon were never commercially important, yet they were fished recreationally and were of great importance to the Yurok Tribe. The only reported commercial catch occurred in 1963 when a combined total of 56,000 lbs (25 t) was landed from the Klamath River, the Mad River and Redwood Creek (Odemar 1964).

Until the mid 1970s, the Mad River and Redwood Creek had heavy eulachon runs, (Moyle *et al.* 1995), but the Klamath run, has been the largest in California (Fry 1973) and last had a "noticeable" run during the late 1980s, according to Yurok Tribal elders (Larson and Belchik 1998). One member of the Yurok tribe reported that the last large run of eulachon occurred in 1988, with a smaller run in 1989, and only a "few" were caught in 1990 and 1991 (Larson and Belchik 1998). During the 1996 season, the Yurok Tribal Fisheries Program attempted to capture eulachon in the Klamath River, spending a total of 119 staff hours, with no success. However, one Yurok tribal member captured one eulachon in March 1996 while fishing for lamprey (*Lampetra tridentate*) (Larson and Belchik 1998). Thus the eulachon have virtually disappeared from this area since the early 1990s. The California eulachon are not the only anadromous fish in this area to suffer major declines. Moyle (1994) reported that the eulachon was one out of thirteen California anadromous fishes in decline. He also developed a subjective scale, to indicate the factors contributing to the decline of these fishes

and determined that the greatest impacts on the eulachon in this area were: water degradation (e.g. logging and urbanization), diversions (e.g. dams and irrigation), ocean conditions (e.g. El Niño) and predation (enhanced populations).

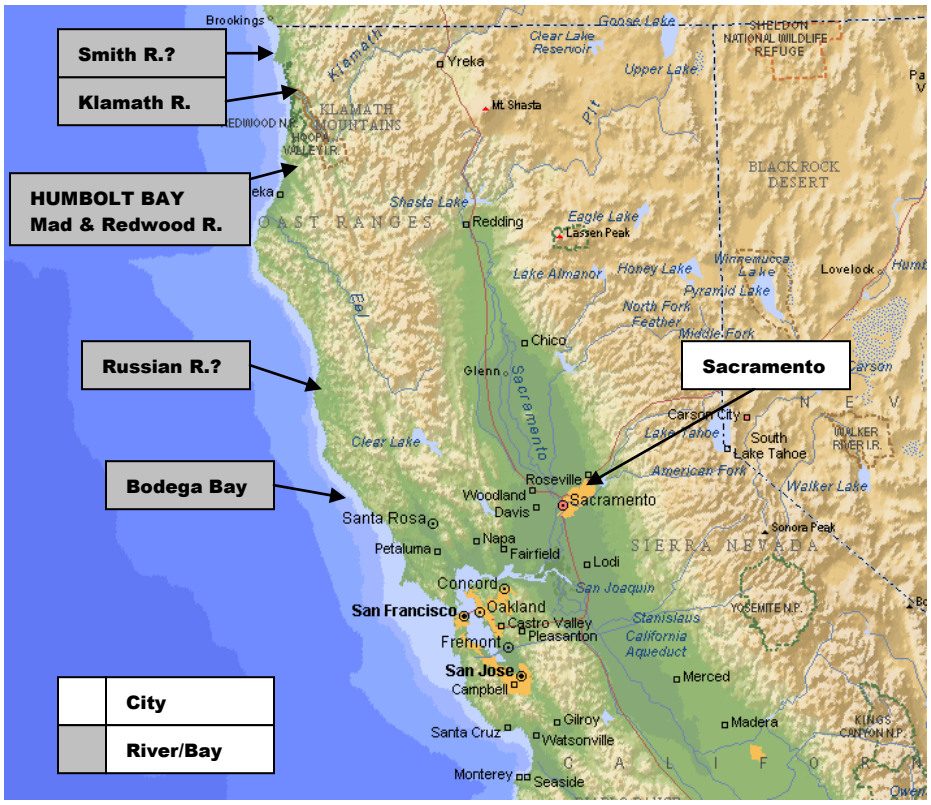



Figure 2.28. Eulachon river locations, with reference city, in the state of California.

# References


Anonymous. 2001. Eulachon run comes in strong, unusually early. *Chilkat Valley News*, Haines, Alaska. Retrieved February 6, 2007 from http://www.chilkatvalleynews.com/archive/2001-16-4.html

Anonymous. 1957. Eulachon trawling on Fraser banned by Fisheries Department. *The Fisherman*, Vancouver, British Columbia, 19 March.

Bailey, M. 2000. Eulachon Research Council May 2000. Minutes summarizing meeting in New Westminister, Terrace and Bella Coola, BC. *In* formal joint report prepared jointly by BC Forests and Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 24 p.

Barbeau, M. 1952. Manuscript, Northwest Coast files. Canadian Museum of Civilization. B.F. 453.3

Bartlett, L. & Dean, A. 2007. Eulachon: wildlife notebook series. Alaska Department of Fish and Game. Retrieved January 20, 2007, from http://www.adfg.state/ak.us/pubs/notebook/fish/eulachon.php

Berry, M. D. & Jacob, W. 1998. 1997 Eulachon research on the Kingcome and Wannock Rivers. Final report to the Science Council of British Columbia (SCBC #96/97-715). 62 p.

Betts, M. F. 1994. The subsistence hooligan fishery of the Chilkat and Chilkoot Rivers. Alaska Department of Fish and Game: Division of Subsistence, technical paper no. 213, Juneau, Alaska. 69 p.

Bigsby, K. 2004. New twist on familiar traditions planned for eulachon season. *The Chilkat Valley News*, Haines, Alaska, 29 April. Retrieved February 6, 2007, from http://www.chilkatvalleynews.com/archive/2004-17-4.html

Boaz, F. 1909. The Kwakiutl of Vancouver Island. *Memoir of the American Museum of Natural History* **5**(2)**:** 456-69.

Brown, R. 1868. Observations on the medicinal and economic value of the oulachon, a fish belonging to the family Salmonidae, found on the North-West Coast of America. *Pharmaceutical Journal*. June**.**

Burrows, B. 2005. Unpublished. Oolichon study on the Wannock and Kilbella rivers March/April, 2005. Wuikinuxv Fisheries Department. Rivers Inlet, British Columbia.

Burrows, B. 2006. Unpublished. Rivers Inlet oolichan project 2006. Wuikinuxv Fisheries Department. Rivers Inlet, British Columbia.

Canada. 1877. Report of the inspector of fisheries for British Columbia for the year 1876. *Canada Sessional Papers* (no.5) appendix no.21. Page 345.

Canada. 1878. Report of the inspector of fisheries for British Columbia for the year 1877. *Canada Sessional Papers* (no. 17). Page 292.

Canada. 1878-1914. Yield and value of different fisheries in the province of British Columbia from 1878-1914. *In Canada Sessional Papers,* reports of the inspector of fisheries for British Columbia.

Canada. 1882. Annual report of the Department of Indian Affairs 1881. *Canada Sessional Papers* (no.6). Maclean. Roger & Co., Ottawa. Page 141.

Canadian Bureau of Statistics. 1917-1976. Fish caught and marketed. Fisheries statistics of Canada.

Clemens, W. & Wilby, G. 1946. Fishes of the Pacific Coast of Canada (1st edition). Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin no.68. 368 p.

Collison, H. 1941. The oolachon fishery. *British Columbia Historical Quarterly* **5**(1) (January): 25-31.

Collison, W. H. 1916. *In the wake of the war canoe: a stirring record of forty years' successful labour, peril, and adventure amongst the savage Indian tribes of the Pacific Coast, and the piratical head-hunting Haidas of the Queen Charlotte Islands, B. C.* The Museum Book Company, Toronto, Ontario.

Common Resources Consulting Ltd. 1998. An historic overview of the Kwawkewlth, Knight, and Kingcome inlet oolachon fishery. A report prepared for the Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Vancouver, British Columbia.

Cranmer, B & National Film Board of Canada. 1999. Tlina: the rendering of wealth. Nipkish Wind Productions in co-production with the National Film Board of Canada. Colour, 50 minutes.

Csepp, D. & Vollenweider, J. 2006. Groundfish assessment program: steller sea lion response to prespawning eualchon in Southeastern Alaska. *In* quarterly research reports for Auke Bay Lab, Apr-Jun 2006. Alaskan Fisheries Science Center, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Juneau. Retrieved February 6, 2007 from: http://www.afsc.noaa.gov/quarterly/amj2006/divrptsABL3.htm

Curtis, E. 1915. *The North American Indian*, vol. 10. Johnson Reprint Corporation, New York.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 1940-1979. Fisheries Inspectors weekly reports and annual narrative reports. Districts of: Chilliwack-Hope, Mission-Harrison, Steveston, Chilliwack-Yale. Vancouver, British Columbia.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 1941-1973. Fisheries Inspectors weekly reports and annual narrative reports (1941-46, 1948, 1950, 1953-60, and 1965-73). Nass and Skeena sub-districts. Prince Rupert, British Columbia.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 1951-1984. British Columbia catch statistics by area and type of gear (as reported on sales slips received by the department). Fisheries Management, Pacific Region.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 1967-68 & 1971. Fisheries Inspectors weekly reports and annual narrative reports. Rivers Inlet District. Rivers Inlet, British Columbia.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 1969-1973. Fisheries Inspectors annual narrative reports. Butedale sub-district. Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Canada. Kitimat, British Columbia.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 1985-1995. British Columbia commercial catch statistics by species, gear, month and area. Pacific Region.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 2004. Pacific region integrated fisheries management plan: eulachon- April 1, 2004 to March 31, 2005. 26 p.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 2006. Pacific region integrated fisheries management plan- eulachon April 1, 2006 to March 31, 2007. 22 p.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 2007. Pacific region integrated fisheries management plan- eulachon April 1, 2007 to March 31, 2008. 22 p.

Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development Canada. 2007. Registered population of Oweekeno/Wuikinuxv Nation. Retrieved January 25, 2008, from: http://sdiprod2.inac.gc.ca/FNProfiles/FNProfiles_GeneralInformation.asp?BAND_NUMBER=541&BAND_NAME=Oweekeno/Wuikinuxv+Nation

Department of Marine and Fisheries and Dominion Bureau of Statistics. 1929. Fisheries Statistics, sub district no. 8 – Naas River Area, Prince Rupert, British Columbia, Canada.

Duff, W. 1952. The upper Stolo Indians. Anthropology in British Columbia memoir no.1. British Columbia Provincial Museum, Victoria. Pages 70-71.

EcoMetrix Incorporated (EcoMetrix). 2006. Summary of 2006 eulachon study results and 2007 study design. Report prepared for EUROCAN PULP and PAPER CO., Kitimat, British Columbia.

Elsey, A. 1964. Grease: a documentary of the Nuxalk Nation and the ooligan oil production on the Bella Coola River. A film by Al Elsey. Colour, 30 minutes.

Farara, D. 2000. Eulachon Research Council May 2000. Minutes summarizing meetings in New Westminister, Terrace and Bella Coola, BC. *In* formal joint report prepared jointly by BC Forests and Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 24 p.

Fast, E. 1992. Memorandum re: IFF eulachon harvest- Steveston sub-district 1974-1991. January 13. To Al. MacDonald, Biologist, from Elmer Fast, Fisheries Officer in charge. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada.

Forbes, C. & Harris, R. 1974-1989. Eulachons- summary of weekly reports of the fisheries patrol vessel Star Rock and Stuart Post for the Steveston sub-district. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada.

Fry, D.H. 1973. Anadromous fishes of California. State of California, the Resources Agency. Department of Fish and Game, Sacramento, California. 112 p.

Gibson, J. R. 1992. Otter skins. Boston ships and China goods: the maritime fur trade of the Northwest Coast, 1785-1841. McGill-Queen's University Press, Montreal. Pages 230-235.

Gordon, L. V. 1983. Memorandum re: eulachons, regulations. April 12. To G. Jaltema, District Supervisor of District 8 from L.V. Gordon, assistant District Supervisor. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada.

Haisla Fisheries. 2007. Unpublished. Kemano oolichan fishery 2007 management plan. Kitamaat Village, British Columbia.

Hay, D. E. 1995. The mysterious eulachon. *The Westcoast Fisherman*, Vancouver, BC. March.

Hay, D. E. & McCarter, P. 2000. Status of the eulachon *Thaleichthys pacificus* in Canada. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Canadian Stock Assessment Secretariat, Research Document 2000/145. 92 p.

Hay, D. E., West, K. & Anderson, A. 2003. Indicators and 'response' points for management of Fraser River eulachon: a comparison and discussion with recommendations. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Canadian Science Advisory Secretariat Document 2003/051. 44 p.

Hinrichsen, R. A. 1998. The ghost run of the Cowlitz. *Cowlitz Historical Quarterly* **40**(2): 5-21.

Iverson, S., Frost, K. & Lang, S. 2002. Fat content and fatty acid composition of forage fish and invertebrates in Prince William Sound, Alaska: factors contributing to among and within species variability. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* **241**: 161-181.

Joyce, T. L., Lambert, M. B. & Moffitt, S. 2004. Eulachon subsistence harvest opportunities final report. Office of Subsistence Management, United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Cordova, Alaska.

Kelson, J. 1996. Kitamaat River 1995 oolichan (*Thaleicthys pacificus*) study. Report prepared by the Kitamaat Village Council for the BC Ministry of Forests. 22p.

Kito, B. 2000. Eulachon Research Council May 2000. Minutes summarizing meetings in New Westminister, Terrace and Bella Coola, BC. *In* formal report prepared jointly by BC Forests and Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 24 p.

Langer, O.E., Shepherd, B.G. & Vroom, P.R. 1977. Biology of the Nass River eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*). Department of Fisheries and Environment Canada, technical report series no. PAC/T-77-10. 56 p.

Larson, Z. & Belchik, M. 1998. A preliminary status review of eulachon and Pacific lamprey in the Klamath River Basin. Yurok Tribal Fisheries Program, Klamath, California.

Lewis, A. 1997. Skeena eulachon study 1997. Report prepared by Triton Environmental Consultants Ltd., Terrace, BC and the Tsimshian Tribal Council, Prince Rupert, British Columbia for Forest Renewal BC.

Lewis, A.F.J. & Ganshorn, K. 2004. Alcan's Kemano River eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*) monitoring program: Haisla fishery monitoring 2004. Consultant's report prepared for Alcan Primary Metal Ltd., Kitimat, British Columbia.

Lewis, A. F.J., McGurk, M.D., & Galesloot, M.G. 2002. Alcan's Kemano River eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*) monitoring program 1988-1998. Consultant's report prepared by Ecofish Research Ltd. For Alcan Primary Metal Ltd., Kitimat, British Columbia. 136 p.

Marston, B. H., Willson, M. F. & Gende, S. M. 2002. Predator aggregations during eulachon *Thaleichthys pacificus* spawning runs. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* **231**: 220-239.

McCarter, P.B. & Hay, D. E. 1999. Distribution of spawning eulachon stocks in the Central Coast of British Columbia as indicated by larval surveys. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Canadian Stock Assessment Secretariat Document 99/177. 64 p.

McHugh, J.L. 1939. The eulachon. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Progress Reports of the Pacific Biological Station and Pacific Fisheries Experimental Station no. 40. Pages 17-22

McHugh, J.L. 1941. Eulachon catch statistics. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Progress Reports of Pacific Biological Station and Pacific Fisheries Experimental Station no. 49. Pages 18-19.

McNair, P. L. 1971. Descriptive notes on the Kwakiutl manufacture of eulachon oil. *Syesis* **4**: 169-177.

McNeary, S. 1974. The traditional economic and social life of the Niska of British Columbia. Canadian Museum of Civilization, Ottawa. Pages 56-60.

Mills, D. D. 1982. Historical and contemporary fishing for salmon and eulachon at Klukwan: an interim report. Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Division of Subsistence, technical paper no. 69. Juneau. 28 p.

Moffitt, S., Marston, B. & Miller, M. 2002. Summary of eulachon research in the Copper River Delta, 1998-2002. Regional information report no. 2A02-34. Anchorage: Alaska Department of Fish and Game.

Morphet, T. 2005. Fish scientist hopes study will help crack eulachon mystery. *The Chilkat Valley News***,** Haines, Alaska, 9 June. Retrieved February 6, 2007, from http://www.chilkatvalleynews.com/archive/2005-22-4.html

Morphet, T. 2006. 2006: the year in review. *Chilkat Valley News*, Haines, Alaska, 21 December. Retrieved February 6, 2007, from http://www.chilkatvalleynews.com/archive/2006-50-4.html

Moyle, P. B. 1994. The decline of anadromous fishes in California. *Conservation Biology* **8**(3): 869-870.

Moyle, P. B., Yoshiyama, R. M., Williams, J. E., and Wikramanayake, E. D. 1995. Fish species of special concern in California (second edition). California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, California. 72 p.

National Marine Fisheries Service. 1992. Recovery plan for the Steller Sea Lion (*Eumetopias jubatus*). Prepared by the Steller sea lion recovery team for the National Marine Fisheries Service. Silver Spring, MD.

Nisga'a Fisheries and Wildlife Department. 2008. Nisga'a fisheries program: final report of 2007 projects. Prepared for Nass Joint Technical Committee, New Aiyansh, BC. Nisga'a fisheries report NF07-01.

Odemar, M. W. 1964. Southern range extension of the eulachon, *Thaleichthys pacificus*. California Department of Fish and Game **50**(4): 305-307.

Orr, U. 1984. Eulachon sampling on the lower Nass River in relation to log handling. Unpublished data report. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. Prince Rupert, British Columbia or Vancouver, British Columbia. 25 p.

Pedersen, R. V. K., Orr, U. N., and Hay, D. E. 1995. Distribution and preliminary stock assessment (1993) of the eulachon, *Thaleichthys pacificus*, in the lower Kitimat River, British Columbia. Canadian Manuscript Report of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences no. 2330. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Prince Rupert, BC, North Coast Division and Habitat and Enhancement Branch, Pacific Biological Station. 23 p.

Petch, J. & Vallieres, D. 1979. Valley of the Nass, BC Magazine, Winter.

Pickard, D. & Marmorek, D. R. 2007. A workshop to determine research priorities for eulachon, workshop report. Prepared by ESSA Technologies Ltd., Vancouver British

Columbia for Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Nanaimo, British Columbia. 58 p.

Province of British Columbia Legislative Assembly. 1968. Letter re: Nass oolicans. February 16. To WR Hourston, Area Director of the Pacific Region, Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada.

Raibmon, P. 2000. Theaters of contact: the Kwakwaka'wakw meet colonialism in British Columbia and at the Chicago's World's Fair. *The Canadian Historical Review* **81**(1): 157-190.

Ricker, W. E., Manzer, D. F., and Neave, E. A. 1954. The Fraser River eulachon fishery, 1941-1953. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Manuscript report no. 583. 35 p.

Roberts, S. 1997. Cited in Lewis, A.

Robson, P. A. 1993. Fishing eulachon on the Fraser at New Westminister. *The Westcoast Fisherman*, Vancouver, British Columbia. June.

Ryan, T. 2002. Eulachon Conservation Society workshop minutes. *In* Eulachon Conservation Society meeting December 5-6, 2002, Prince Rupert, British Columbia. 24 p.

Scott, W.B. & Crossman, E.J. 1973. Freshwater fishes of Canada. Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin no.184**:** 320-325.

Shields, P. A. 2005. Unpublished. Upper Cook Inlet commercial herring and smelt fisheries, 2004. Alaska Department of Fish and Game. Report to the Board of Fisheries, 2005, Anchorage.

Shields, P. A. 2006. Upper Cook Inlet commercial fisheries annual management report, 2005. Alaska Department of Fish and Game. Fishery Management report no. 06-42. Anchorage.

Sigler, M. F., Womble, J. N. & Vollenweider, J. J. 2004. Availability to Steller sea lions (*Eumetopias jubatus*) of a seasonal prey resource: a prespawning aggregation of eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*). *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Science* **61:** 1475-1484.

Smith, W. E. & Saalfeld, R. W. 1955. Studies on Columbia River smelt, *Thaleichthys pacificus* (Richardson). Washington Department of Fisheries, Fisheries Research Papers **1**(3): 3-26.

Spangler, E. A., Spangler, R. E. & Norcross, B. L. 2003. Eulachon subsistence use and ecology investigations. United States Fish and Wildlife Service Office of Subsistence Management, fisheries resource monitoring program, final report no.00-041, Anchorage, Alaska.

Swan, J. G. 1881. The eulachon or candle-fish of the Northwest Coast. Proceedings of the United States National Museum **3**: 257-264. Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collection 1882, 22, article 1. Smithsonian Institution Press: Washington.

Swan, J. 1885. Report on black cod of the North Pacific Ocean. Bulletin of the United States Fish Commission **5**(15): 225-234. Government Printing Office, Washington.

Therriault, T. & McCarter, P. 2005. Using an eulachon indicator framework to provide advice on Fraser River harvest opportunities for 2006. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Canadian Science Advisory Secretariat Document (2005/077). 15 p.

Tirrul-Jones, J. L. 1985. Kitamaat village- Kitimat centennial museum archeological research project 1984: survey and mapping of I.R. 1. Submitted to Kitamaat Village Band Council and Kitimat Centennial Museum Association.

Tisler, T. & Spangler, R. 2003. Unpublished. 2003 eulachon harvest and distribution report. United States Forest Service. Ketchikan, Alaska.

Trites, A. W. & Donnelly, D. 2003. The decline of Steller sea lions *Eumetopias jubatus* in Alaska: a review of the nutritional stress hypothesis. *Mammal Review* **33**(1): 3-28.

United States Forest Service. 2006. Unpublished. 2001-2005 Unuk River eulachon survey summary. Ketchikan, Alaska.

United States Forest Service. 2007. Unpublished. 2006 Unuk River eulachon monitoring summary. Ketchikan, Alaska.

VISTA Strategic Information Management Inc. 1994. Draft west coast fisheries joint discussion process, in-season management & the eulachon fishery. Prepared for the Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. November 15. 2 p.

Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife & Oregon Department of Fish Wildlife. 2001. Washington and Oregon eulachon management plan. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife: Olympia. 32 p.

Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife & Oregon Department of Fish Wildlife. 2004. Joint staff report concerning commercial seasons for sturgeon and smelt in 2005.

Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife & Oregon Department of Fish Wildlife. 2005. Joint staff report concerning commercial seasons for sturgeon and smelt in 2006.

Williams, J. 1914. Letter re: petition from Nishga Indians. June 22. To Chief fisheries inspector FH Cunningham from Inspector of Fisheries, Nass District. Department of Marine and Fisheries Canada.

Willson, M., Armstrong, R., Hermans, M. & Koski, K. 2006. Eulachon: a review of biology and an annotated bibliography. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Juneau, Alaska.

Winbourne, J. L. 2002. Unpublished. 2002 Central Coast eulachon project: final report of traditional ecological knowledge surveys. Consultant's report prepared for the Oweekeno-Kitasoo-Nuxalk Tribal Council. Bella Coola, British Columbia.

Winbourne, J. L. & Dow, S. 2002. Unpublished. 2002 Central Coast eulachon project: final report of field surveys. Consultant's report prepared for the Nuxalk Fisheries Department. Bella Coola, British Columbia.

**Personal communication**

Duncan, Robert. 2007. Member and eulachon fisher of the Da'naxda'xw/Awaetlala Nation, Knight Inlet, BC. E-mail: October 2, 2007

Glendale, Fred. 2007. Member and Resource Manager of the Da'naxda'xw/Awaetlala First Nation, Knight Inlet, BC. Conversation: July 8, 2007

Johnson, Frank. 2007. Member and elected Chief of the Wuikinuxv Nation, Rivers Inlet, BC. Conversation: May 23, 2007

Nicolsen, M. 2006/07. Member and eulachon researcher of the Tsawataineuk Nation, Kingcome Inlet, BC. Telephone conversation: February 1, 2006 and Email: September 9, 2007

Roberts, D. 2006/07. Member and eulachon researcher of the Kitsumkalum Nation, Terrace BC. Telephone conversation: March 6, 2006 and February 7, 2007

Shields, P. A. 2007. Biologist, Alaska Department of Fish and Game. Cook Inlet, Alaska Email: June 26, 2007

# 3 Estimating historical catches of the Nuxalk Nation eulachon fishery[6]

> *It's… a lost segment of our society so to speak, the Nuxalk society, because there's a big gap there now. What do you do in the spring time? What do you do before winter ends?* [White] *people like to watch for the groundhog but our people used to get ready to make eulachon grease.*
>
> (048 Nuxalk Interviews 2006)

## 3.1 Introduction

For millennia, eulachon and the oil rendered from the fish have been an important source of food for coastal First Nations as well as central to social, ceremonial and economic activity. The process of rendering the oil from the eulachon has long been a tradition in most coastal First Nations communities that have spawning eulachon populations. To study this process, its fishery, and the current status of a specific eulachon river, one British Columbia First Nations community was selected, the Nuxalk Nation.

### 3.1.1 Regional overview

The Nuxalk Nation, a First Nations community located on the Central Coast of British Columbia, have caught eulachon and rendered its oil for thousands of years. During the 1860s, smallpox and other infectious disease epidemics the native villages in the Bella Coola Valley[7] were devastated. It has been estimated that the population of this area was reduced by three quarters (Kirk 1986). This horrific loss of life led to the assemblage of all remaining survivors in the area at one location, Q'um'kuts[8]. This is the site of today's village and the home of the Nuxalkmc[9], today recognized as the Nuxalk Nation. The Nuxalkmc reside in the

[6] A version of this chapter will be submitted for publication. Moody, M.F. and Pitcher T.J. Estimating the historical eulachon catches of the Nuxalk First Nation.
[7] Talio, South Bentinck, Kimsquit and Kwatna
[8] Main village of the Nuxalkmc
[9] Nuxalk people

Bella Coola Valley at the head of North Bentinck Arm (Figure 3.1). This region is characterized by steep terrain and heavy rainfall, ranging from glacier-capped mountains with elevations up to 3000 m, to deep inland saltwater fjords. The rivers and estuaries in Nuxalk territory are inhabited by six species of Pacific salmon (*Oncorhynchus* spp.) as well as many other species of fish including the eulachon. The eulachon returned in large numbers every spring to the Bella Coola River. It was the first fish to return after the winter and as a result was often called the "salvation fish" (Harrington 1967). In 1999, the eulachon failed to return in large numbers to the Bella Coola River and for the past 9 years (including 2007) this pattern has continued. These low returns have also occurred in the other rivers located within Nuxalk Territory.

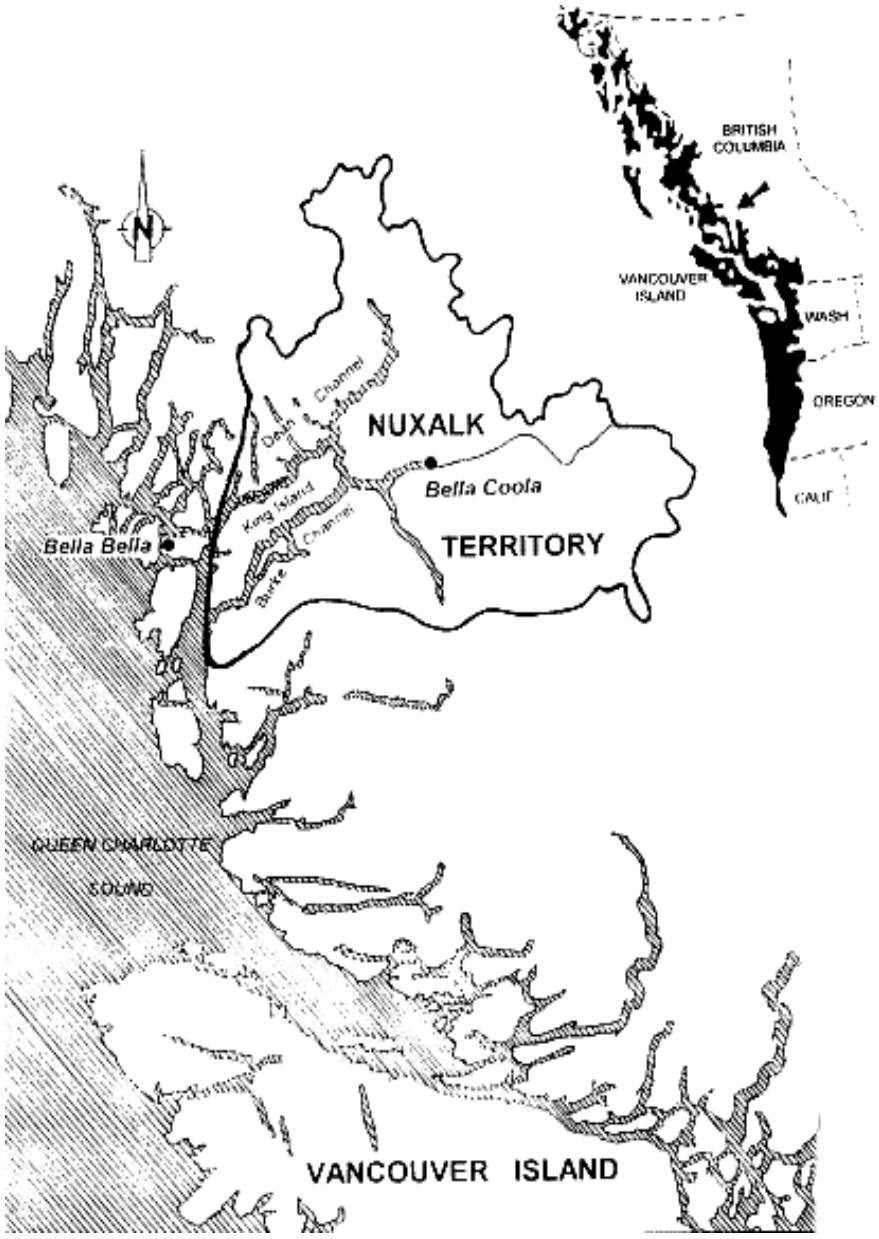



Figure 3.1. Map of Nuxalk Nation territory. Source: **www.nuxalk.org** 2008

The Bella Coola River drains 5,130 square km (Environment Canada 2008) and begins where the Talchako and Atnarko Rivers converge approximately 55 km east of North Bentinck Arm. The Bella Coola River at the town site of Bella Coola lies at 52.4ºN latitude and 126.7 ºW longitude (Environment Canada 2008). It flows westward through the valley before it exits into the Bella Coola estuary. In addition, the estuary encompasses the outflow from Paisla Creek and the Necleetsconnay River, both located just north of the Bella Coola River. Figure 3.2 displays the Bella Coola estuary and the outflows from all three rivers.

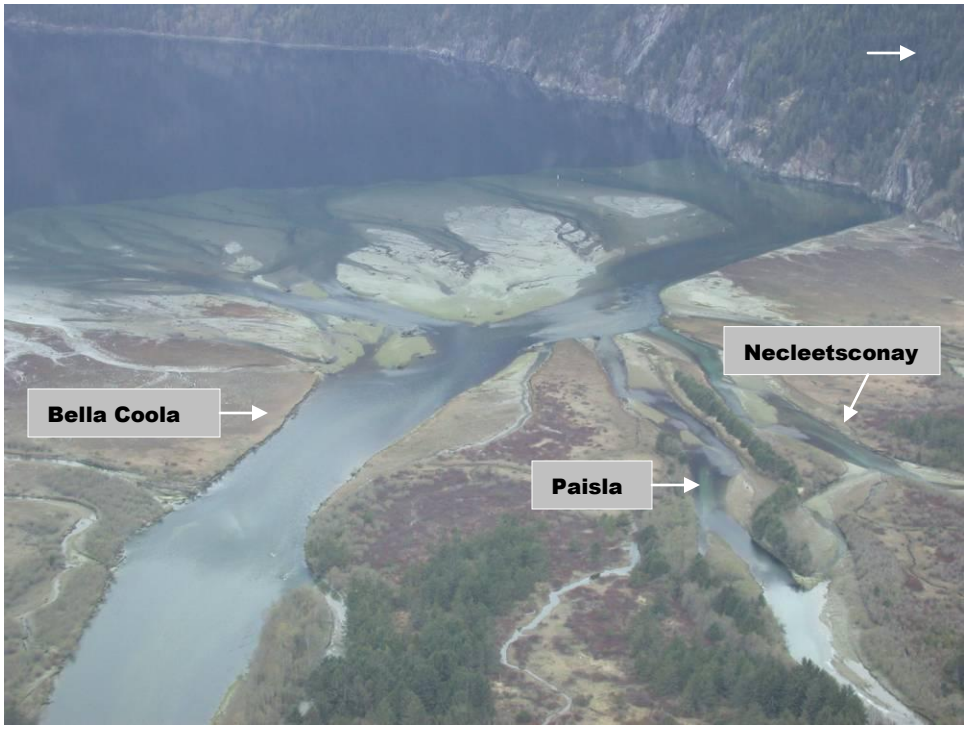



Figure 3.2. The Bella Coola estuary comprised of the Bella Coola River, Paisla Creek and the Necleetsconay River. Source: Nuxalk Fisheries Department; Jason Moody photo.

There are a total of ten rivers in Nuxalk territory, including the Bella Coola River, that have or have had eulachon runs in the past. These rivers were confirmed in 1998, when the Nuxalk Nation Band Council chartered a plane and counted the rivers with eulachon spawning in them. Wally Webber, a Nuxalk Nation member and a DFO contractor at the time, and Harvey Mack, a Nuxalk Nation Councilor, both participated in the flight. The ten rivers include: the Dean and Kimsquit Rivers in the Dean Channel, the Taleomy, Noeick and Aseek Rivers in South Bentinck Arm and the Kwatna and Quatlena Rivers in Kwatna Inlet. Previously these rivers had been regularly fished for salmon and eulachon by members of the Nuxalk Nation. However, in the early 1900s, the Canadian government enacted the reserve system which put aside small patches of lands for First Nations and restricted them to these areas. As a result, a total of seven reserves[10] (Department of Indian and Northern Development Canada 2007) were marked out around old village and fishing sites throughout Nuxalk territory. However, after the decimation of the Nuxalk population in the late 1800s, and the gathering of the surviving Nuxalk people in today's village of Bella Coola, the only

[10] Bella Coola, Noosesek, Taleomy, Kwatlena, Kemsquit, Chatscah, Skowquiltz River

rivers that were regularly fished for eulachon were the Bella Coola River and the nearby Paisla Creek.

## 3.1.2 The study

### 3.1.2.1 Study objectives

The Eulachon has not been recognized as an important commercial species in British Columbia. Therefore there have been little documentation of past catches and only recently, any examination of yearly abundance. The purpose of the study was to use interviews to attempt to describe past eulachon abundance trends and to calculate past eulachon catches in the Nuxalk eulachon fishery.

### 3.1.2.2 Approach

To study the Bella Coola eulachon fishery and the eulachon grease making process, interviews were conducted and traditional ecological knowledge (TEK) and local ecological knowledge (LEK) was collected. Twenty-seven Nuxalk eulachon grease makers and eulachon fishers, as well as, two non-native Nuxalk community members, who had previously participated in the fishery, were interviewed in early 2006. During the interviews, the participants were questioned on several topics including past eulachon fishing experience, past fishing methods, the social and economic importance of the eulachon, the production of grease, the grease-making process, the change in past abundances and the possible reasons for the eulachon decline. The information collected was used to: examine the changes in the Nuxalk eulachon fishery, examine past eulachon abundance trends and finally to estimate past eulachon catch sizes from grease production.

### 3.1.2.3 Rationale

I chose the Nuxalk Nation as a case study because as a member of the Nuxalk Nation, I have a deep concern for the Bella Coola eulachon run. As a child, I fished for eulachon with my family and witnessed the production of eulachon grease. Later I worked as the Nuxalk

Fisheries Manager to study the status of the Bella Coola eulachon. My initial fear that participation in the study would be difficult to obtain, because I was a member of the community, proved to be groundless. Participants were quite willing to take part in the study, perhaps because I had previously worked with some of them or perhaps because many of them were friends and relatives. The topic of the eulachon also appeared to be an uncontroversial topic within the community. Most participants shared a feeling of sadness towards the loss of the eulachon and many asked the same daunting question "what happened?" In order to address this question, trends in abundance and the amount of eulachon caught in the fishery needed to be known. In order to calculate past Bella Coola eulachon catches from grease production, it was first necessary to have and understanding of the Nuxalk eulachon fishery and the eulachon grease making process. Thus the interviews provided background on the importance of the eulachon fishery, changes in the fishery, and in depth detail on the grease making process.

## 3.2 Methods

I conducted field research[11] while living in the Bella Coola community for two months in 2006. Living on the Nuxalk reserve and based at the Nuxalk Integrated Resource (NIR) office, I interviewed participants at their homes or at the NIR office. The final location of an interview depended on where the participant felt most comfortable. The goal was to work with someone from each family group within the Nuxalk community. The criteria were simple the individual had to have been involved in the eulachon fishery and/or the grease-making process for at least one season. There were some families that made grease more often than other families, but at least one representative from each Nuxalk family group was included. The voices of those presented here are the expressions of twenty-seven Nuxalk individuals, and two non-First Nation community members (Table 3.1). They represent a subgroup of the Nuxalk community who were involved in the eulachon grease making process. Participants were selected through nonrandom purposive sampling. An initial contact list of the most prominent Nuxalk grease makers and eulachon fishers was provided by my father, Quatsinas (Edward Moody), a Nuxalk Nation member and a resident of Bella Coola for fifty-seven years. He advised me on the main 'grease' families and provided a list

[11] The interview methods were approved by the UBC Research Ethics Board (see Appendix 2 for approval certificate)

of names of those whom had participated regularly in the eulachon fishery. From there, those that actually participated in the study, were either on the list or were referred to by someone on the list. I eventually had a final list of fifty participants whom I tried to either contact initially by letter and then, if their address was unknown, by phone. Unfortunately it was not possible to interview all fifty people in the time period I allotted. Some people were sick, out of town, or chose not to participate. The interviews were concluded when the allotted time was up.

Table 3.1. General characteristics of 2006 Nuxalk interviewees

| Interviewee categories | Average age (years) | Range of ages (years) | Number of participants |
|---|---|---|---|
| **All participants** | 64 | 43-86 | 29 |
| Male | 62 | 43-81 | 22 |
| Female | 73 | 58-86 | 7 |
| **Role in eulachon fishery** | | | |
| Everything (fisher, cook, misc. helper*) | 64 | 50-81 | 14 |
| Fisher and misc. helper | 60 | 60-86 | 9 |
| Misc. helper only | 80 | 74-84 | 4 |
| Nuxalk participants | 65 | 43-86 | 27 |
| Non-Native but married to Nuxalk | 59 | 57-60 | 2 |
| **Total number interviewed** | | | **29** |

* Includes: collecting rocks, skimming the grease, preserving the grease, net mending etc.

### 3.2.1 Interview procedures

In December 2005 when visiting family, I was able to casually introduce my project to some of the potential participants as I saw them at community gatherings. In January 2006, to contact and introduce my project in more detail, to all fifty potential participants, each was sent a descriptive letter (Appendix 3) and a consent form (Appendix 4). My next visit to Bella Coola in February 2006 was used to conduct the interviews[12]. Semi-structured

[12] Each person was contacted by phone, and if they agreed to participate, a time for an interview was scheduled. Before the interview started, the nature of the research was explained and the participant was asked to sign a consent form; this indicated their voluntary participation. On the consent form, the participant specified if their name was to be used or if they would like to remain anonymous. Of the twenty-nine participants, fourteen preferred to have their name used and fifteen preferred to remain

interviews were used, as knowledge varied with each participant. The participants involved in all aspects of grease making (fishing eulachon and making the grease) seemed to be most knowledgeable regarding the amount of eulachon caught and the amount of grease made. If the person only caught eulachon but failed to participate in the making of the grease, fishing activities were known but the amount of grease made was not. Finally, the participants whose main task involved preserving the grease had general knowledge of the eulachon fishery but knew much less about the actual catch. The first part of the interview involved the systematic gathering of information and thus allowed the comparison of data between participants. The latter half consisted of more open-ended questions, where the participant could express opinions and raise questions regarding the eulachon decline thus illustrating the viewpoint of the Nuxalk community on the current issues surrounding the decline.

### 3.2.2 Data management

Twenty-two of the twenty-nine interviews were digitally recorded and the recording downloaded onto a laptop computer. Each of these interviews had a typed transcription. Five of the interviews were not recorded, at the request of the participant; however, the main points were written down during the interview and later summarized and typed into a MS Word document. At the end of the field season the participants were supplied with a printed transcript of their interview and if requested, a digital copy. Hence, each participant was given an opportunity to make changes to their interview transcript if they felt it was necessary. Once all interviews were transcribed they were saved as text files and imported into the qualitative software program, N6[13]. The N6 program assists in organizing large amounts of non-numerical and unstructured data, such as the kind of data that is made during interviews, note taking etc. (QSR International Pty Ltd. 2004). The program is also used to assist in interpreting and searching for patterns in the data. However, for this study, N6 was used solely for data organization. This was done by creating nodes or categories. A total of twenty-four, free-node categories and a total of eight, tree-node categories were created (Appendix 5). A free node is a category that has only one topic, for example ‘predators’ or

anonymous. Any information that was used from anonymous participants was referred to by coded number. All information gathered, has been kept confidential and under lock and key at all times.

[13] N6 = NUD*IST Version 6, and NUD*IST stands for Non-numerical Unstructured Data * Indexing Searching and Theorizing

'weather', whereas a tree-node has one topic and several subtopics, for example 'abundance' with the subtopics: 1960s, 1970s or 1980s. To sort the text into these nodes, each of the interviews had to be read, usually several times, and the corresponding text coded to the appropriate free or tree node. For example, text from all interviews, related to abundance in the 1980s was coded into the category 'abundance-1980s'. A text file report for each category was then made from within the N6 program, including all related quotes for the category. A report was printed for each free node and for each tree node. The reports greatly decreased the amount of time needed to search for quotes or information on a specific topic.

## 3.3 Results and discussion

### 3.3.1 Grease making

The grease (*sluq'*[14]) extracted from the eulachon (*sputc*[15]), formed an integral part of Nuxalk culture, as it was distributed widely in potlatches, traded with neighboring communities, and relied upon for its nutritional and medicinal uses. The production of eulachon grease, involves many activities which included: preparing the camp, catching the fish, 'aging' the fish, cooking the aged fish and eventually extracting, purifying and preserving the grease. The entire grease making process took approximately three weeks to complete and involved many people and many hours of laborious work. The first tasks started a few weeks before the fish arrived and involved preparing the camp for operation. The site was cleared of overgrown bush, firewood was cut and hauled, nets were mended and the 'stink' boxes and 'cooking' boxes were set for operation.

#### 3.3.1.1 The 'stink' box

The stink box was the container where fresh eulachon were placed, for fermentation, hence the name stink box (Figure 3.3). The fish were fermented in order to release more of their oil. The stink boxes varied in size but were approximately twelve to fourteen feet wide, twenty feet long and three and ½ feet deep (Kuhnlein *et al.* 1982). The bottom was earthen

[14] Nuxalk word for eulachon grease, pronounced 'slooq'
[15] Nuxalk word for eulachon, pronounced 'spooth'

and covered with cedar boughs, to allow blood drainage. If the blood was not drained, the grease produced would be dark and red (010 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). A stink box could hold up to 10 t of fish but more commonly held between 5 and 8 t (010 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). According to Kuhnlein *et al.* (1982) a stink box held approximately six t of eulachon. This estimate was corroborated by some of the fishers interviewed. Two of the fishers estimated that a canoe held about 1000 lbs (or 454 kg) (009 and 016 Nuxalk Interviews 2006) and another two fisherman stated that it took about three days to fill a stink box when unloading three to five canoe loads of eulachon per day (003 and 009 Nuxalk Interviews 2006), resulting in 4.0 to 6.7 t per box, supporting Kuhnlein's 1982 calculation of 6.3 t per stink box (Table 3.2).

Figure 3.3. Nuxalk 'stink' box full of fresh eulachon.
Source: Ruby Saunders photo.

Table 3.2. Amount of canoe loads of eulachon (per day) to fill a 'stink' box

| Canoe loads (1000 lbs each) | Converted to metric tons (t) | amount (t) x days to fill |
|---|---|---|
| 3/day | 1.3 | 4.0 |
| 4/day | 1.8 | 5.4 |
| 5/day | 2.2 | 6.7 |

The fish were left in the stink box for approximately eight to ten days, depending on the weather. If it was a warm year, the fish would age faster and the cooking would need to be

started earlier. Some years when there was snow on the ground, the fish would decompose more slowly. "One year it took about two weeks for them to [ferment] to the point where we could cook the grease out because it was too cold. They wouldn't break down. It was like they were in a big refrigerator" (Russ Hilland Nuxalk Interviews 2006). A sign that the fish were properly aged was the fullness of the stink box. When a full box was reduced to ½ of its original contents, the fish were ready (010 and 047 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). Another sign was the condition of the eulachon's eyes. Jimmy Nelson Sr. recalled his father telling him to "watch the eyes" because when they turned red, the fish were ready to cook (Nuxalk Interviews 2006). If it took more than a day or two to fill the box, a divider was placed between the older fish and the freshly caught fish and the first cooking started with the oldest batch. Some grease makers liked to start cooking earlier so that their grease was mild or less 'strong'. "Our grease is a little mild compared to guys that keep them ten to twelve days. We start at five days. Still fresh almost… we get less grease but we like it that way" (Harvey Mack Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

#### 3.3.1.2 Cooking

Once the eulachon were aged for the appropriate amount of time, they were placed into the 'cooking' box. The cooking box was a separate box from the stink box. The box was situated next to the stink box, on top of a layer of bricks and clay. The clay was placed around the wooden parts of the box to keep them from burning. Under the box was a small dirt trench used to house the fire. A chimney was also placed at one end of the trench to release the smoke of the fire while the opposite end was open, to access the fire.

The first step of the cooking process was to fill the box approximately a third of the way with water and to heat it until it boiled. This step usually took a few hours thus was started early in the morning. Ten out of the fourteen participants who were 'cooks' reported that the boxes were commonly four feet wide by eight feet long and approximately three to four feet deep. All fourteen stated that the bottom of the box was metal and the same size as a piece of plywood (eight feet by four feet). The eulachon were then transferred from the stink box to the cooking box, in galvanized metal wash tubs. The tubs had large slits on the bottom, to allow any remaining blood or slime to drain. Previously, other methods were used to transfer

the eulachon, such as baskets, wheelbarrows or five gallon oil buckets. The aged eulachon were then added and the mixture simmered for another three to five hours. The corners of the box were not exposed to the fire, thus the mixture had to be stirred constantly. The amount of time that it took the mixture to cook, depended on the weather, as the box was above ground and exposed to the wind and cool air. The cooking was complete when the fish were mashed to a pulp. At this stage, the grease would rise to the surface. The fire was kept to a minimum and the mixture left alone to allow the grease to settle. There was a delicate temperature balance to keep, if the grease was too cold, a skin would form on the top, making the grease difficult to extract, but if there was too much heat, the mixture boiled and the grease sank back into the mash (038 and 047 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). The grease was traditionally removed with hand-made wooden scoops but these were later replaced by some, with metal bread pans. Once the grease was removed, it was placed into large pots or buckets for the purification process.

#### 3.3.1.3 Purification process

The purification process consisted of re-cooking and straining the extracted grease. The process removed any remaining fish particles or water from the grease. Traditionally the Nuxalk used hot rocks to reheat the grease. These fist-sized rocks would be heated in the fire, removed with wooden tongs, cleaned and then placed into the container of grease. One elder Nuxalk woman described the rock purification process:

> They know how to pick the rock [up] and they dip it into the cold water to clean any ashes and then they put it into the grease…then [the grease] starts to boil. Then all the stuff comes up; like the water, the steam, because it's the oil you want not the water… so it steams and then it gets rid of the water… it sort of foams, just like when you make jelly (015 Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

In more recent years, some families switched to propane stoves to re-cook the grease. The premise was basically the same, but there was debate over which method produced the better grease. Out of the fourteen cooks interviewed, 50% used the traditional method of hot rocks. Lastly, the re-cooked grease was strained through a cheesecloth material to remove any remaining fish particles.

#### 3.3.1.4 Storage

Eulachon grease had traditionally been stored in watertight wooden boxes. After European contact, metal cans were used, followed by gallon wine jugs and more recently, sealable wide mouth jars and tin cans. The grease would keep for several years if kept in a cool storage area but it would keep even longer if kept in the fridge or in the freezer. Once sealable cans and jars came into use, the grease was said to "stay fresh" forever (Nuxalk Interviews 2006 017). The sealable methods of storage were used only during the last few decades. Prior to the 1980s, when more grease was consumed, larger containers were needed to store the grease produced. However, by the 1990s, 79%, of those whom responded, reported that their grease consumption had decreased 'a fair bit' or 'a lot' (Table 3.3). As a result, smaller amounts of longer lasting grease, was preferred.

Table 3.3. Change in Nuxalk interview participant's grease consumption from when they were a child until 1999

| **Did your grease consumption change? (Results from 19/29 participants)** | **%** |
|---|---|
| Not at all | 11 |
| A little (20-30%) | 11 |
| A fair bit (30-40%) | 26 |
| A lot (>50%) | 53 |

### 3.3.2 Importance of the eulachon and its grease

The eulachon have been an important part of Nuxalk society for thousands of years. The fish themselves are a source of food that is processed either, dried, smoked, salted or eaten fresh. The grease extracted from the fish, formed an integral part of Nuxalk culture, as it was distributed widely in potlatches, traded with neighboring communities, and relied upon for its nutritional and medicinal uses. Of those interviewed, 69% stated that the most important reason for making eulachon grease was for their diet and 14% for use as a medicine (Table 3.4). One eulachon grease maker described the ways in which eulachon grease was consumed, "we'd basically use eulachon grease to make [dried foods] slide down better, we used it quite a bit in our consumption of salmon, like smoked fish…[used it] like butter" (Horace Walkus Nuxalk Interviews 2006). In addition to being a 'condiment', the eulachon

had many nutritional qualities. In 1994, samples of eulachon grease and eulachon fish taken from five different British Columbian First Nations communities[16] were analyzed. The nutritional quality analysis revealed that eulachon grease was one of the best sources of vitamin A (RE 2400/100g) found in the natural foods of British Columbia, the analysis also revealed that the fish were a good source of Ca, Fe, and Zn (Kuhnlein *et al.* 1996).

Table 3.4. Most important reasons expressed by 2006 Nuxalk interview participants for making grease

| **Historical importance of grease** | **(% ranked 1st)** |
|---|---|
| 1) Diet | 69 |
| 2) Medicine | 14 |
| 3) Social | 7 |
| 4) Trade | 0 |
| 5) All the above | 3 |
| No answer | 7 |

Although the trade of grease was not ranked by the participants as highly as diet, trading was an important aspect of the Nuxalk economy. Trade has existed between the Nuxalk of Bella Coola and their neighboring tribes for thousands of years. To the east is the Ulkatcho (Anahim Lake), to the west the Heiltsuk (Bella Bella), Kitasoo (Klemtu) and the Wuikinuxv (formerly spelt Oweekeno) (Rivers Inlet). The only other neighboring tribe that possessed a eulachon run was the Wuikinuxv; their runs failed to return in 1997. The common exchange items included: herring eggs, halibut and clams from the Heiltsuk and Kitasoo and moose meat, soap berries and tanned hides from the Ulkatcho. Although all trading partners valued the grease as a food source, the Heiltsuk and Kitasoo prized the grease as a medicine and the Ulkatcho for tanning hides. In the past Eleanor Schooner used to trade her old grease with the Ulkatcho people, "they say, that is the softest they can get their tan, tanning hides with eulachon grease." Prior to European contact a vast network of trails used by generations of native people existed throughout British Columbia, "this trail system was the life blood of the native culture and economy" (Birchwater 1993). The grease trade from the coast to the interior was so important that the trails connecting the communities were known as "grease trails."

[16] Nass River, Kitimaat, Bella Coola, Kingcome Inlet, Knights Inlet

Eulachon grease was also used as a medicine if a poisoning was suspected, as a laxative, as a cure for dry skin (Edwards 1978) and was given to anyone who was sick (011, Peter and Elenor Schooner, 034 and 050 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). Several Nuxalk participants commented on being given eulachon grease when they were feeling ill.

> I remember long ago, the grease was more important to use it for medicine if you got a sore throat. I remember my mom used to make it little bit warm on the stove and we drink it when we got sore throat (011 Nuxalk Interviews 2006).
>
> Everytime we didn't feel good [the old people] gave us grease (015 Nuxalk Interviews 2006).
>
> In the olden days… they used to use the grease for the chest. They used to heat it on the stove, [use] cotton and put it on the chest when a person's sick… they even used it on their throat (050 Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

One elder Nuxalk woman described how she used eulachon grease to help treat her baby girl who had whooping cough. The infant's chest and back were wrapped in cotton clothes soaked in warm eulachon grease. "That same night she coughed and coughed and that stuff came up and she started to get better after that. I really believe that's what helped her to get better, because she was sick" (015 Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

Since the eulachon had many aspects of value, the social importance of the eulachon fishery can sometimes be overlooked. 'Eulachon time' was an occasion when the family; grandparents, parents, children etc. all gathered together and worked on a common activity. This was the time when the younger generations would be witness and learn through 'hands on' experience, the grease making process. Thomas McIlwraith, an anthropologist with the National museum of Canada, spent part of each year between 1922 and 1924 with the Nuxalk community, documenting the structure of their society and their culture. During this time he witnessed the Nuxalk eulachon fishery and described the scene at the Bella Coola River during the eulachon season of 1922:

> The men rise at dawn to start the fires on the bank, the women and children follow with food, and for several days the whole village camps, as if on a picnic…There are tasks for everyone; the fish must be carried from the pits to the furnaces, wood must be brought, the fires stoked, the kettles stirred, the grease carried away, the fireplaces repaired, food cooked and a hundred other chores. It is a scene of great activity, carried on with good humour and

> merriment, for the Bella Coola realize that they are storing up luxuries for the following winter. (McIlwraith Vol. II. 1948)

The importance of sharing and working together was also something taught to younger generations during the eulachon season. The first catch of the year was always shared with the community, as it was used to feed those who might not have family members to fish for them or who didn't have the fishing gear to fish. Elder Hazel Hans Sr. recalled that the community always came first, "when the first eulachons come in… they don't put them away in the box. They put the eulachons in the canoe and they call all the peoples to come and just get some to eat" (Nuxalk Interviews 2006). This seemed to be an unspoken rule throughout the Nuxalk community. "The first stuff you got you gave away. I don't know if it was tradition or if you just grew up that way" (Horace Walkus Nuxalk Interviews 2006). There didn't seem to be anyone who didn't follow the principle of sharing. "When we go seine it's for the people, not for your stink box… pass it around… everyone honored that" (033 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). Although today there is no longer the urgent need to make and store large amounts of eulachon grease for winter survival, the nutritional, medicinal, economic and social value of the grease remains a very important aspect of Nuxalk culture.

## 3.3.3 Fishing methods

### 3.3.3.1 Vessels

Prior to contact with explorers and settlers, the Nuxalk's main mode of transportation around the Bella Coola Valley was the river and the spoon canoe (Figure 3.4). The canoe was also used to fish for eulachon. By the late 1970s, new vessels were introduced into the eulachon fishery and the canoe became obsolete. The aluminum punt was introduced as a result of the commercial roe herring fishery. The commercial herring fishery had previously been closed from 1967 to 1973 due to low spawning biomass, but it reopened as a small experimental roe fishery in 1971, as the stock rebuilt (DFO 2005). The fishery expanded rapidly during the 1970s until fixed quotas were introduced in 1983. During this expansion, many Nuxalk fishers obtained commercial herring gillnet licenses and fished these licenses with aluminum punts. These punts were also used in the eulachon fishery during the late 1970s and the early 1980s. However, because these vessels were large, they needed to be powered with outboard

motors. The Nuxalk elders at the time did not approve of the use of motors in the river and believed the eulachon would fail to return if motor use was not stopped. During ancient times there were certain restrictions followed during the eulachon season. Refuse was not to be thrown into the river or the eulachon were thought to remain in the ocean, women were not allowed near the river bank at certain times and at high tide, net-posts were forbidden to be driven into the river (McIlwraith Vol. I. 1948). The motors were a new intrusion to the river and were believed to disturb the fish. In addition to these motors, the lower Bella Coola River was used as an airstrip for Wilderness Airline's floatplanes until the late 1970s. Both were blamed for a few years of low eulachon returns witnessed during the early 1980s.

> That's when they really started disappearing when those guys were using punts and motors in the river…they banned them and then it seemed like the eulachons came back (Jimmy Nelson Sr. Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

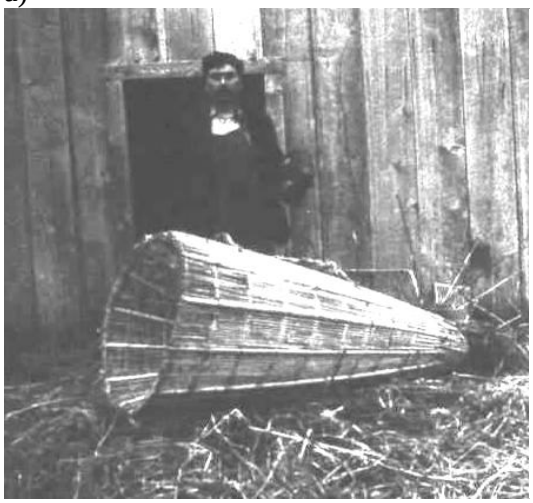
In May 1984, a letter sent from DFO to the Nuxalk Band Council, inquired if the Band wanted the lower part of the Bella Coola River, to be included in an application to ban the use of motor boats. The application must have been rejected because presently there has been no official motorboat ban for either the Atnarko or Bella Coola Rivers. In spite of this, an unwritten law exists today, respected by both the Bella Coola and Nuxalk communities, to avoid use of motor boats in either of these rivers. The exact date of this self-imposed motorboat-ban remains unknown but some eulachon fishers recall that punts were only used for a few years (009, 013, 029, 044, 047, 048 and 051 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). As a result, in the late 1980s Nuxalk fishermen switched to row boats for both the eulachon and salmon food fisheries.

Figure 3.4. Picture of a spoon canoe, with eulachon, taken on the Bella Coola River. Source: British Columbia Central Coast Archives; Iver Fougner photo.

#### 3.3.3.2 Gear

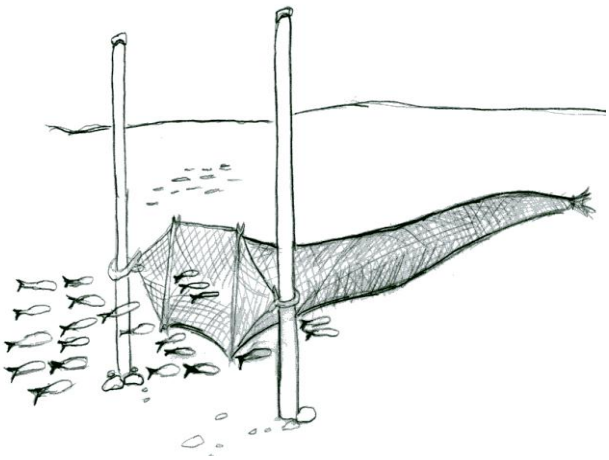
Eulachon were traditionally fished with basketry traps made of cedar bark (*Thuja plicata*), and traditional trap nets made from stinging nettle fiber (*Urtica dioica*). However, seine nets were the most common gear type used in the late 20th Century (Figure 3.5abc). There were no references made by the participants regarding the cedar basket traps, but 62% had previously fished with or had watched the traditional trap net being used (Table 3.5).

a)



Milwaukee Public Museum photo.

b)



Source: redrawn from Stewart 1977.

c)

Source: Robert Schooner photo.

Figure 3.5. Fishing methods used in the Nuxalk eulachon fishery a) cedar basket trap; b) the 'trap' net; c) seine net.

Table 3.5. Gear used to catch eulachon by Nuxalk interview participants

| **Gear used** | **Percent of participants** |
|---|---|
| Traditional trap net | 62 |
| Seine net | 83 |
| Both trap and seine | 59 |
| Didn't fish but watched both being used | 14 |

The traditional trap net was originally made from stinging nettle fiber. The nettle was harvested in the summer, dried and then rolled into a thin twine. The twine was interwoven to make a strong cord to construct the net. These nets were made during the winter and took several months to complete. The nets were about thirty feet long and purse-like. They were oval in cross-section, open at the wider end (eight feet in diameter) and tapered gradually towards the closed end (3 feet in diameter) (McIlwraith Vol. II. 1948) (Figure 3.5b). The nettle cord was eventually replaced with cotton twine. The mesh of these nets was larger at the opening and then got increasingly smaller towards the closed end where it was tied off (010 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). The eulachon were removed, starting from the tied end, where sections of the net were brought into the canoe. There were four poles used to stake the net into the river bed. They were driven at least six feet into the river bed to hold the tremendous weight of the captured eulachon. One net full could consist of two to three full canoe loads, equaling thousands of fish (McIlwraith Vol. II. 1948). One Nuxalk fisherman estimated that a trap net caught "a couple of tons at the most" (010 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). When asked why trap nets were no longer used, several reasons were given. Firstly, it was harder to fish a trap net with vessels other than a canoe. Secondly, there were not many people who knew how to construct a trap net. Finally, the seine nets were found to be more efficient at catching eulachon. According to the fishers that had used both types of gear, 71% believed seine nets were easier or faster method of catching eulachon. One Nuxalk fisherman explained:

> It took longer…you only emptied your trap net once a day, left it over night, and changed it in the morning and you didn't open your trap until just before dark. That was just the way it was done in them days. Too many people in the river, if our trap was open then someone could drift inside it. Sort of a general understanding that you didn't have your trap open during the day (047 Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

Also, instead of three or four days of fishing with a trap net, it might take one day and just one set with a seine net (Clarence Elliot Nuxalk Interviews 2006). The seine nets were approximately 60-70 feet long (Robert Andy Jr. Nuxalk Interviews 2006). Once the seine net was introduced in the late 1970s the canoe and the trap nets became obsolete, "when they started going to the seine net that's when we stopped using canoes," (047 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). By the late 1990s a few people still used the trap nets; however, they were much smaller and were essentially used to determine when the eulachon were coming. As each day

passed the number of eulachon in the trap net would increase, until eventually the net was full (Peter Schooner and 010 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). With the exception of the small trap net, the majority of fishers had switched to the seine net by the early 1980s. In spite of the efficiency of the seine net, some participants claimed that the grease tasted better when eulachon were caught with a trap net (Jimmy Nelson Sr., Anfinn Siwallace, Robert Andy Jr. and 048 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). The trap net, using the pressure of the river, would kill the eulachon overnight, squeezing the blood out of the fish. "They were dead and their gills were almost white… when you seine them they're still alive, kicking and bleeding" (048 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). Therefore, if the blood was not properly drained, the grease would be dark, strong and more "fishy" tasting (Jimmy Nelson Sr., 047 and 048 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). Other methods used to catch eulachon included: rod and reel, dip net, hook and line, or by hand in shallow waters. These methods were more commonly used by women and children.

### 3.3.4 Run status

The Bella Coola eulachon run previously consisted of hundreds of thousands of individual fish. The strength of the run was determined by a four year cycle; three "average" years, followed by a fourth "good" year (Peter and Eleanor Schooner Nuxalk Interviews 2006). Jimmy Nelson Sr. also commented that some years were better than others, "its weird how it [was] some years (Nuxalk Interviews 2006). There's just hardly any and then other years there's so much." Previously, during these good years, there were so many eulachon that people were able to fish with their hands.

> There were some years, they were so plentiful that you could just go down and hand-fish them off the side of the river bank. Just walk down and grab them and put them in your bucket…there'd be a four foot black streak going up the side of the bank (Anfinn Siwallace Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

It has also been suggested that the farther the distance the eulachon travel within a river to spawn the higher the abundance (Betts 1994). In 1977 the DFO Fisheries Officer reported that the Bella Coola run was "not as strong as past years, and [eulachon] were only seen as far as mile 1 ½ [2.4 km]" whereas in 1980 when the run was larger, eulachon were "reported as far up as 8 mile [12.9 km]…farther than ever known to have been" (DFO 1944-1989). In the Chilkat River of Southeastern Alaska, eulachon were commonly reported to migrate nine

miles up the river. However, by the mid 1990s they spawned at or below the eight mile point, and it was suggested that the "shorter migration distance may be due to low overall run strength" (Betts 1994).

In the late 1970s several interview participants still reported large runs of eulachon that were easy to catch within the Bella Coola River. "In the late 70s… I remember I used to go down and sit on the bank and watch people fishing and of course you could just walk out in the river with your bucket and get your own" (Sandy Burgess Nuxalk Interviews 2006). However, by the early 1980s, several of the eulachon fishers reported low returns to the Bella Coola River. As a result, eight of the fishers interviewed, traveled to other rivers in Nuxalk territory to fish for eulachon.

> There was nothing in the Bella Coola River. No eulachon. One year there were no eulachon here. They don't like that when I say that but it was the truth, we had to go to South Bentinck looking for eulachon (Andy Siwallace Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

One participant specifically recalled the year he traveled to South Bentinck, "I think it was '83 we just made up our mind to go and explore. Go down to South Bentinck, the Aseek. There's a good run there for a small system" (048 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). However, Harvey Mack maintained that the eulachon were always present and that some guys just missed the run:

> We've always, as far as I can remember, we never had to move out of Bella Coola to get our eulachon. We didn't have to go to South Bentinck. The guys were just too late or not ready for the run (Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

The bulk of the Bella Coola eulachon run usually arrive in late March or in early April, coinciding with the commercial herring fishing season in the Central Coast. Many of the men that had traveled to South Bentinck were also commercial herring fishers. Thus it is possible that some may have missed the peak of the Bella Coola run. Nevertheless, there was growing concern for the eulachon run during this time. Horace Walkus, a grease maker, whose house is located alongside the Bella Coola River, noticed the decline, "I had a feeling that they were diminishing, like we're not getting much this year and each year it was going down and down" (Nuxalk Interviews 2006). The most noticeable decline came in the last few years before the collapse, as the eulachon were getting much harder to catch (006 and

051 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). From the interview information, it appears that 1996 was the last large run of eulachon to the Bella Coola River (Figure 3.6).

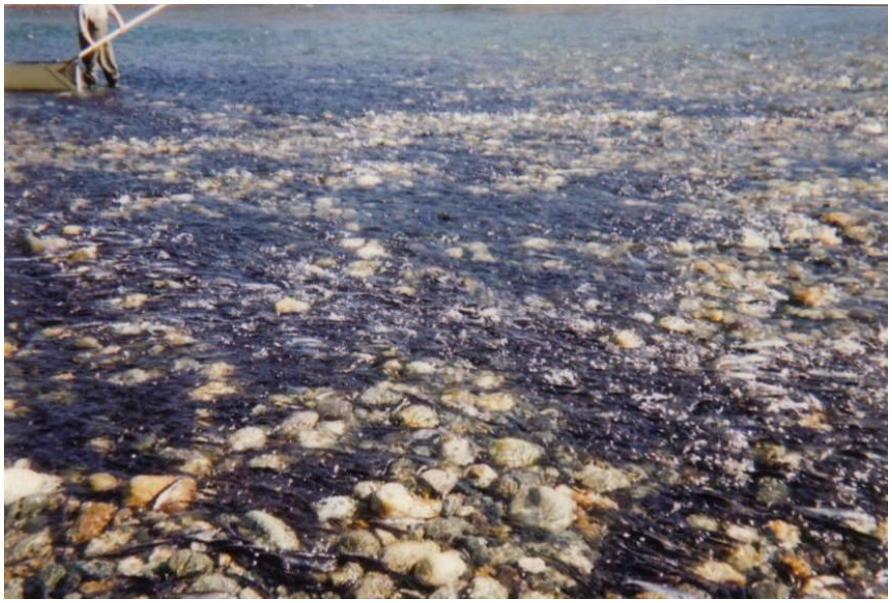


Figure 3.6. Eulachon spawning in the Bella Coola River, April 1996.
Source: Robert Schooner photo.

The 1996 run was described by an elder Nuxalk lady as "so thick that they were coming on the beach…we were able to just put them in buckets and bring them home" (015 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). By 1997, the eulachon were getting harder to catch. Wally Webber, a Nuxalk eulachon fisherman, remembered trying to catch eulachon in 1997:

> We had a really hard time that year, a really hard time. We couldn't get anything for the longest time and then finally one day…we got about 3 tons…and that's what we had to make grease with. That was it. (Nuxalk Interviews 2006)

By 1998 there were still enough eulachon to make grease but several interview participants described the run size as "average" (Jimmy Nelson Sr., Wally Webber and 047 Nuxalk Interviews 2006) and approximately eighteen t of eulachon were caught (Tallio and Webber 1998).

#### 3.3.4.1 Examining past and present run status

A (1-10) ranking scale was developed to describe the Bella Coola eulachon run status for a given time period (Table 3.6).

Table 3.6. Status scale used to depict eulachon run size for the Bella Coola River

| Run size status (1-10) | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 1-2 | Low |
| 3-4 | Medium-low |
| 5-6 | Medium |
| 7-8 | Medium-high |
| 9-10 | High |

Run size comments made during the 2006 interviews and those made in DFO Fisheries Officer's weekly reports and annual narrative reports (1944-1989) were ranked separately on the status scale. Comments made during the interviews were of a broader time frame than the DFO comments. The interview participants could only describe the stock status of specific decades or the early/late parts of a decade, such as the 'early '60s', but not individual year run sizes, that is, except for the last few years of eulachon fishing (1996-1998). This was expected, as the participants didn't keep written records and relied entirely on memory for their comments. On the other hand, the DFO comments were recorded in weekly typed reports, usually made by one officer, but not necessarily every year. There were stretches of time, such as in the early 1980s, where no comments were recorded in the DFO reports. Initially the interview comments were divided into fifteen categories, each consisting of five years, except for the late 1990s, where each year was a separate category (e.g. early 1960s, late 1960s, 1996, 1997, etc.). The number of participants that made comments for each category varied, with more comments being made for the more recent decades (Figure 3.7). Finally, the years for the early and late nineties were combined and a total of twelve categories were used for the results. These categories consisted of five year periods from 1945-2005. To get the final status value for each corresponding 5-year time category, the DFO individual year rankings (e.g. 1945-1949) and the multiple ranking from the interviews responses were averaged. The result was twelve possible status data points for each of the DFO and the interview data sets.

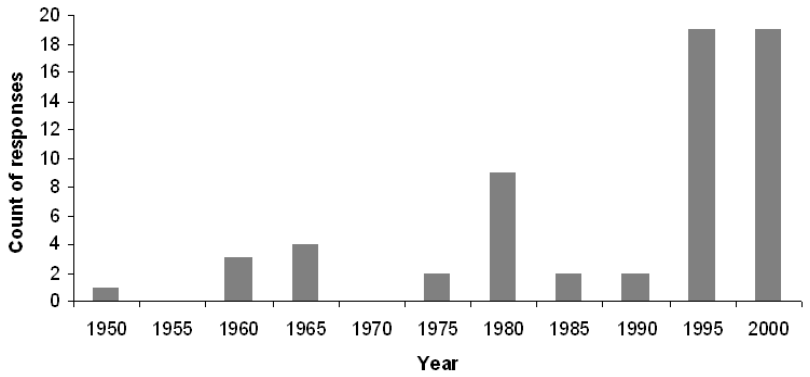



Figure 3.7. Number of respondents commenting on Bella Coola eulachon run status from 2006 Nuxalk interviews.

The range of ranked values for each time period, is shown with error bars on the interview time series (Figure 3.8). There was usually only one DFO comment per year, thus no range of values existed. The DFO time series depicts a downward trend in run size status, starting from 1945, with the most drastic decline seen after the early 1990s. The interview comments illustrate a sharp decline in the early 1980s, with a slight increase in run size in the late 1980s and early 1990s. Both sets of data display an overall declining trend in run size with a complete absence by the late 1990s (Figure 3.8). There is a significant correlation between the two different sets of run status data ($r^2 = 0.823$), shown in Figure 3.9.

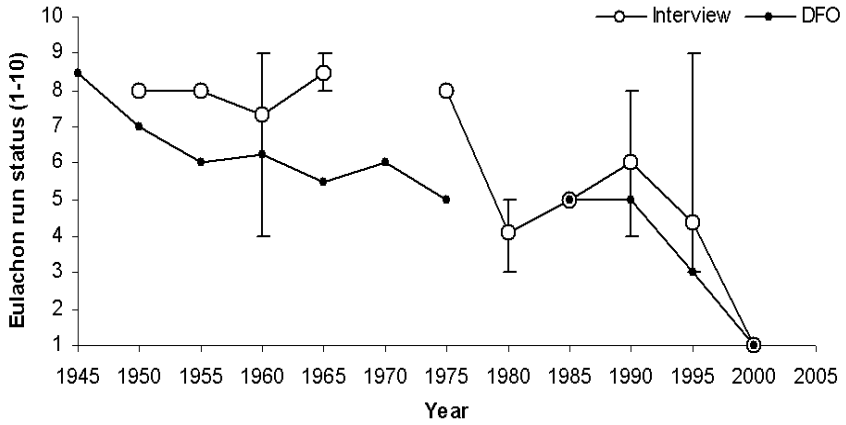



Figure 3.8. Eulachon run status, derived from 2006 interview responses and DFO Fisheries Officer comments, from 1945-2005

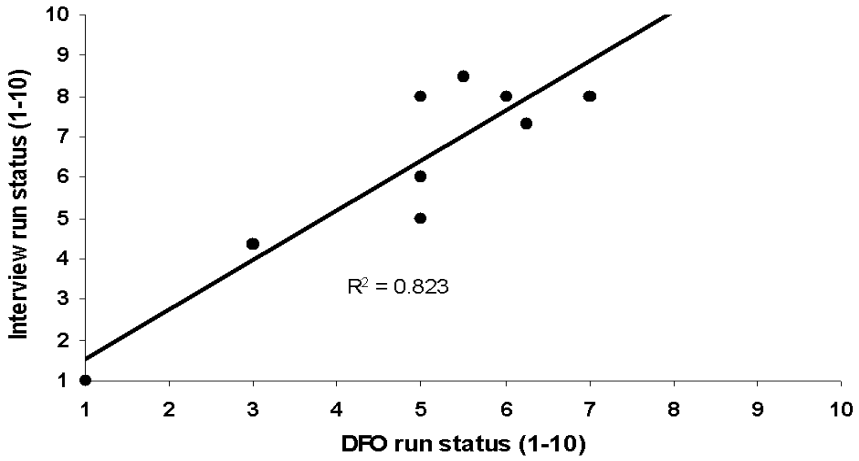



Figure 3.9. Comparison of Interview and DFO run size status data ($r^2$ =0.823).

## 3.3.5 Estimating eulachon catch from grease production

Calculating past eulachon catch from grease production is based on the relationship between the total eulachon grease produced and the total catch of fresh eulachon. If the amount of grease produced for each year can be determined and if some eulachon catch data already exists, catch can be estimated for years where no data exists.

### 3.3.5.1 Grease model

The grease model is based on the linear relationship (Figure 3.10): Catch = (TG/ **gt**) + fc

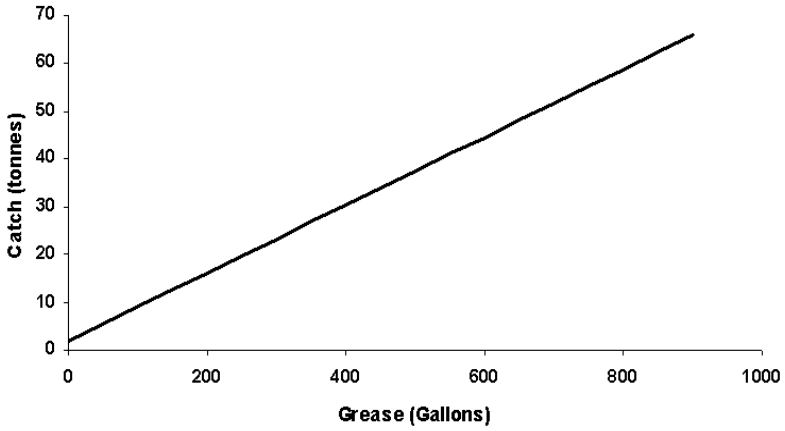



Figure 3.10. Gallons of grease produced vs. the total amount of eulachon caught for grease making

where **TG** equals total grease produced by the community in one season, **gt** equals the amount of grease produced from one tonne of fresh eulachon and **fc** is the estimated portion of fresh eulachon caught, not used for grease making but used for smoking, salting, etc.

### 3.3.5.2 Grease production from family group

The Nuxalk eulachon fishery consists of several 'grease camps'. In order to produce grease, a camp must possess a cooking box and usually there is only one box per camp. Each camp is a family group and consists of several generations, married relations and close friends. The owner of the cooking box is usually the head of the camp or the 'head cook'. The head cook makes most of the decisions, such as: when to start cooking, who can cook at the camp and who cooks first. Several cookings are usually completed at each camp during one season:

> Depends on how much we put in the box… maybe three or four cookings, depends on how many guys you got helping too, because if there's more guys, there'll be more eulachon in [the stink box]. Fill it right up. (043 Nuxalk Interviews 2006)

Most of the families make between fifty and one hundred gallons of grease per year unless there was a special event, such as a potlatch, or an upcoming trade with a neighboring community. Then, approximately one hundred gallons or more might be made for that year.

In order to calculate the amount of grease produced by the Nuxalk community for a specific year, the number of eulachon grease camps operating needed to be determined. Using the information provided by the interview participants, a time-series of each grease camp and its grease production, was constructed for the years 1980-1998. These years were chosen because the cooks interviewed, during this period, first became head cooks of their family's camp. Each head cook was first asked if he could recall the total amount of grease he produced for any specific year. If he could not recall a specific year, the years that his camp made grease were determined by how often his camp made grease. For example, if the head cook said his camp made grease every year, his camp was recorded for every year in the time-series. If he said grease was made every other year, his camp was recorded every two years and if grease was made only when grease supply was gone, his camp was recorded every four years. When the exact amount of grease was also not known for a specific year, the head cook gave an estimated range of grease produced by his camp. This provided high and low estimates for his camp's production. A best estimate was also made which took into account the number of cooks per camp and thus the total amount of grease one camp produced. These additional cooks did not have their own camp but helped to fish and helped to prepare the camp, thus were permitted to do their own cooking.

> They'd share the cooking box, like my dad shared his with his brother but he wouldn't help him make it. He'd just leave it there… he'd leave so much eulachon in [the] stink box and say "okay I've done enough, I've made enough grease. If you want to make some, there's eulachons over there… you just have to go make it (Carl Siwallace Nuxalk Interviews 2006)

Also factored into these best estimates were bits of information gathered from old newspaper articles or journals that recorded the Nuxalk eulachon grease making for a specific year. For example, an article in *Beautiful British Columbia* magazine, titled "Oil of Oolichan" reported in 1980, "450 liters oolichan oil" was produced at one camp (Kopas 1980). Also Kuhnlein *et al*. (1982) reported that in 1982, four camps were operating and in 1981 five camps were operating. This additional information helped to determine the number of camps and helped to decide on the best estimate for each year.

### 3.3.5.3 Error in raw data

A normal distribution was determined for the error in the raw data sets (i.e. Grease estimates and the DFO catch data). The distribution was determined by examining two plots, a frequency histogram and a normal probability plot of the absolute error values. These plots are visual graphing techniques used to 'see' if a data set exhibits the properties of a normal distribution. The idea of the normal probability plot is to rank the data set and change the ranks into percentiles that can then be converted into z-scores (Hesse 1998). If the data are normally distributed, they will lie in a straight line with the line crossing the x-axis at about the mean of the data.

1. Grease estimates

There were a total of 87 grease camps and 87 best estimates of grease production determined for the 19 year time series. The percent (+/-) error of these best estimates was calculated using the high and low range given by the head cooks as a percent of the best estimate. The average percent (+) error of the 87 high values totaled 15.3% and the average percent (-) error for the 87 low values totaled 15.7%, thus a coefficient of variance of 15.5% was used. The grease error frequency histogram appeared to be normally distributed (Figure 3.11) and the normality plot exhibited a straight line with an $r^2$ value of 0.98 (Figure 3.12) thus a normal distribution was assumed.

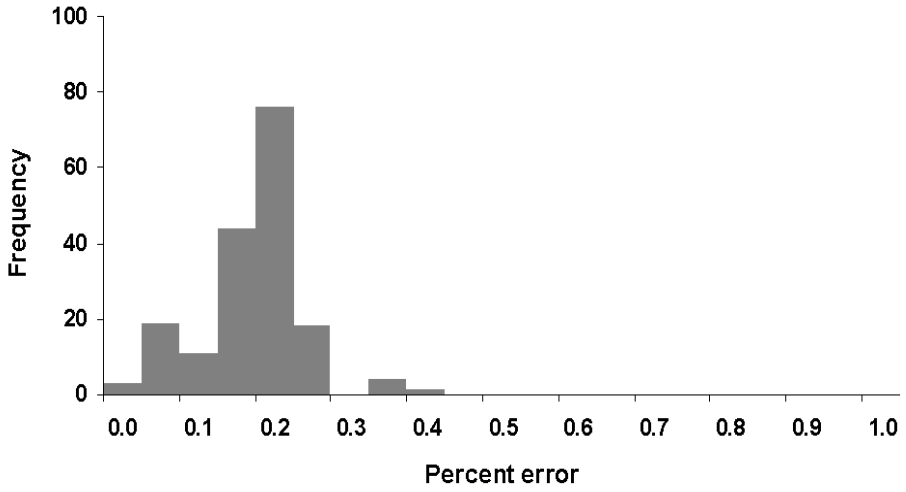



Figure 3.11. Frequency histogram of the absolute percent error surrounding the best estimate.

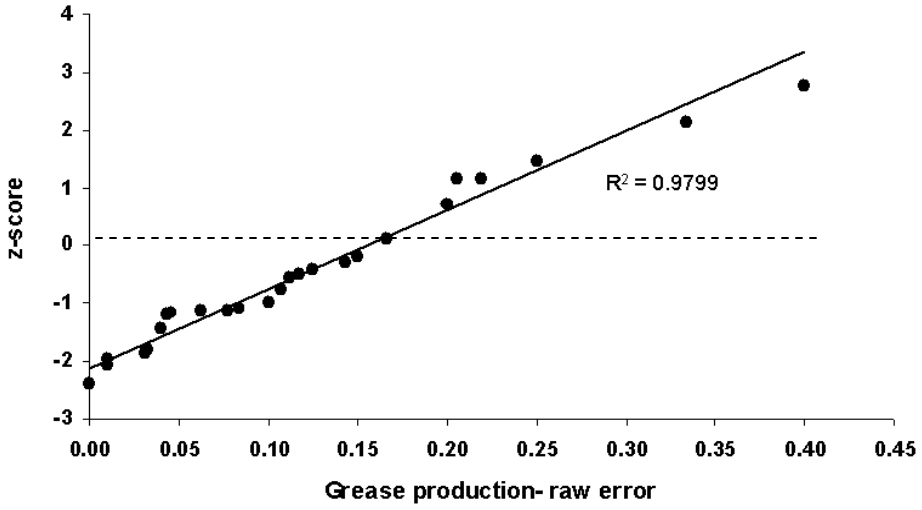



Figure 3.12. Normal probability plot of the absolute percent error surrounding the grease production best estimate ($r^2 = 0.98$).

2. DFO (Department of Fisheries and Oceans) catch data

DFO eulachon yearly catch totals for the Bella Coola River Nuxalk fishery were recorded in Fisheries Officer's weekly reports and annual narrative reports, and memos from 1944-1989 and 1995 (Figure 3.13). The weekly reports recorded catches for each day of the week whereas the yearly reports, only summarized the catches for the season or gave an annual catch total. One year of catch data was also included from the Nuxalk Fisheries Department, as the fisheries manager observed and recorded the catch daily during the 1998 season (Figure 3.13) (Tallio and Webber 1998). Prior to 1997, there was no regularly functioning fisheries department for the Nuxalk Nation. The annual average eulachon catch for the Bella Coola River using these two data sources equaled approximately 15 t.

The DFO eulachon catch totals for the years 1980-1989 were used in the analysis. Since no error or range of catch was recorded for the DFO data, another source of recorded eulachon catch was used to determine the possible error. A report titled, "The socio-economic importance of fishery resources to the Bella Coola Valley," by Environment Canada, recorded the annual catch of eulachon in the Nuxalk fishery from 1965-1973 (excluding 1972) (Boland 1974). For these same years, the percent difference (+/-) between the Boland catch and the DFO catch was calculated. The following percent error was determined: (+)

average of 9% and (-) average of 16%, thus a coefficient of variance of 11.7% was used. The DFO error frequency histogram appeared to be normally distributed (Figure 3.14) and the normal probability plot strongly suggested a normal distribution ($r^2$=0.89) (Figure 3.15); thus a normal distribution was assumed.

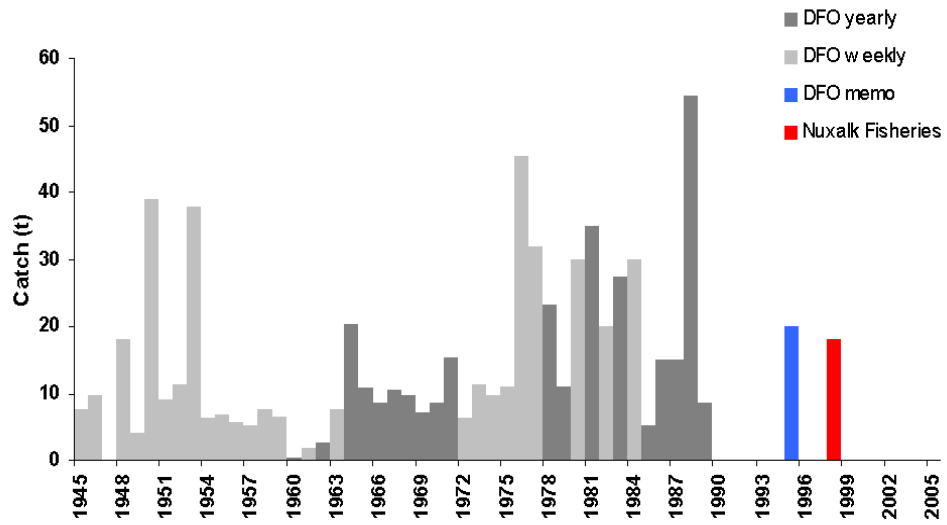



Figure 3.13. Bella Coola First Nation eulachon catches as reported by DFO and the Nuxalk Fisheries Department (1945-1998).

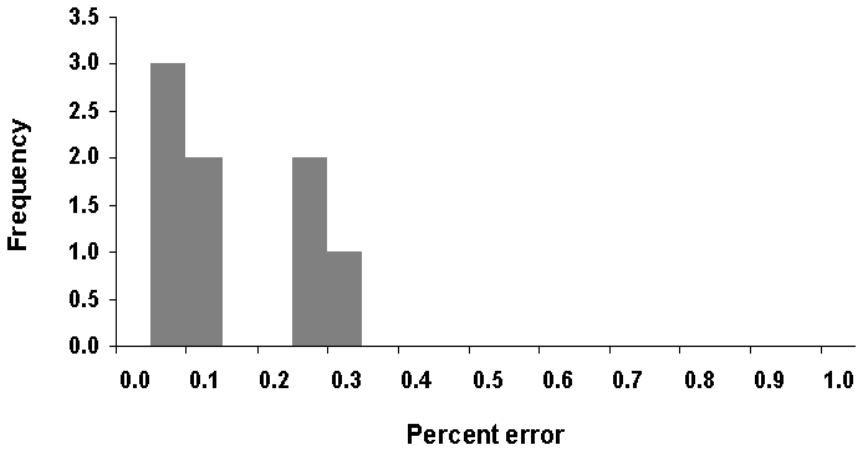



Figure 3.14. Frequency histogram of the absolute % error surrounding DFO reported catch.

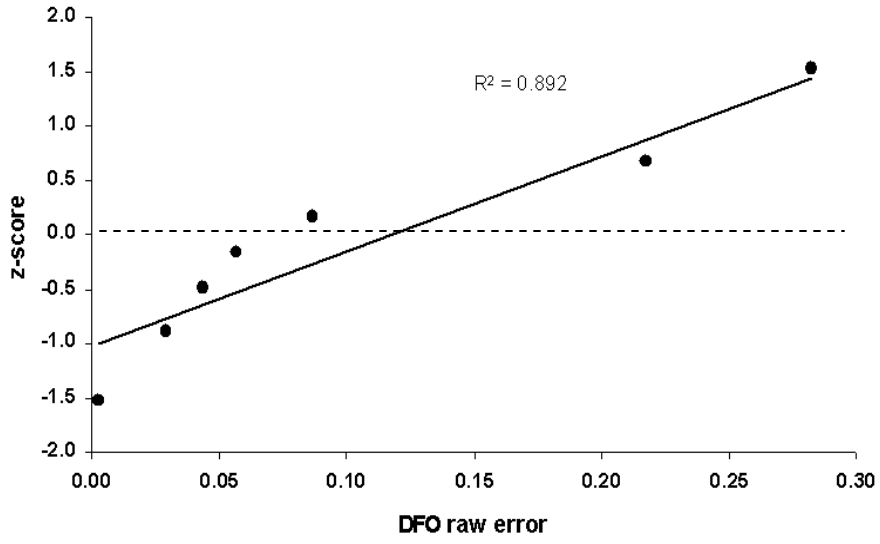



Figure 3.15. Normal probability plot of the absolute % error surrounding DFO reported catch ($r^2 = 0.89$).

### 3.3.5.4 Fresh catch (fc)

The fresh catch consisted of the portion of the catch used for smoking, salting, freezing, or for eating fresh; independent of the catch used for grease production. According to several of the eulachon fishers it was common for the community to take between two and four boat loads of fresh eulachon (Horace Walkus, Peter Schooner, Andy Siwallace, 010, 033 and 047 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). These boat loads were wooden skiffs that varied in size and in the amount filled by a fisherman. Thus fisher's estimations of weight per skiff ranged from 500 lbs (0.23 t) to over 2000 lbs (0.91 t). However, those who estimated lower weight per skiff estimated more boat loads to the community and those who estimated higher weight per skiff, estimated fewer boat loads. As a result, the total estimation of fresh catch was narrowed to a range between 1.5 and 3.0 t. In the model, a random number from a normal distribution was generated between these amounts and used as an estimate for each year's fresh catch.

### 3.3.5.5 Confidence intervals and estimating catch

Confidence intervals on the estimated catch were estimated using a Monte Carlo routine developed using Excel, Visual Basic for Applications and the Grease model. Five hundred

simulations were run, each generating a replicate data set of grease values and catch values based on the original 'best estimate' grease data and the recorded DFO catch data. Each new grease and catch data set, was determined using random values that had the same statistical properties as the original data (i.e., from a normal distribution and the same variance and mean as the original data). For each simulation the solver routine in Excel attempted to minimize the sum of squares between the randomly generated DFO catch data and the new catch estimated from the relationship: [Catch = (total grease produced/gt*)* + fc] by altering the model parameter, gt. Each time the process was repeated, the estimated catch data set was changed when different sets of random numbers were selected. The fitted gt parameter was used to estimate a new catch time-series (Figure 3.16). Confidence limits for the catch were calculated using the 95th percentile of parameter gt. In addition catch estimates were made for the years (1990-1998) where previously no eulachon records had been kept. Refer to Appendix 6 for a summary of the results.

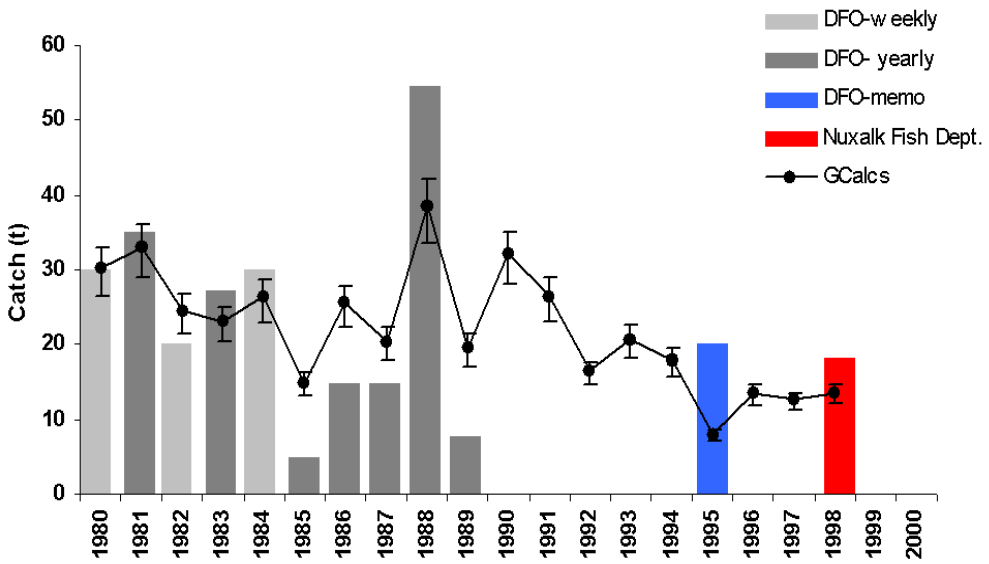



Figure 3.16. Estimated eulachon catch (black line) with confidence intervals, from the grease model (1980 to 1998), plotted with the original eulachon catch data.
(DFO dark grey-weekly, light grey-yearly, checkered grey-memo; Nuxalk Fisheries-diagonal lines)

### 3.3.5.6 Setting limits for parameter 'gt'

To prevent unreasonable estimates of parameter gt, high and low constraints were added to the solver routine, to limit its value. The constraint values were determined from two reports, the Nuxalk Nutrition Food Project (Kuhnlein *et al*. 1982) and a report on Knight Inlet grease production (Common Resources Consulting Ltd. 1998). The 1982 Nuxalk Nutrition Food Project calculated that each stink box held approximately 6300 kilograms of fresh eulachon and yielded an estimated 280 litres of grease. The project also reported that five stink boxes could yield upwards of 2000 litres of oil (Table 3.7). For comparison, the gt**,** for Knight Inlet, ranged from 10.0-13.3 (Common Resources Consulting Ltd. 1998). The constraints for gt were set at 9 and 16 gallons/t of fresh eulachon. The model estimated the parameter gt at: 14.07 gal/t with confindence intervals calculated using the 95th percentile (high = 15.6 gal/t and low = 12.4 gal/t) (Figure 3.17).

Table 3.7. Previous studies calculations of grease produced (gallons), per metric tonne (t) of fresh eulachon.

| **Location** | **Year** | **(t) of fresh fish** | **Litres (L) of grease** | **Gallons (G) of grease** | **gt (G/t)** | **gt (L/t)** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Bella Coola (1 stink box) | 1981 | 6.3 | 280 | 61.6 | 9.8 | 44.4 |
| Bella Coola (5 stink boxes) | 1981 | 31.5 | 2000 | 440 | 14.0 | 63.5 |
| Knight Inlet (average) | 1998 | 1 | 55.0 | 11.0* | 10.0* | 45.3 |
| Knight Inlet (max) | 1998 | 1 | 60.2 | 14.6* | 13.3* | 60.2 |

*Converted from reported gallons/tons

Source: Knight Inlet- Common Resources Consulting Ltd. 1998; Bella Coola – Kuhnlein *et al.* 1982

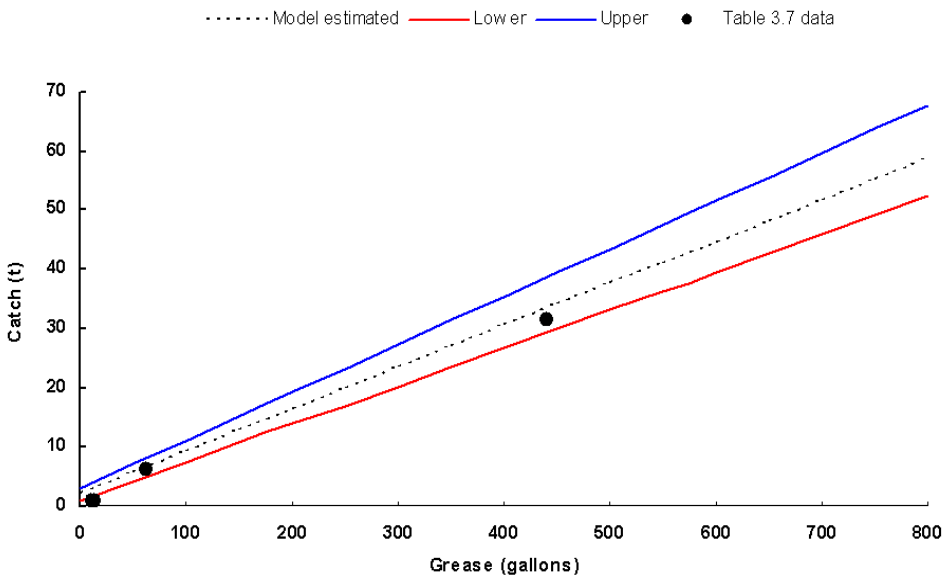



Figure 3.17. Confidence intervals calculated using Monte Carlo limits (95%tiles) of parameter gt (gallons/t) and comparison data from Table 3.7.

There are several reasons for the range seen in **gt** values. Firstly, female eulachon were said to produce more grease than males (009, Horace Walkus, 048, 051 Nuxalk Interviews 2006), with the first run consisting of mostly females, followed by a run of males, and then a mixture of both (Hazel Hans Sr., Kitty Moody, Eleanor Schooner, Horace Walkus, 033, 048 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). Studies conducted on other rivers have also reported the domination of females in the first part of the run, followed by a wave of males: the Kemano River (Lewis *et al*. 2002), the Nass River (Langer *et al.* 1977) and generally in Northwest Coast rivers (Stewart 1977). Rogers *et al.* (1990) also found that the lipid content of whole females was greater than that found in male eulachons. Although females were preferred for making grease, the Nuxalk's principle was to allow the first run to go through without any fishing. One Nuxalk fisherman described the logic behind this principle:

> The females had the most oil so it was tempting to [go fishing] but there was a hard law that said "no we don't touch it", that [was] our way of managing, that [was] our conservation method (048 Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

In 1998, it was reported that Knights Inlet grease camps could produce 26 gallons of grease from 2.04 t of fresh eulachon if only females were used (Common Resources Consulting Ltd. 1998). Secondly, the amount of time that the eulachon were aged also contributed to the

difference in the amount of grease produced per tonne. If fish were aged too long they would produce less grease. However, if the cooking was started too early, the fish were said to release less oil (030 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). Finally, if the eulachon were caught too late in the run, less oil was also produced (048 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). This was probably due to eulachon fat resources being consumed during the maturation process. For the Nuxalk eulachon fishery it was common practice to use a mixture of both females and males and to catch the eulachon before they reached the spawning grounds.

### 3.3.6 Effort

The effort for this fishery was difficult to determine quantitatively. The only recorded fishing effort found was in DFO reports and only described by the number of nets used during the season. And this was only for three years (1949 to 1951), where 5, 20 and 9 trap nets were recorded. Thus the only way to describe the effort in the fishery was to combine the catch and the TEK/LEK information. Some of the older participants (born during the 1920s) discussed how there were more stink boxes when they were younger and lived in "Old town" (015 and Andy Siwallace Nuxalk Interviews 2006). Old town was the town site of Bella Coola that was previously located on the north side of the river. There were large floods in 1924 and 1932 that caused much destruction. It was the 1936 flood that tore out the footbridge connecting the north and south sides of the river that persuaded the Nuxalk people in 1938 to relocate to the south side of the river. Thus it would have been during the 1930s when the older participants recalled "lots" of operating stink boxes.

When examining the DFO records, the catch for the early 1960s appeared to be quite low (Figure 3.13). It is difficult to determine if this was due to low effort or poor catch recording. However, from 1960-1963, comments in DFO Fisheries Officer reports are minimal or non-existent, as the officer took annual leave during the eulachon season. One Nuxalk fisherman stated that during this period, a dam had been built in the river and the estuary was used as a booming ground for logging companies (048 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). He reports that these activities resulted in a low returns which forced the Nuxalk to conserve the run for the next few years so it could rebuild itself. Thus this may have accounted for the low catches in the early 1960s.

Effort in the 1970s may have been higher as the catches appear to have increased. "When I first started [making grease] in the 70s there were at least ten maybe twelve eulachon camps, the last year [1998] there were only five" (Russ Hilland Nuxalk Interviews 2006). It is difficult to determine if the number of participants decreased or if it was just the number of operating camps that decreased. Interview participant views varied, when asked if the number of people involved in the fishery had decreased. Fifty-six percent of the respondents stated that the number of participants decreased by "a lot" or by "more than 50%" and 89 % believed that participation had decreased by some amount (Table 3.8).

Table 3.8. Perception of the number of people involved in the Bella Coola eulachon fishery, prior to the 1999 collapse, compared to 20 or 30 years before (i.e., 70s and 80s)

| **Did the number of people in the fishery decrease? (Results from 18/29 participants)** | **% of participants** | **# of participants** |
|---|---|---|
| No answer | 38 | (11/29) |
| Some cause stated | 62 | (18/29) |
| No or less than 10% | 11 | (2/18) |
| Yes a little (20-30%) | 11 | (2/18) |
| A fair bit (30-40%) | 22 | (4/18) |
| A lot (<50%) | 56 | (10/18) |
| Total | 89 | (16/18) |

Those participants that thought the number of people involved remained the same or decreased "a little" also believed the members from several different family groups were working together rather than running their own camp. The "[number of people] probably stayed the same … [as] everybody started ganging together" (Wally Webber Nuxalk Interviews 2006). Thus the same numbers of individuals were producing grease but not as much grease was being made.

> In the later years, we didn't do as much (Peter Schooner Nuxalk Interviews 2006).
>
> I never really made much anyways. When you have eulachon grease you like to have it fresh, like having smoked eulachons, you don't want to keep them from year to year (047 Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

> Back in the day, 30 years ago, everybody had their own eulachon camp because they were making lots [of grease]…four or five cookings…later there might have been almost as many people involved, but they weren't doing as much grease (Russ Hilland Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

The only catch per unit effort information that may reveal declining abundance was from comments made by participants regarding the fishery during the last decade of the fishery (the late 1990s).

> As time went on, there seemed to be less eulachon in the river, smaller schools, and not as much were caught in each seine set (009 Nuxalk Interviews 2006).
>
> The runs seemed to get shorter…then they'd come early, then they'd be gone (Anfinn Siwallace Nuxalk Interviews 2006).
>
> The amounts of sets you'd have to do and stuff was increasing (Carl Siwallace Nuxalk Interviews 2006).
>
> People were starting to get low amounts of eulachon. They were working hard to get them (Wally Webber Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

### 3.3.7 The Bella Coola eulachon run collapse

In 1999 the eulachon failed to return to the Bella Coola River. Jacinda Mack, a member of the Nuxalk Nation, described the atmosphere in Bella Coola at the time:

> [The] arrival of the eulachon is always a big event in the Nuxalk valley. In the days preceding their appearance, throngs of birds and people line the shores of the river, watching and waiting for the eulachons to return. Families ready their smoke houses, inspect their nets and prepare the stink boxes. However, in the spring of 1999, after weeks of waiting- anticipation turned into anxiety and finally into confusion and despair (Mack 2000).

Today, the Nuxalk people are still waiting in anticipation for the return of the eulachon. It has been nine years since the last eulachon fishery occurred on the Bella Coola River and the impact of the collapsed run can still be felt today.

> I seen a big difference, like right now everybody would be working, getting ready…everybody would be happy…getting ready for a good feast. Now everybody is walking around in a daze, seems like to me.
> (Harvey Mack Nuxalk Interviews 2006)

> I think it depressed people. It kind of broke the social atmosphere in the spring time. People used to look forward to it in the winter, it was a favorite occasion. It was like a festival, eulachon grease making. All the families would be busy…making grease, you'd see them up and down the river working around the cooking camps. You'd hear them laughing, joking around, telling stories. It used to be a good place where you could go listen to stories (048 Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

The most frequent questions participants asked during the interviews were "are they coming back?" and "why did it happen?" Some Nuxalk fishers believe that they are being blamed for overfishing the Bella Coola run. However, if overfishing was the main reason for their decline why are they not returning to the other rivers in Nuxalk territory? "Kimsquit and Kwatna…. South Bentinck, why are they diminishing there too? Nobody's fishing them. So what's happened?" (Horace Walkus Nuxalk Interviews 2006). Since the collapse several people have traveled to South Bentinck in search of the eulachon but have had no success (Robert Andy Jr. and 010 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). One interview participant, a camp watchman for a logging camp on the Kimsquit River (Upper Dean Channel) from 1998-2000, caught eulachon in 1998 but the following year, 1999, the Kimsquit run also failed to return. From the discussion during the interviews, it appears that all ten eulachon river systems in Nuxalk territory collapsed around the same time, the spring of 1999. The many hypotheses regarding the collapse of the Bella Coola eulachon will be discussed in Chapter 5.

## 3.4 Conclusion

The Nuxalk Nation has experienced enormous change in the past two hundred years since contact with non-First Nations, from population decimation by infectious diseases to today's loss of the eulachon. The absence of the Bella Coola eulachon has made the Nuxalk eulachon fishery and eulachon grease making a part of the past.

> There's no gathering down the river any more, number one. There's no hustle bustle, there's no smoke houses going, our kids don't know what eulachons are, our elders have suffered from not having it… a way of life has changed, our way of life (Anfinn Siwallace Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

Despite the loss, the Nuxalk interview participants spoke of the eulachon and grease making with pride. Although the fishery saw changes in fishing and processing techniques, the

Nuxalk people strove to protect the resource by introducing new regulations. Motor boats were banned and the first run of females was allowed to pass through without fishing. Despite these efforts, the Nuxalk elders remained concerned, as if the decline seen in the early 1980s was a forewarning of the 1999 collapse. The eulachon fishery of the late twentieth century may not have been the salvation fishery of the past but it was still a vital component in the teaching and guiding of the younger generations. In general, the interview participants were keen to participate and document the Nuxalk eulachon fishery. The quantity of the grease produced and the estimated eulachon catch was only possible to calculate because of the information shared by the Nuxalk fishers and elders. Their knowledge of the eulachon, the fishery, the river, and the all the changes that occurred, have helped to guide this study and have helped to encourage the search for an explanation to the eulachon's disappearance.

# References


Betts, M. F. 1994. The subsistence hooligan fishery of the Chilkat and Chilkoot Rivers. Alaska Department of Fish and Game: Division of Subsistence, technical paper no. 213, Juneau, Alaska. 69 p.

Birchwater, S. 1993. *Ulkatcho stories of the grease trail, Anahim lake- Bella Coola- Quesnel, told by Ulkatcho and Nuxalk elders*. Spartan Printing, Quesnel, British Columbia.

Boland, J. P. 1974. The Socio-economic importance of fishery resources to the Bella Coola valley. Environment Canada and Fisheries and Marine Service Pacific Region. Technical report series no. PAC/T-74-12. 49 p.

Common Resources Consulting Ltd. 1998. An historic overview of the Kwawkewlth, Knight, and Kingcome inlet oolachon fishery. A report prepared for the Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Vancouver, British Columbia.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans. 1944-1989. Fisheries Inspectors weekly reports and annual narrative reports. Bella Coola District, Bella Coola, British Columbia, Canada.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans. 2005. Stock assessment report on Central Coast Pacific herring. Canadian Science Advisory Secretariat Report (2005/065). 5 p.

Department of Indian and Northern Development Canada. 2007. First Nations profiles, reserves/settlements, Nuxalk Nation. Retrieved January 29, 2008, from: (http://sdiprod2.inac.gc.ca/fnprofiles/FNProfiles_Reserves.asp?BAND_NUMBER=539&BAND_NAME=Nuxalk+Nation)

Drake, A., and Wilson, L. 1991. Eulachon, a fish to cure humanity. University of British Columbia Museum of Anthropology, Museum note no. 32. Vancouver, BC. 37 p.

Edwards, G.T. 1978. Oolachen time in Bella Coola. *The Beaver*. **Autumn**. Pages 32-37.

Environment Canada. 2008. Hydrometric station: Bella Coola River at Bella Coola, (#08FB001) Retrieved January 29, 2008, from: http://scitech.pyr.ec.gc.ca/climhydro/mainContent/hydrometric/station_info_hydrometric_e.asp?stationNumber=08FB001&stationName=BELLA%20COOLA%20RIVER%20AT%20BELLA%20COOLA

Harrington, R. 1967. Eulachon and the grease trails of British Columbia. *Canadian Geographic Journal* **January:** 28-31.

Hesse, R. 1998. In the classroom, normal probability plots. *Decision Line* **29**(1):17-19. Pepperdine University, Malibu, California.

Kirk, R. 1986. *Wisdom of the elders: native traditions on the Northwest Coast.* Douglas & McIntyre Ltd, Vancouver, British Columbia.

Kopas, L. 1980. Oil of oolichan. *Beautiful British Columbia* **Winter**. Pages 35-38.

Kuhnlein, H., Chan, A., Thompson, J. & Nakai, S. 1982. Ooligan grease: a nutritious fat used by native people of coastal British Columbia. *Journal of Ethnobiology* **2**(2): 154-161.

Kuhnlein, H., Yeboah, F., Sedgemore, M., Sedgemore, S. & Chan, H. 1996. Nutritional qualities of ooligan grease: a traditional food fat of British Columbia First Nations. *Journal of Food Composition and Analysis* **9**(4): 18-31.

Langer, O.E., Shepherd, B.G. & Vroom, P.R. 1977. Biology of the Nass River eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*). Department of Fisheries and Environment Canada, technical report series no. PAC/T-77-10. 56 p.

Lewis, A. F.J., McGurk, M.D., & Galesloot, M.G. 2002. Alcan's Kemano River eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*) monitoring program 1988-1998. Consultant's report prepared by Ecofish Research Ltd. For Alcan Primary Metal Ltd., Kitimat, British Columbia, 136 p.

Mack, J. 2000. Unpublished. Making grease: cultural effects of depleted eulachon stocks in the Nuxalk Nation. Course paper (ENVR 428) for the University of Victoria, Department of Environmental Studies.

McIlwraith, T. 1948. *The Bella Coola Indians* vol. 1 & 2. University of Toronto Press, Toronto.

QSR N6. 2004. N6 Getting Started. QSR International Pty Ltd, Victoria, Australia.

Rogers, I. H., Birtwell, I. K. & Kruzynski, G. M. 1990. The Pacific eulachon (*Thaleichthys Pacificus*) as a pollution indicator organism in the Fraser River estuary, Vancouver, British Columbia. *Science of the Total Environment* **97/98:** 713-727.

Stewart, H. 1977. *Indian fishing: early methods on the Northwest Coast*. University of Washington Press, Seattle.

Tallio, N. and Webber, W. 1998. Nuxalk Nation eulachon enumeration of the Bella Coola River, 1998. Nuxalk Fisheries Department, Bella Coola, British Columbia.

# 4 Reconstructing abundance of eulachon throughout its geographic range using a fuzzy expert system[17]

## 4.1 Introduction

Eulachon in-river relative abundance has been roughly assessed in the past by analyzing commercial catch statistics (Ricker *et al.* 1954; Washington and Oregon Departments of Fish and Wildlife (WDFW/ODFW) 2005). More recently, additional relative abundance indicators have become available to assess eulachon run strength for specific rivers (i.e., Fraser and Columbia Rivers). In the Fraser River, three pre-season indicators (egg and larval surveys, offshore eulachon biomass estimates from shrimp trawl surveys and Columbia River catch data) and one in-season indicator (the Fraser River eulachon test fishery) are used to determine the relative strength of the current year's run (Department of Fisheries and Oceans (DFO) 2006). The Columbia River management plan also uses test fishery catches, larval density estimates and DFO offshore eulachon biomass estimates to predict relative run strength and guide management decisions (WDFW/ODFW 2005). However, these relative abundance indicators have short time-series and can only be applied to these two rivers. Thus far, in-river egg and larval surveys, used to calculate spawning biomass, are the most effective method to determine a river's run strength.

Historically in British Columbia (BC), these surveys were only conducted sporadically, for example, Skeena River, BC (Lewis 1997), Nass River, BC (Orr 1984), Klinaklini River, BC (Berry 1996), Kitimat River, BC (Penderson *et al.* 1993) and the Kingcome River, BC and Wannock River, BC (Berry and Jacob 1998). More recently, consistent annual estimates have been conducted on the Fraser River by DFO from 1995-2006 (DFO 2007) and the Bella Coola River by the Nuxalk Fisheries Department from 2001-2006 (Lewis and O'Connor 2002; Winbourne and Dow 2002; Moody 2005, 2006; Nuxalk Fisheries 2005-06). Extreme declines of some eulachon populations has been observed, for example, in 1994 the Fraser

[17] A version of this chapter will be submitted for publication. Moody, M.F., Cheung, W.L. and Pitcher T.J. Reconstructing abundance of eulachon throughout its geographic range using a fuzzy expert system.

River run noticeably declined (Hay and McCarter 2000), in 1999 the Bella Coola River failed to return (Chapter 3) and since 1998 the run on the Kitimat River has had very low returns (EcoMetrix 2006). In the absence of data on absolute stock abundance two types of information are commonly used to assess fisheries status: a history of catches and an index of abundance (Hilborn and Mangel 1997).

Although it is unlikely that the fishing of eulachon has caused the extreme declines of the Bella Coola River and Kitimat River eulachon populations, catches are the most readily available data. Catch time-series data were available for some of the more well-known eulachon rivers. However, catch information can often be a misleading trend indicator. A "healthy" increase in catch could be the result of three possible scenarios: (1) the stock is healthy, (2) the fishing effort has increased or (3) the range occupied by the species has decreased (Walters and Martell 2004). In the late 1800s when commercial eulachon fisheries first began, catches were likely affected by economic factors and market demand and not the abundance of the stock. This is shown by a quote from Clemons and Wilby (1946):

> As the knowledge of other species increased and fishing improved, the eulachon market deteriorated… demands of the small local markets rather than the supply of fish, have dictated the size of catch at the peak of the run.

McHugh (1941) also reported that on the Fraser River:

> The total catch [of eulachon] in any area is governed to a considerable extent by the demand. In the year of a heavy run, an abundance of fish may be caught in a short time, and no advantage is gained by fishing long hours if the extra catch cannot be sold. In the case of a light run, by fishing longer hours it may still be possible to keep up with the requirements of the market. The total catch in such cases would give no idea of the relative abundance of fish.

The commercial catch from the Columbia River was also known to be affected by consumer demand and changes in regulations e.g. from 1960-1977. With the exception of 1965 and 1966, the commercial fishery was open year-round 3 1/2 days per week, but in 1978 this was expanded to 7 days per week (WDFW/ODFW 2005). Thus commercial eulachon landings, summed for the whole fishing season are not reliable indices of abundance for the Columbia and Fraser Rivers. Consequently a need has arisen to develop an alternate method to evaluate eulachon relative abundance.

Mackinson and Nottestad (1998) refer to detailed information collected by scientists, in the desired format, as "hard data" and the applied knowledge of fishers and fisheries managers as "practical data"; the latter collected by the review of literature and interviews with experts. The combination of the hard and practical data can reduce the uncertainty surrounding past eulachon abundance assumptions, which have been based primarily on past catch records, and be used to build a more complete understanding of these populations. Hence, it should be possible to combine eulachon catch data and other scientific data (e.g. CPUE and larval surveys) with experts' knowledge of the fishery and infer a relative abundance index for eulachon for different rivers.

As eulachon abundance estimates are rare and catch data by itself can be a poor representation of relative abundance, fuzzy set theory may provide an alternate method for obtaining reliable estimates of relative abundance. Fuzzy set theory or fuzzy logic was first introduced by Lotfi Zadeh (1965). Basically the idea of fuzzy logic is that a proposition is not just true or false but may be partly true or false to any degree (Nogita 1985). Fuzzy sets are terms that define general categories so the transition from one category to another is gradual with some states having greater or lesser membership than another (Cox 1999). Thus fuzzy logic uses an imprecise but very descriptive language to deal with input data, more like a human expert would.

### 4.1.1 Study objectives

Eulachon were of only "marginal interest or concern to Fisheries and Oceans Canada [DFO] prior to 1990" (Hay and McCarter 2000) thus there has been limited documentation on past catches and only recently any examination of annual abundance. The purpose of this study was to use fuzzy logic to describe past and present eulachon abundance trends for fifteen eulachon systems in seven geographical areas across the entire geographical range of the fish. Each of these eulachon systems represents a geographical area comprised of either one or more than one eulachon river(s). Because of limited data only rivers where data sets could be located have been used. These geographical areas are: Alaska South Central, Alaska Southeast, BC North, BC Central, BC South, Washington/Oregon and California (see

Chapter 2 for detail). The final results from this chapter will display four coast-wide, colour-coded eulachon abundance status tables.

## 4.2 Methods

Fifteen eulachon systems were analyzed (Table 4.1). They are referred to as eulachon 'systems' and not rivers because one of the systems is an inlet (Cook Inlet, Alaska) and includes three rivers. The other fourteen systems are individual rivers and include: the Alaskan Rivers (Copper, Chilkat, and Unuk); the BC Rivers (Nass, Skeena, Kitimat, Kemano, Bella Coola, Wannock, Kingcome, Klinaklini, and Fraser), the Columbia River from the States of Washington and Oregon; and the Klamath River from the State of California. Using similar methods developed by Cheung *et al.* (2007) an index of annual eulachon abundance is estimated for each of these systems. Cheung *et al.* (2007) use, catch time-series data to determine the exploitation status of several fisheries and combine this information to estimate the depletion risk index of a species. The exploitation status of a fishery is based on the relative position of the annual catch in the time-series and its ratio to the maximum catch. However, instead of using only the exploitation status of a fishery to determine an index of eulachon abundance, this fuzzy expert system also includes seven other types of data.

### 4.2.1 Types of data

In each system a maximum of eight types of data were available to assess the relative abundance of these eulachon populations: (1) First Nation/recreational/commercial catches (CA); (2) Catch-per-unit-effort (CPUE) data; (3) spawning stock biomass estimates (SSB); (4) test fishery catches (TF); (5) larval survey data (LS); or (6) annual run size report comments (RC); (7) fishing effort comments (LE); and (8) interview and local comments (ILC) (Table 4.1). The report and low effort comments were obtained from specific comments made in scientific or fisheries officer reports during or after a fishing season, while interview and local comments were obtained from specific comments made by local experts. See Appendix 7 for a detailed description of where each data source used for each eulachon system were found.

Table 4.1. Data sources available for 15 eulachon systems used in the expert system, including the number of data sources for each system and the number of systems that have a specific data source

| RIVER | | CA | LE | CPUE | SSB | LS | TF | RC | ILC | TOTAL # data sources |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Klamath** | **R1** | | | | | | | | ✓ | 1 |
| **Columbia** | **R2** | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | | ✓ | | ✓ | | 5 |
| **Fraser** | **R3** | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | | ✓ | ✓ | | 6 |
| **Knights** | **R4** | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | ✓ | ✓ | 4 |
| **Kingcome** | **R5** | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | ✓ | ✓ | 4 |
| **Wannock** | **R6** | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | ✓ | 4 |
| **Bella Coola** | **R7** | ✓ | ✓ | | ✓ | | | ✓ | ✓ | 4 |
| **Kemano** | **R8** | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | ✓ | ✓ | 5 |
| **Kitimat** | **R9** | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | | | ✓ | | 5 |
| **Skeena** | **R10** | | | | | | | ✓ | ✓ | 2 |
| **Nass** | **R11** | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | ✓ | | 4 |
| **Unuk** | **R12** | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | ✓ | 3 |
| **Chilkat** | **R13** | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | | 1 |
| **Copper** | **R14** | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | ✓ | | 3 |
| **Cook Inlet** | **R15** | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | 3 |
| **TOTAL # systems** | | 13 | 10 | 5 | 3 | 1 | 1 | 13 | 9 | |
| **Total data sources** | | | | | | | | | | 54 |

### (1) Catch data (CA)

Catch time-series was the most widely available of the eight data sources and so it was the most commonly used. It can be useful when attempting to understand the overall status of a population (Grainger and Garcia 1996). But eulachon catch data can be a poor indicator of abundance when market demand influences the level of catch. The relationship between catch and population status also becomes less reliable when catch is influenced by stricter management policies, environmental factors or by changes in fishing effort. The expert system was designed to minimize these effects by incorporating other data sets. However, when only catch data were available, the expert system was limited to estimating the abundance status based on the relative position of the annual catch, before or after the maximum catch and the ratio of the annual catch to the maximum catch.

### (2) Low effort information (LE)

LE information was taken directly from comments made in reports describing the effort of a specific eulachon fishery. The LE information was only used in the algorithm when it existed with catch data. Thus if an LE comment existed, a (1) was assigned for that year in the river's data base. If no information existed or no fishery took place or fishing effort was normal, no data was entered. Examples of comments describing low effort are:

> There was a heavy run of oulachons fishermen were not very active on account of lack of demand [1940 Fraser River] (DFO 1940-1979).
>
> The eulachon harvest was quite a bit lower than normal this year mainly because a high [water level] occurred at their peak of migration making catch success poor [1985 Bella Coola] (DFO 1944-1989).
>
> The oulichan run to the Nass River was considered to be moderately good this year, judging from reports received from local Natives, however catches for food purposes were fairly light in comparison with some past years due to the quantity of ice moving downstream in the Nass River which hampered fishing activities [1965 Nass River] (DFO 1941-1973).

Thus it was assumed that catch time-series data underestimated the abundance of the population when LE information existed.

### (3) Catch-per-unit Effort (CPUE)

Only five of the fifteen eulachon systems had CPUE data: the Columbia River (1988-2006), the Fraser River (1941-1953, and 1982-1996), the Kemano River (1988-2004), the Kitimat River (1994-2006) and the Nass River (1995-2005, excluding 1997). As the CPUE data sources all had different units, each data point was expressed as a ratio of its maximum value in its time-series. It has been suggested that CPUE may overestimate eulachon abundance (WDFG & ODFG 2001). For example, eulachon are known to exhibit shoaling behaviour when entering the river, and therefore catchability may remain high even when overall abundance has declined substantially, making CPUE a poor index of abundance (WDFG & ODFG 2001). However, this might be compensated to some extent since eulachon were caught in-river with a limited area to escape fishing activities. Moreover, the data were averaged over the entire season. Two other problems have been identified in the Columbia River commercial fishery regarding using CPUE to assess run strength: 1) during high

periods of abundance nets may be saturated with fish and CPUE may not reflect true abundance; 2) during high abundance markets may not be able to process and sell all the available catch so fishers deliberately reduce their catch rate (WDFG & ODFG 2001).

Apparently, the Columbia River CPUE data were collected weekly (pounds of eulachon per delivery) and averaged at the end of each season (WDFG & ODFG 2005). The Fraser River CPUE data included two separate time-series. The first time series (1941-1953) was calculated by dividing the total catch in pounds by every 100 square fathoms of net used per hour of fishing (Ricker *et al.* 1954). The second time series (1982-1996) was calculated in tonnes of eulachon caught per day averaged for the season (DFO 2008). Kemano River CPUE data was calculated in t/set averaged for the season (Lewis and Ganshorn 2004). The Kitimat River CPUE data was expressed in terms of fish caught per 24-hour gill net set (7.6 m x 1.8 m, 3.8 cm mesh) (EcoMetrix 2006). Nass River CPUE data was expressed in terms of total catch for the season per total hours fished for the season (Nisga'a Fisheries 2007).

**(4) Spawning Stock Biomass (SSB)**

SSB data were limited and only three rivers had 5 or more years of consecutive time-series data: the Fraser River 1996-2006 (DFO 2007), the Bella Coola 2001-2006 (Lewis and O'Connor 2002; Winbourne and Dow 2002; Moody 2005, 2006; Nuxalk Fisheries 2005-06) and the Kitimat River 1993-2006 (Penderson *et al.* 1995; EcoMetrix 2006). The Fraser and Bella Coola surveys calculated the relative spawning biomass of eulachon from the capture of eggs and larval caught during in-river plankton tows. The Kitimat River surveys roughly estimate the total number of spawners from gill netting and split beam hydro-acoustics (Stevens 2001). The Fraser and Bella Coola population assessment studies were initiated after major declines had occurred in the populations. As these SSB estimates may have only calculated the biomass of the depressed population and each data point is expressed as the ratio of its maximum value in the time-series, these estimates may overestimate eulachon abundance when no other data source exists to contribute to the final abundance status prediction. Fortunately, for these systems there are other data sources available.

### (5) Larval surveys (LS)

Larval survey data only existed for the Columbia River. The larval surveys began in the Columbia River tributaries in the early 1990s and expanded to the mainstem of the river in 1996. They were used to measure the brood-year strength of the run by measuring larval densities that were averaged across stations and depths at selected index sites (WDFG/ODFG 2005). In past years, the sampling techniques did not include the same sampling areas or were not conducted over the same time periods. Thus the data may not "accurately reflect the overall abundance" (WDFG/ODFG 2005). In addition, these surveys were not initiated until after the run had a noticeable decline in abundance (1994), thus "it is difficult to correlate larval catches to relative run strength" (WDFG/ODFG 2005). For consistency between data sources, each larval survey data point was expressed as a ratio of its maximum value in its time-series.

### (6) Test Fishery (TF)

Test fishery data only existed for the Fraser River: it operated during the eulachon spawning seasons between 1995 and 2004, with the exception of 1999 and used a standardized gillnet deployed for 15 minutes during slack tide (Therriault and McCarter 2005). The total catch was counted and each individual fish reported. TF data generally corresponded well with the SSB estimates in the Fraser River, however, in the years where it did not, the test fishery predicted greater abundance than the SSB estimate. Therriault and McCarter (2005) suggest that this is perhaps due to "the limited (daily) and unreplicated (one time) sampling method employed by the test fishery… as eulachon can be highly schooled (but not necessarily abundant) during the 15 minute fishing window." As with other data, for consistency between data sources each TF data point was expressed as a ratio of its maximum value in the time-series.

### (7) Report Comments (RC)

Report comments were obtained from specific written comments made in scientific reports or fisheries officer reports during or after the eulachon fishing season. To assign a numerical value, the comment was interpreted and ranked on a scale from one to ten. A score of one meant that abundance was extremely low and a score of ten meant abundance was very high. For example:

> There was a good run of eulachons in the Fraser River this week and although it was fished quite intensively, escapement appeared good [Fraser River - Chilliwack-Hope district 1954] (DFO 1940-1979). Score: 8
>
> Oulichan run to Bella Coola less than half of total run according to catch with heavy fishing [Bella Coola 1956] (DFO 1944-1989). Score: 4
>
> The run of eulachons into the Nass River this year is one of earliest and largest since 1904 [Nass River 1958] (DFO 1941-1973). Score: 10

**(8) Interview and local expert comments (ILC)**

These comments were obtained from local experts during interviews, personal conversations, from e-mails, or from local knowledge recorded in published or unpublished reports. They were based on a person's recollection of an event, years after it had occurred, whereas report comment data were recorded and based on an expert's knowledge during the time of the actual event. To assign a numerical value to the comment, the comment was either, interpreted and ranked on a scale from one to ten by the researcher, or a local expert assigned a specific value for the year. A score of one meant that abundance was extremely low and a score of ten meant abundance was very high.

### 4.2.2 Operating the eulachon fuzzy expert system

The expert system was developed using Microsoft Excel and Visual Basics for Applications (see Appendix 8 for the complete code). The expert system was designed to combine the above 8 data types to derive an annual index of eulachon abundance status (Figure 4.1). In order to estimate the annual abundance status for an eulachon system, one or more of the data series had to have at least five years of consecutive data. However, once this data requirement was filled, data sources with sporadic years of data were also used, as for example in an individual report comment (RC) from 1977. A conventional fuzzy model has three basic steps: (1) fuzzification (2) inference process (3) defuzzification (Kandel 1994). These are described below.

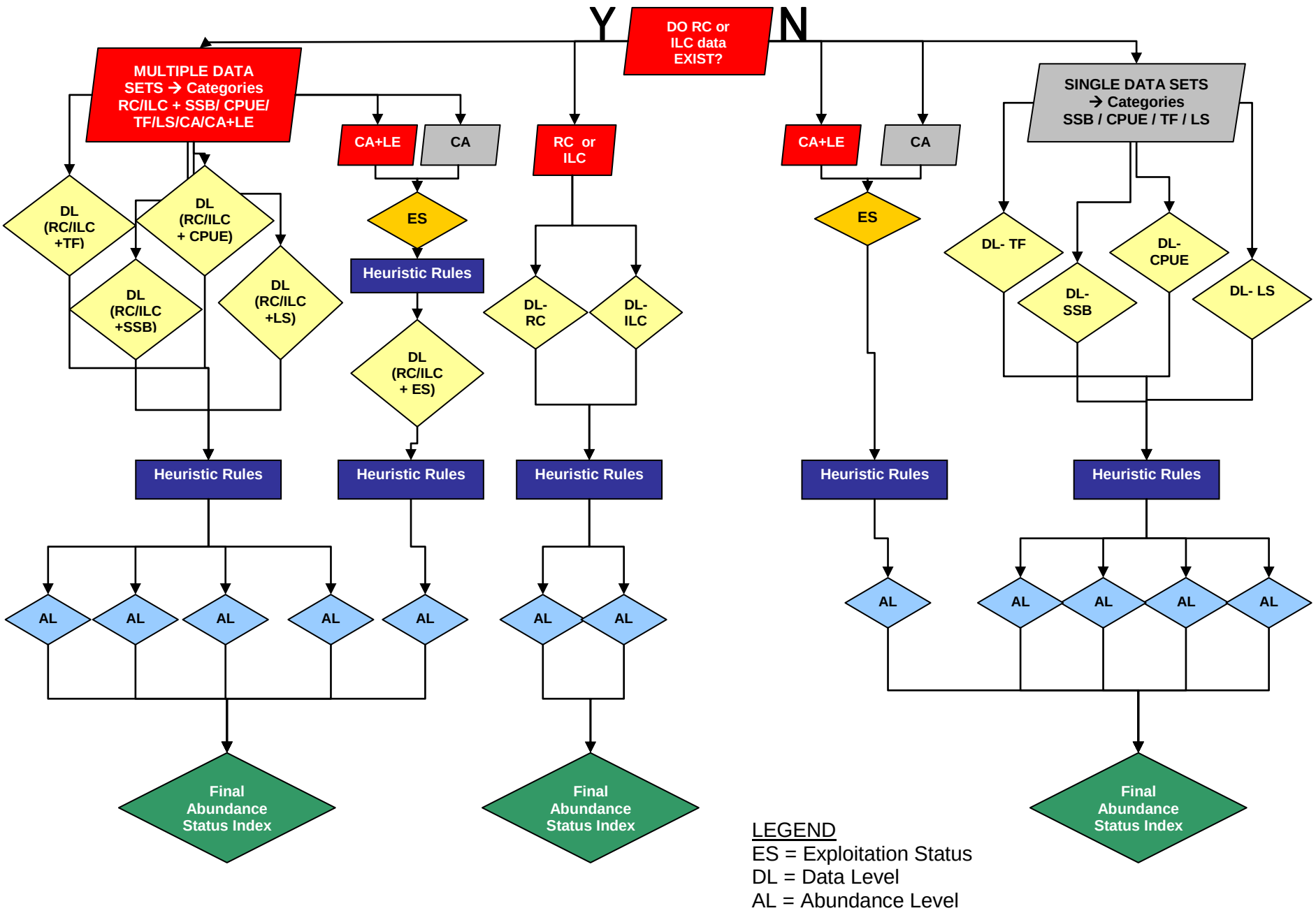



Figure 4.1. Schematic diagram of the structure of the fuzzy expert system used to predict eulachon abundance

#### 4.2.2.1 Fuzzification

The fuzzification process determines the degree of membership to the fuzzy set using membership functions and input parameters (e.g. smoothed catch).

##### 4.2.2.1.1 Exploitation status

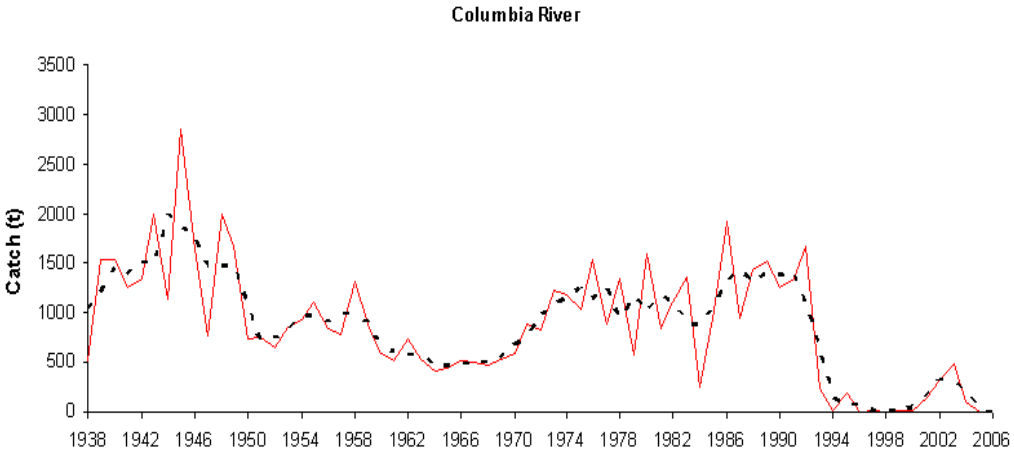
The catch time-series data were categorized into exploitation status categories. Since fluctuations in catch can be caused by changes other than those due to fishing (e.g., primary productivity in the environment) each catch time-series was smoothed with a 3-year running average (Figure 4.2a and b). A 3-year running average was chosen because three years is thought to be the most common age of maturity for most eulachon populations (Hay and McCarter 2000) and thus thought to be sufficient to smooth any major catch fluctuations that may have been caused by environmental variability.

To make catch values comparable between rivers, each catch data point was expressed as a ratio of its maximum value in its catch time-series. These values were then classified by their position relative to the maximum smoothed catch in their time-series (i.e., before or after the maximum catch was reached). The state of a fishing resource is classified by the UN Food and Agricultural Organization (FAO) as under-exploited when there is significant potential for expansion. As a fishery approaches maximum productivity the population becomes fully-exploited (Alverson and Dunlop 1998). As the productivity declines the population becomes over-exploited, reduced and depleted as catches continue to decrease below historical levels. If fishing effort is curtailed or reduced to a low level, a recovery stage may occur.

Thus each smoothed catch data point was sorted into the exploitation status categories: (1) under-exploited, (2) fully exploited, (3) over-exploited, (4) reduced, (5) depleted and (6) recovering (Figure 4.3) based on its position and ratio to the maximum catch (Table 4.2). These categories were based loosely on those developed by Grainger and Garcia (1996) in demonstrating the usefulness of catch time-series data when trying to interpret the developments in world's fisheries. The domain, or range of possible values used for the fuzzy sets were based loosely on the "moderate" scenario categories developed by Cheung

(2007). He used three scenarios (i.e., liberal, moderate and conservative) and determined that the moderate scenario was robust and preformed the best of the three.

a)




b)

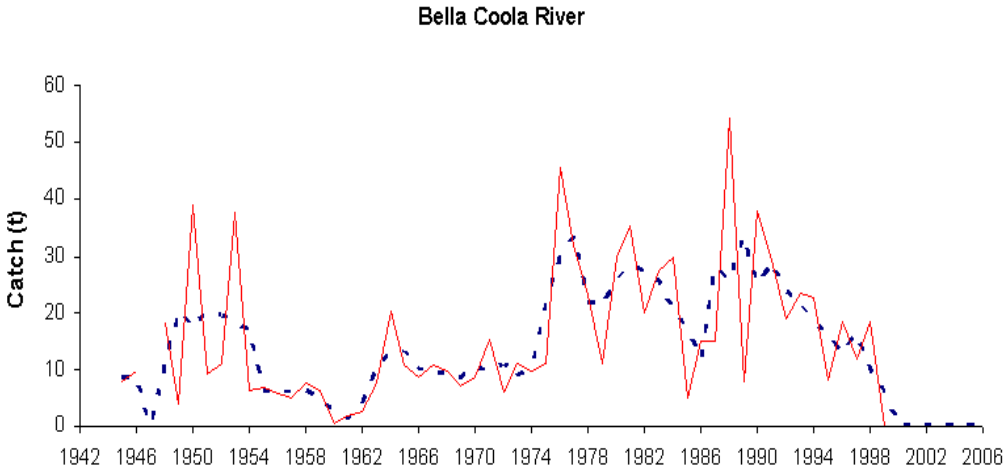



Figure 4.2. Columbia River catch time-series (a) and Bella Coola catch time-series (b)
Source: Columbia- WDFG & ODFG 2005; Bella Coola- Chapter 3.

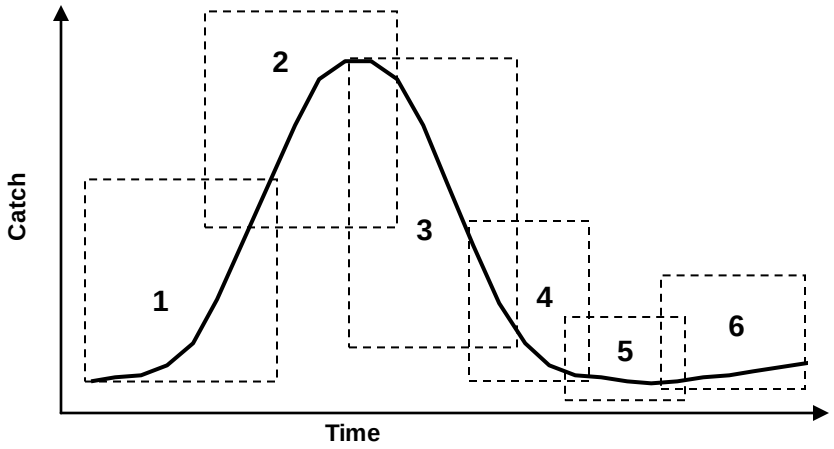



Figure 4.3. Diagram showing the classification of exploitation status of a population based on a catch time-series: (1) under-exploited; (2) fully-exploited; (3) over-exploited; (4) reduced; (5) depleted; (6) recovering.

Table 4.2. Categorization of a population's exploitation status based on fisheries catch time-series data

| **Exploitation status** (premise) | **Domain of fuzzy sets[a] Catch relative to maximum in Time-series[b]** | | **Position of data point in time series (before or after the maximum catch)** | **Fuzzy membership function** |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| (1) Under-exploited | 0 – 0.7 | (0-0.4) | Before maximum | Trapezoidal |
| (2) Fully-exploited | 0.4 – 1 | (0.7-1) | Before maximum | Trapezoidal |
| (2) Fully-exploited | 0.5 – 1 | (0.7-1) | After maximum | Trapezoidal |
| (3) Over-exploited | 0.3 – 0.7 | (0.5) | After maximum | Triangle |
| (4) Reduced | 0.1 – 0.5 | (0.3) | After maximum | Triangle |
| (5) Depleted | 0 – 0.3 | (0-0.1) | After maximum | Trapezoidal |
| (6) Recovering | 3-<3 | (8-<8) | After maximum and after conditions of low fishing effort and 'depleted' status have occurred for at least 3 years | Trapezoidal |

[a]Domain of a set represents all possible values of an independent variable of a function. Values in parentheses represent the value or range of an independent variable with full membership to the set;
[b]Estimated from the ratio of catch at year t to the maximum catch (using catch time-series smoothed running average)

Each data value could belong to multiple categories (e.g. fully and over-exploited) with degree(s) of membership calculated from predefined membership functions for the categories

(Figure 4.4a, b and c). Since prior knowledge about the shape of the fuzzy membership function was unavailable, the expert system used the simplest fuzzy membership functions, trapezoidal and triangular:

$$\text{Membership} = 0 \qquad \text{if } x \leq a$$

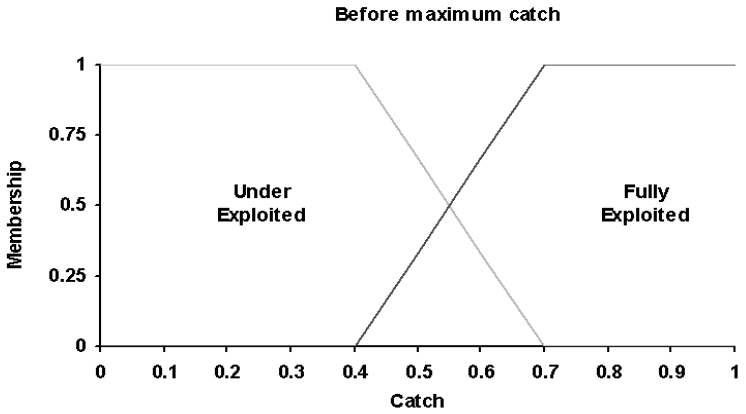
$$\text{Membership} = \frac{x - a}{b - a} \qquad \text{if } a<x<b$$

$$\text{Membership} = 1 \qquad \text{if } b \leq x \leq c$$

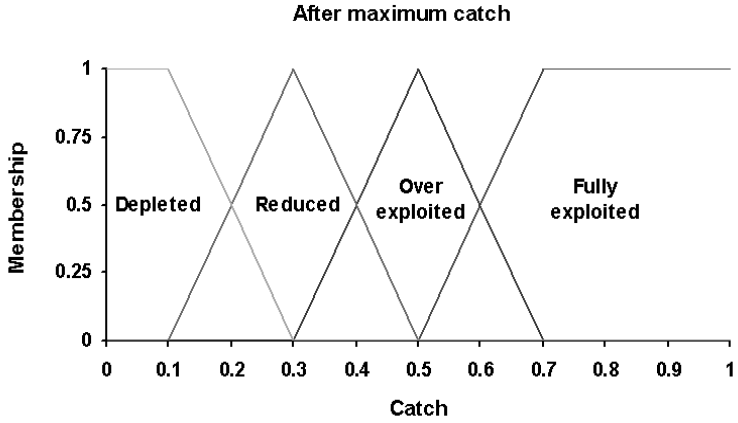
$$\text{Membership} = \frac{d - a}{d - c} \qquad \text{if } c \leq x \leq d$$

where $x$ is the standardized values of the data series. The base of a triangular and trapezoidal fuzzy membership function is determined by $a$ and $c$, and $a$ and $d$ respectively. Values of $x$ between $b$ and $c$ have minimum membership and for the triangular membership function, $b$ and $c$ were equal.

a)




b)




c)

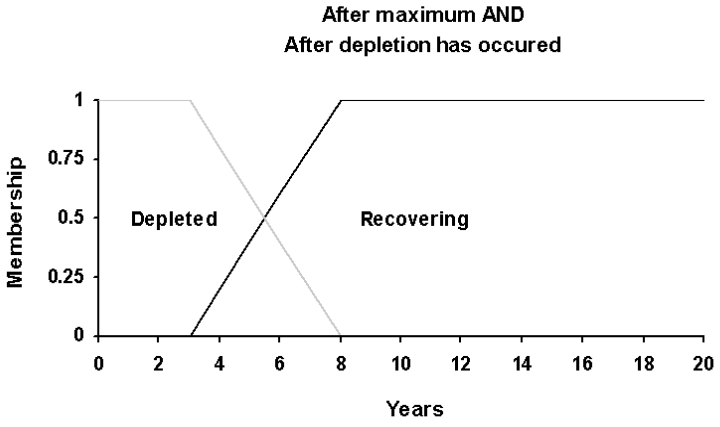



Figure 4.4. Fuzzy sets defining the catch input data used for determining exploitation status (a) exploitation status before maximum catch (b) exploitation status after maximum catch (c) exploitation status after depletion status has been reached and fishing effort is low

For example, the First Nation smoothed eulachon catch from the Bella Coola River in 1973 was 8.97 t, approximately 27% of the maximum smoothed catch in 1977 (33.4 t). Based on the fuzzy membership functions, the Bella Coola fishery in 1973 was classified as underexploited with full membership. Whereas the smoothed Columbia River commercial catch in 1973 was 1,073.3 t or approximately 54% of maximum smoothed catch of 1944 (1,994.2 t) thus was classified as fully exploited and overfished with memberships of 0.19 and 0.81 (full membership = 1), respectively.

#### 4.2.2.1.2 Data levels (DL)

The following data sources report comments (RC), inteveiw/local comments (ILC), CPUE, SSB, larval surveys (LS) and test fishery (TF) data were categorized into data levels (DL). As with catch data, each individual data point was expressed as a ratio of its maximum value in its time-series and based on this value, each data point was categorized into the following data level categories: (1) high, (2) medium-high, (3) medium, (4) medium-low, (5) low (Table 4.3 and Figure 4.5). The domain or range of possible values used for these fuzzy sets were based on the assumption that as a data value increases from 0 to 1, the concluding data level will increase from low to high. The particular domains were arbitrarily divided into five fuzzy sets. The trapezoidal sets were assigned a total range of 0.3 and the triangular fuzzy sets were assigned a total range of 0.4. The medium-low to medium-high categories were assigned a greater range because it was assumed that they may have a larger range of overlap than the low and high categories.

Table 4.3. Categorization of data levels based on data sets (CPUE/ SSB/ TF/ LS/ RC/ ILC)

| **Domain of fuzzy sets[a] Data relative to maximum in time series[b]** | | **Data level** | **Fuzzy membership function** |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0.7 – 1 | (0.9-1) | High | Trapezoidal |
| 0.5 – 0.9 | (0.7) | Medium-high | Triangle |
| 0.3 – 0.7 | (0.5) | Medium | Triangle |
| 0.1 – 0.5 | (0.3) | Medium-low | Triangle |
| 0 – 0.3 | (0-0.1) | Low | Trapezoidal |

[a]Domain of a set represents all possible values of an independent variable of a function. Values in parentheses represent the value or range of an independent variable with full membership to the set;
[b]Estimated from the ratio of the data value at year t to the maximum data value (excluding RC and ILC data which use their original data value and not a ratio value)

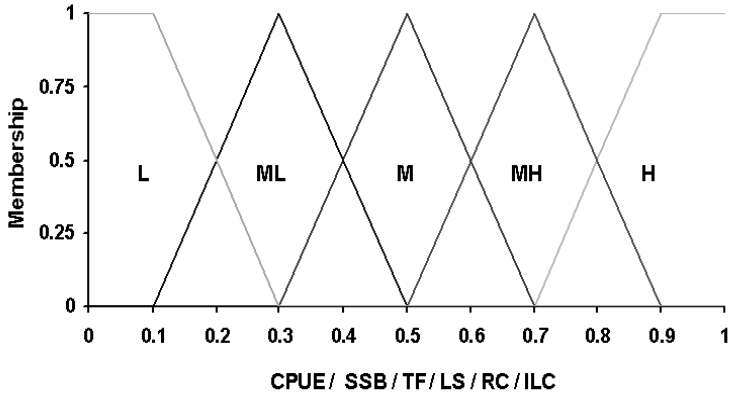



Figure 4.5. Fuzzy sets defining the input data CPUE or SSB or TF or LS or RC or ILC data, for determining data levels

For example, in 1943 CPUE for the Fraser River was calculated at 154.79 lbs/100 fathoms$^2$/hour (0.62 t/183 m$^2$/hr) approximately 0.67% of the maximum CPUE in the time-series from 1941-1953. Based on the fuzzy membership functions (Figure 4.5) the data level was classified as medium-high and medium with memberships of 0.85 and 0.15, respectively.

#### 4.2.2.2 Inference

##### 4.2.2.2.1 Inferring abundance level (AL)

Three sets of heuristic rules were used in the expert system. The first rule set (A) inferred abundance levels from exploitation status and low effort information; (B) inferred abundance levels from the data levels derived from CPUE, SSB, test fishery (TF), larval survey (LS), report comment (RC), and interview/local comment (ILC) data and (C) inferred abundance levels from a combination of qualitative data (RC and ILC data) and quantitative data (CPUE, SSB, TF, LS and catch) (Table 4.4). The weights (CF) of each rule and the reasoning behind the assigned weights are explained in section 4.2.2.3

Table 4.4. Heuristic rule sets, the data for each set and the certainty factor assigned to each set

| Rule Set | Data Types | Weight (CF) | Importance/Rationale* |
|---|---|---|---|
| B | LS | 0.25 | Med-Low: poor sampling techniques |
| B | TF | 0.25 | Med-Low: vulnerable to overestimating the run |
| A | Catch | 0.25 | Med-low: poor indicator of abundance |
| B | CPUE | 0.25 | Med-low: possible effect of schooling fish |
| B | SSB | 0.25 | Med-low: conducted after a major decline |
| B | ILC | 0.3 | Medium-low: direct indicator of run size but based on memory so lower than RC |
| B | RC | 0.4 | Medium-low: direct indicator of run size |
| A | Catch; LE | 0.5 | Medium: increases CA certainty with LE data |
| C | LS; RC or ILC | 0.5 | Medium: increases LS certainty with RC/ILC data |
| C | TF; RC or ILC | 0.5 | Medium: increases TF certainty with RC/ILC data |
| C | Catch; RC or ILC | 0.5 | Medium: increases CA certainty with RC/ILC data |
| C | SSB; RC or ILC | 0.5 | Medium: increases SSB certainty with RC/ILC data |
| C | CPUE; RC or ILC | 0.5 | Medium: increases CPUE certainty with RC/ILC data |
| C | Catch; LE; RC or ILC | 0.75 | Med-high: three data sources to increase certainty of catch data |

*See section on 'types of data' for a more detailed explanation and references

The first rule set used exploitation status to predict the abundance level (AL) of each eulachon fishery. These heuristic rules were developed from three assumptions: (1) the AL of an exploited eulachon fishery decreases as the population becomes fully exploited, over exploited, reduced and depleted (Table 4.5). For example, in 1950, the Columbia River had a smoothed catch of 1,055.5 t or approximately 53% of the maximum smoothed catch (1,994 t in 1944) and thus, the population was classified as fully-exploited and over-exploited with memberships of 0.15 and 0.85, respectively. Thus the following rules were applied:

> IF the population is **fully-exploited** THEN the abundance level is **medium** and **medium-high**
>
> IF the population is **over-exploited** THEN the abundance level is **medium**

The second assumption (2), is that the abundance level (AL) of depleted, reduced and over-exploited fisheries is higher in years of low fishing effort than in years when effort is normal or unknown (Table 4.5).

Table 4.5. Heuristic rule conclusions (shaded boxes) that relate exploitation status to abundance level (AL) when low effort does not exist and (2) when low effort does exist

| **Exploitation status** (premise) | **Conclusions (1)** (AL) | | **Conclusions (2)** (AL) with ***low effort*** | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Under-exploited | High | | High | |
| Fully-exploited | Medium | Medium-high | Medium-high | |
| Over-exploited | Medium | | Medium-high | |
| Reduced | Medium-low | Medium | Medium | |
| Depleted | Low | Medium-low | Medium | |
| Recovering | - | | Medium-low | Medium |

For example the Columbia River in 1960 had a smoothed catch of 663.4 t or approximately 0.33 % of the maximum smoothed catch (1,994.2 t in 1944) and was classified as over-exploited and reduced with memberships of 0.16 and 0.84. However, fishing effort was low thus the following rules applied:

> IF the population is **over-exploited** AND the fishing effort is **low** THEN the abundance level is **medium-high**
>
> IF the population is **reduced** AND the fishing effort is **low** THEN the abundance level is **medium**

The third assumption applies only after three criteria for the population have been met (1) it has reached a depleted stage, (2) it has remained depleted for at least three years, and (3) low fishing effort has been reported in all depleted stages; hence the third assumption reads "if a population has been depleted for more than 3 years and the fishing effort has also been low, the population is presumed to be recovering." Fishing is known to reduce the abundance of targeted stocks. Thus under this assumption, it is assumed that the population is depleted because of fishing, consequently, if fishing effort is decreased or ceased, the population is assumed to have recovered to a medium-low or a medium abundance level. The onset of a recovering population is 3 years, as this is the average age of maturity of an eulachon (Clarke *et al.* 2007). Therefore, once these three criteria have been met, the population is considered

to be recovering until catch surpasses the recovering membership category and thus moves into reduced, over exploited, etc. (Table 4.5).

For example:

> IF the population is **recovering** THEN the abundance level is **medium-low** and **medium**

The second set of heuristic rules uses the data levels (DL) derived from Report Comments (RC), Interview/Local Comments (ILC), CPUE, SSB, Larval Surveys (LS) and Test Fishery (TF) data to predict the abundance level (AL) for each year. These heuristic rules were developed from the assumption that "the abundance level will improve as the data level increases from low to high" (Table 4.6).

Table 4.6. Heuristic rule conclusions (abundance level) that relate the data level (DL) of RC/ ILC/ CPUE/ SSB/ TF/ LS to abundance level (AL).

| **Data level (DL)** (premise) | **Conclusions** (AL) |
|---|---|
| High | High |
| Medium-high | Medium-high |
| Medium | Medium |
| Medium-low | Medium-low |
| Low | Low |

For example:

> If the data level is **low** THEN the abundance level is **low**

#### 4.2.2.2.2 Combining heuristic rules

The third set of heuristic rules combines the qualitative data levels from, report comment (RC) and interview/local comment (ILC) data sets, with quantitative data levels derived from either exploitation status, CPUE, SSB, larval surveys (LS) or test fishery (TF). These heuristic rules were developed based on three assumptions; (1) qualitative data describes the abundance level of the eulachon system better than quantitative data because they provide information that specifically describes the run size (the limitations of each quantitative data type at inferring abundance were discussed in section 4.2.1). The second assumption, (2) the presence of an RC or ILC data level will influence the abundance level derived from CPUE, SSB, LS, TF or exploitation status (Table 4.7, 4.8a and 4.8b). Thus, under this assumption,

the combination of data levels from quantitative and qualitative data will better represent the true abundance level than when only one type of data is used. Fishers or local experts are in a unique position to construct plausible hypotheses about observations that may not be available to research scientists (Pinkerton and Weinstein 1995). Thus qualitative data may provide unique information when combined with other research observations (e.g. catch), and hence a more plausible conclusion may be reached.

Table 4.7. Conclusions (abundance level) to heuristic rules that combine CPUE/SSB/TF/LS data levels with RC/ILC data levels (DL)

| | **CPUE or SSB or TF or LS Data level (DL)** (premise) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **RC or ILC Data level** (premise) | **Low** | **Med-Low** | **Medium** | **Med-High** | **High** |
| **Low** (L) | L – AL | L – AL | L – AL | ML – AL | ML – AL |
| **Med-Low** (ML) | ML – AL | ML – AL | ML – AL | M – AL | M – AL |
| **Medium** (M) | ML – AL | M – AL | M – AL | M – AL | M – AL |
| **Med-High** (MH) | M – AL | M – AL | MH – AL | MH – AL | MH – AL |
| **High** (H) | M – AL | M – AL | MH – AL | MH – AL | H – AL |

For example:

> IF the CPUE data level is **low** and the RC data level is **medium** THEN the abundance level is **medium-low**

Table 4.8. Heuristic rules conclusions (abundance level) when the exploitation status of a eulachon population is combined with RC/ILC data levels when effort is (a) normal/unknown or (b) low

a)

| | **Exploitation status** (premise) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **RC or ILC Data level** (premise) | **Depleted** | **Reduced** | **Over-exploited** | **Fully-exploited** | **Under-exploited** |
| **Low** (L) | L - AL | L - AL | ML – AL | ML – AL | M – AL |
| **Med-Low** (ML) | ML – AL | ML – AL | ML – AL | M – AL | M – AL |
| **Medium** (M) | M – AL | M – AL | M – AL | M – AL | MH – AL |
| **Med-High** (MH) | M – AL | M – AL | MH – AL | MH – AL | MH – AL |
| **High** (H) | M – AL | MH – AL | MH – AL | H - AL | H – AL |

b)

| | **Exploitation status** with ***low effort*** (premise) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **RC or ILC Data level** (premise) | **Recovering** | **Reduced** | **Over-exploited** | **Fully-exploited** | **Under-exploited** |
| **Low** (L) | ML – AL | L – AL | ML – AL | M – AL | M – AL |
| **Med-Low** (ML) | ML – AL | ML – AL | ML – AL | M – AL | M – AL |
| **Medium** (M) | M – AL | M – AL | M – AL | M – AL | MH – AL |
| **Med-High** (MH) | M – AL | M – AL | MH – AL | MH – AL | MH – AL |
| **High** (H) | M – AL | MH – AL | MH – AL | H - AL | H – AL |

For example, in 1962 the Fraser River had a smoothed catch of 184.8 t or approximately 88.6% of the smoothed maximum catch in 1955 (208.6 t). Based on the catch fuzzy membership functions, the Fraser River fishery in 1962 was classified as fully-exploited with full membership (full membership = 1). However, there was also report comment information available for that year (0.5 data value) from a DFO Fisheries Officer weekly report (DFO 1940-1979) which indicated a medium abundance level with full membership. Thus the fully exploited exploitation status and the RC abundance level were combined using the following rule:

> IF the population is **fully exploited** AND RC abundance level is **medium**
> THEN abundance is **medium**

When different rules result in the same conclusion, memberships to the conclusion are accumulated using the MYCIN method (Buchanan and Shortliffe 1984).

$$Membership_e = Membership_{e-1} + Membership_i \cdot (1 - Membership_{e-1})$$

where $Membership_e$ is the degree of membership of the conclusion after combining the conclusions from *e* number of rules, and $Membership_i$ is the degree of membership of the conclusion from rule *i*. For example, this method would be used when a 'medium-high' abundance level is derived from both exploitation status and CPUE data level.

#### 4.2.2.2.3 Sensitivity of rules

The sensitivity of the final abundance status to the heuristic rules was tested by systematically 'turning off' each rule. This degraded the system in steps so that the impact of losing information could be assessed by examining the resulting effect to the output results. To test the sensitivity, the Fraser River and the Columbia River's 'base' abundance status results were compared to results with each of the 14 rules turned off. The base results were derived using all applicable rules and a certainty factor (CF) of 1.0 (100%). The Fraser River data set was chosen because it had the highest number of data sources (six), followed by the Columbia River (five). The rules were turned off one at a time and the final abundance status calculated. The sum of the squared differences (SSD) between the base results and each of the fourteen final abundance status results, minus a rule, were calculated to determine the sensitivity of the final abundance status to each rule. The log of SSD was plotted to display this sensitivity.

### 4.2.2.3 Defuzzification – calculating the final abundance status (AS)

The process of defuzzification converts the final range of conclusions (i.e., abundance levels (AL)) with different memberships or fuzzy values, to a single number (i.e., final abundance status). The most widely used defuzzification technique is the "centroid" method. This method finds the "balance" point of the solution fuzzy region by calculating the weighted mean of the region (Cox 1999). Thus the evidence (i.e., abundance level) from all rules yields an answer that is weighted by the importance of the rule by assigning a weight multiplier (Cox 1999) or a certainty factor (CF) (Buchanan and Shortliffe 1984). For example, the truth of a premise is multiplied by a certainty factor that has been assigned to the rule e.g. a CF value of 0.75 reduces the force of the rule by 25% (the default weight is 1.0).

$$\text{Membership}_{\text{conclusion}} = \text{Membership}_{\text{premise}} \cdot \text{CF}$$

The expert system used a total of four different CF values for each of its rules (0.75 for med-high, 0.5 for medium, 0.4-0.25 for med-low, and 0.1 for low) (Table 4.4). The statements with higher confidence carry more weight and have greater effect, i.e., the data sets by themselves (larval survey, test fishery, catch, CPUE, SSB, report comments (RC) and interview/local comments (ILC)) were assigned weights between 0.25 and 0.4. RC and ILC were assigned higher weights because they were assumed to be a direct indicator of relative run strength, whereas the other data types may misrepresent relative run strength (refer to section 4.2.1 on types of data for an explanation on the limitations of each data type). The combination of two data sets, e.g. RC + CPUE data, increases the CF value assigned to the rule from medium-low (0.25) certainty to medium certainty (0.5). Thus a higher confidence is associated with the combination of two data sources. In addition, when three data sources are combined (i.e., catch + low effort + RC or ILC), the CF value is increased to medium-high certainty (0.75).

The final abundance statuses were expressed on an arbitrary scale of increasing abundance from 1 to 100 and were categorized into five status levels: low, medium-low, medium, medium-high and high (Figure 4.6). For example, the Klamath River eulachon run of 1972 was classified as 'high' with a membership of 1.0 and a final abundance status of 100.

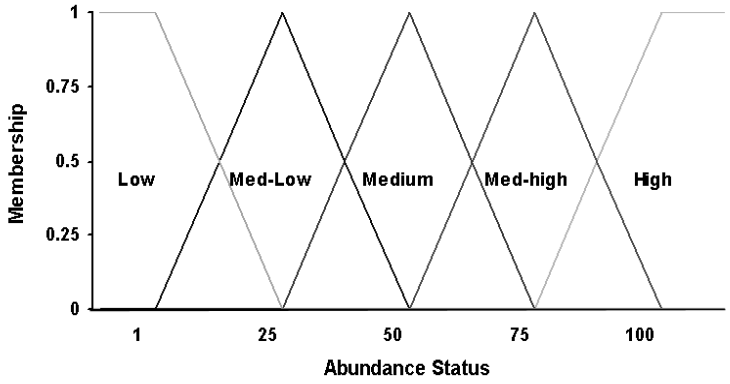



Figure 4.6. Output fuzzy sets for the abundance status of an eulachon population.
The "Low" and "High" abundance status levels are defined by trapezoid membership functions while the "Med-low", "Medium" and "Med-high" abundance status levels are defined by triangle membership functions. The final abundance statuses were scaled arbitrarily from 1 to 100

### 4.2.3 Coast wide eulachon abundance status

To illustrate the overall coast-wide past and present eulachon abundance status, 15 eulachon systems were chosen and their estimated abundance status indices plotted on four tables using a ten-point colour scale (reds signifying low abundance, yellows and light blues signifying medium abundance and darker blues signifying medium-high to high abundance) (Table 4.9). Four, 20-year time periods were displayed between the years 1927 and 2006. The white squares indicate no information available for the year. The 15 systems were arranged from north to south, from Cook Inlet, Alaska, to the Klamath River, California.

Table 4.9. Colour scale used to represent coast-wide eulachon estimated abundance status indices (1-100) and the final abundance level (e.g. low)

| 10< | 10<20 | 20<30 | 30<40 | 40<50 | 50<60 | 60<70 | 70<80 | 80<90 | 90<100 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Low | Low | Med-low | Med-low | Medium | Medium | Medium | High | Med-high | High |

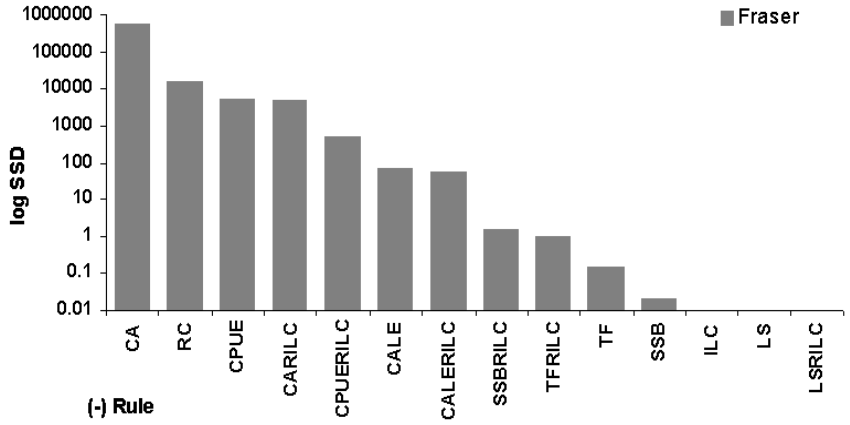
## 4.3 Results

### 4.3.1 Sensitivity analysis

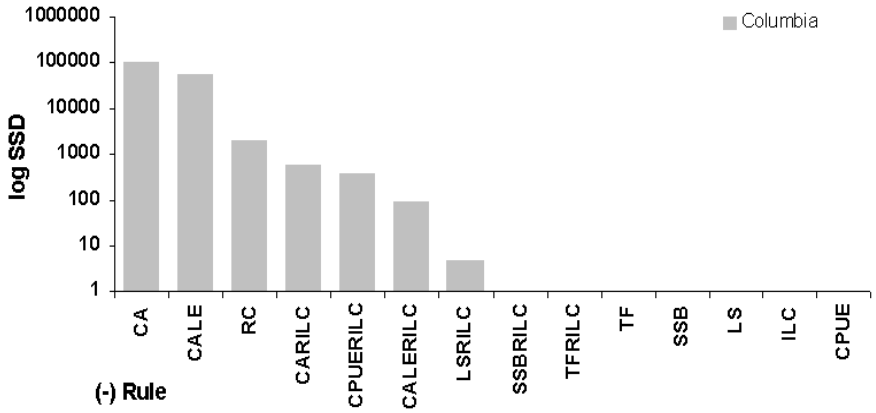
Both final abundance status time-series were most sensitive to the catch rules. The Fraser River final abundance status was also sensitive to the report comment and CPUE rules in addition to the combination rules: catch and CPUE plus report or interview/local comments (Figure 4.7a). The Columbia River final abundance status was also sensitive to the combination rule catch + low effort and the report comment rules (Figure 4.7b). The rules which had no effect on the final abundance either did not have applicable data (e.g. interview/local comments) or were not applicable because the combination of the data sources did not exist (e.g. SSB with report or interview/local comments for the Columbia River). The Fraser River data set was again used to test the sensitivity of the results to each data source. Each data type was removed from the expert system and the final results compared to the base results. Not surprisingly, the results were most sensitive to the catch data, followed by the report comment data and CPUE data (Figure 4.7c).

Figure 4.8 (a, b and c) illustrates the differences in the final Fraser River base results minus each of the three most sensitive rules, where generally without the report comment rules, the abundance status was lower, and without the catch rules the abundance status was higher. The range of abundance status results (i.e., the maximum and minimum values estimated when each of the rules are subtracted) for the Fraser River (1940-2006) are shown in Figure 4.9. Only these years were used because prior to 1940, the only source of data was catch data. Thus only catch rules would be applicable to these data and only one value generated, it being both the minimum and maximum value.

a)




b)




c)

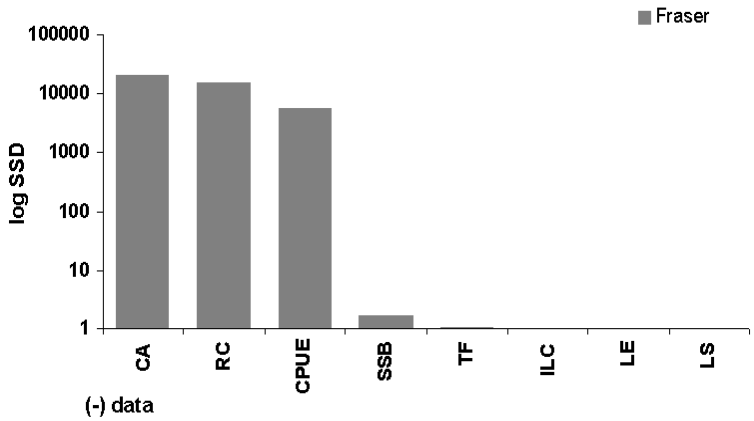
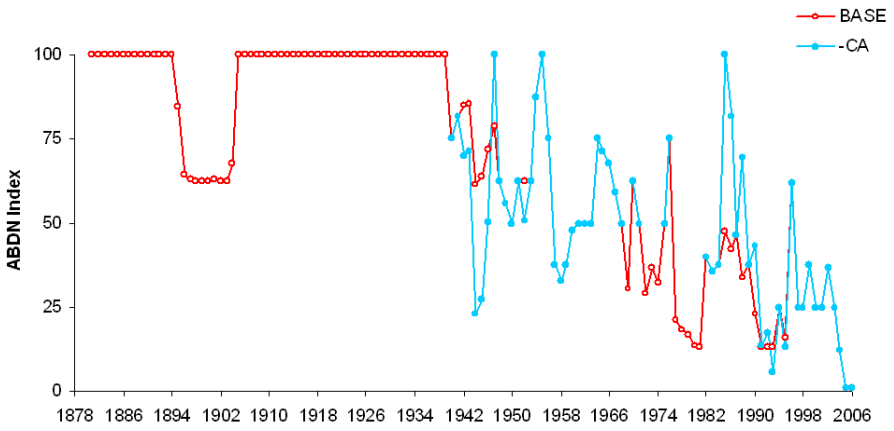
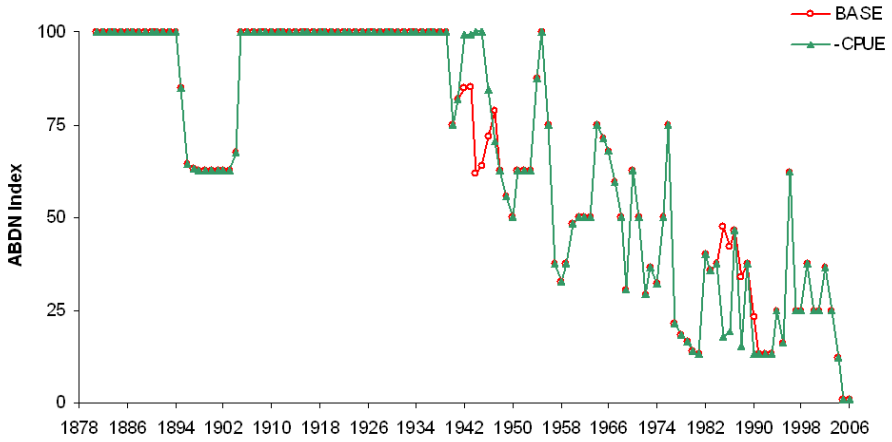



Figure 4.7. Sensitivity of the final abundance status results (a) Fraser River and (b) Columbia River, minus the applicable heuristic rules and (c) Fraser River minus each data set. All results calculated using the sum of squared differences (SSD).

a)




b)




c)

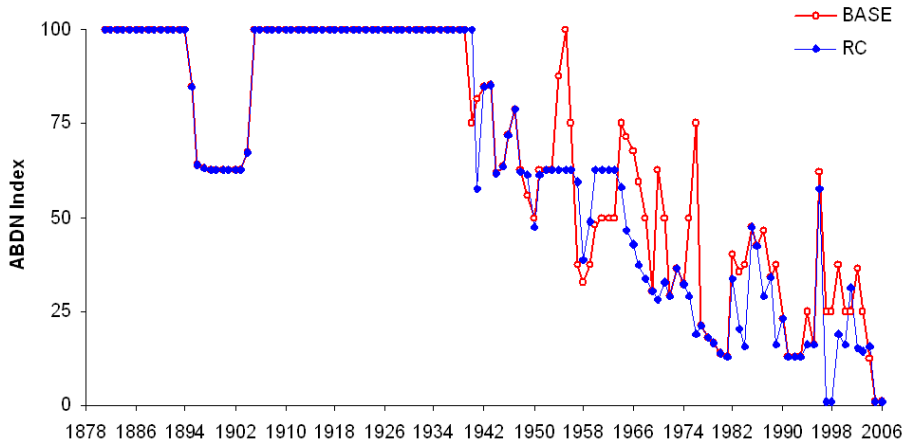



Figure 4.8. Comparison of the 'base' results of the Fraser River eulachon final abundance indices and results minus (a) catch rules (b) CPUE rules and CPUE + RC/ILC rules (c) RC rules.

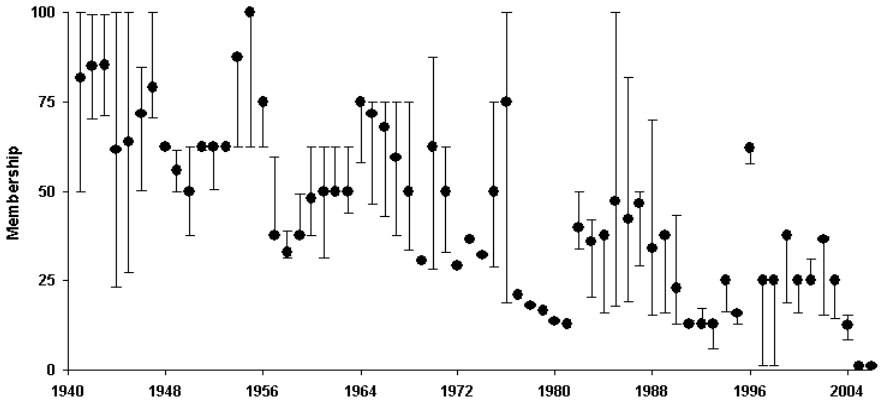



Figure 4.9. Fraser River 1940-2006 base final eulachon abundance results with minimum and maximum abundance values shown with error bars. Ranges calculated by subtracting each rule.

## 4.3.2 Abundance status (ABDN) index estimations

Based on the combination of eight possible sources of data, the expert system estimated the annual abundance status (ABDN) of fifteen eulachon systems. The number of annual ABDN index estimations for each system depended on the available data. The Fraser River had the longest final ABDN index time-series with 125 years estimations. The Unuk River, Alaska, had the shortest final ABDN index time-series with only nine years of estimations.

### 4.3.2.1 Cook Inlet, Alaska

The estimated annual eulachon ABDN index for this area has remained consistently above 75 or at medium-high or high abundance level for the past fifteen years (Figure 4.10). In the most recent years a decline to medium-abundance level is estimated but the overall abundance remains well above a medium abundance level (ABDN index = 50). The total catch from this area appears to be low with only a few years of significant commercial catches (>45 t) which have occurred only in the past few seasons (2006-2007).

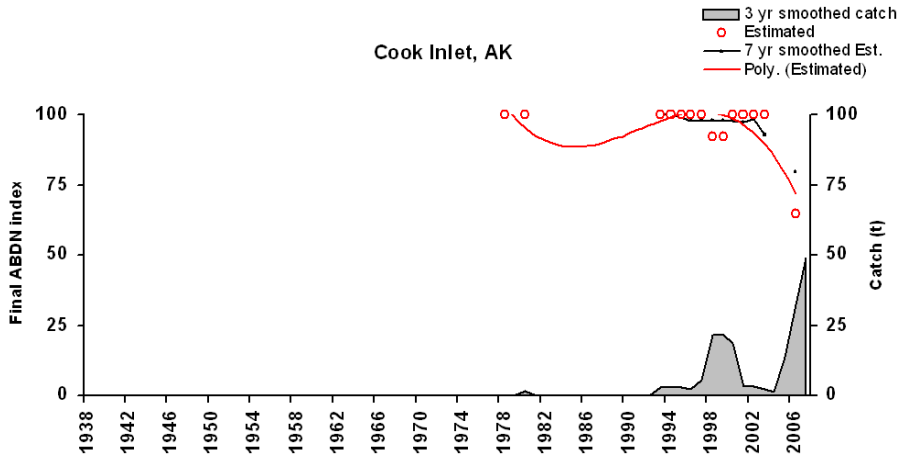



Figure 4.10. Cook Inlet, Alaska, estimated eulachon abundance status (circles), 7 year smoothed abundance status estimations (black line), 3 yr. smoothed catch (grey fill) and a polynomial fitted trend line (red line).

#### 4.3.2.2 Copper River, Prince William Sound, Alaska

The estimated annual eulachon ABDN index for the Copper River has remained consistently above 50 or above the medium abundance level for the majority of the time-series with few exceptions (Figure 4.11). Up to date ABDN index estimations could be made if the most recent catch data (2004-06) was known and/or local expert knowledge was acquired.

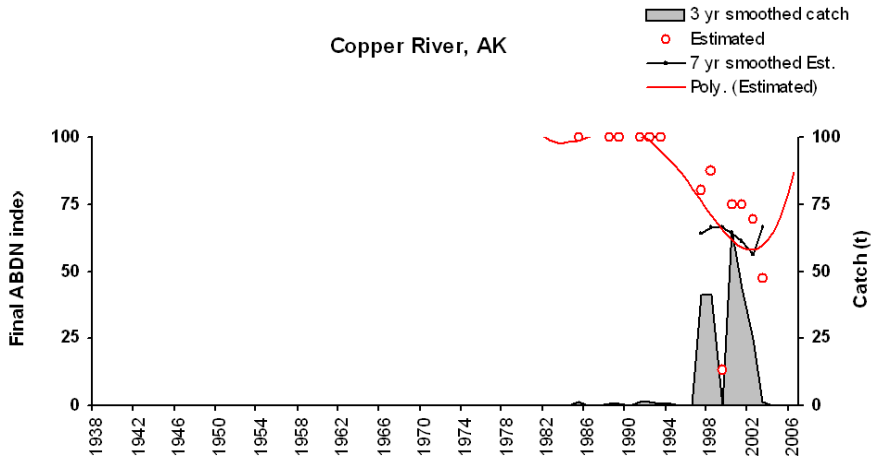
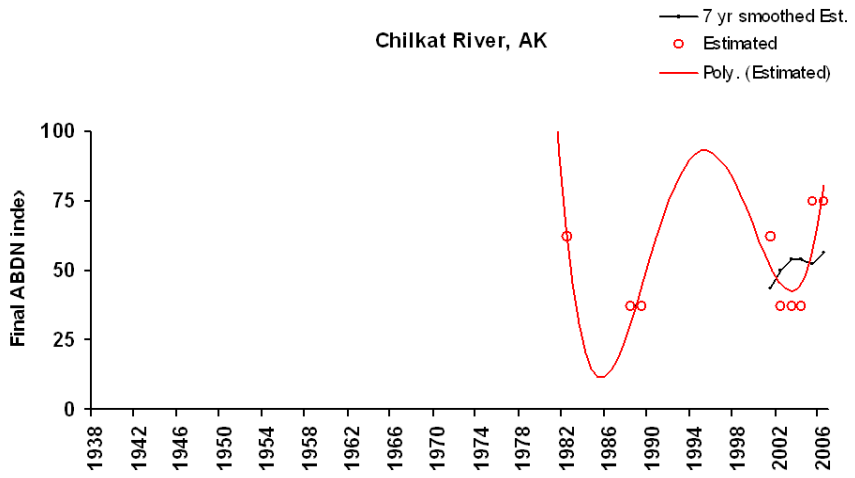



Figure 4.11. Copper River, Alaska, estimated eulachon abundance status (circles), 7 year smoothed abundance status estimations (black line), 3 yr. smoothed catch (grey fill) and a polynomial fitted trend line (red line).

#### 4.3.2.3 Southeastern Alaska, Chilkat River and Unuk River

The estimated annual eulachon ABDN index for the Chilkat River fluctuated around 50 or around the medium abundance level for the past two decades (Figure 4.12a). Most recently, the Chilkat River's eulachon ABDN index has remained around 75 or at the medium-high abundance level with an increasing trend estimated. The eulachon ABDN estimations for the Unuk River were limited to the past two decades. The ABDN index dropped below the medium-low abundance level in the most recent years, 2004-2006 (Figure 4.12b). Data for both of these systems are very limited and new data or information should be added to improve and add to these abundance status estimations.

a)




b)

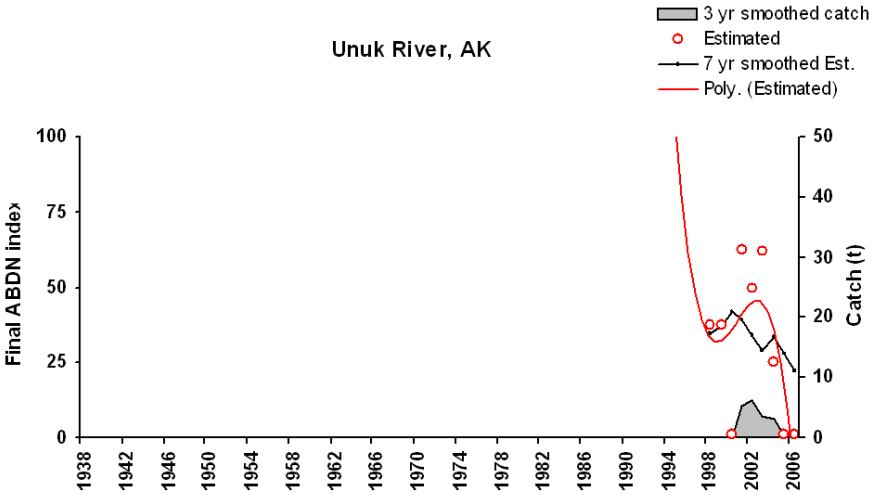


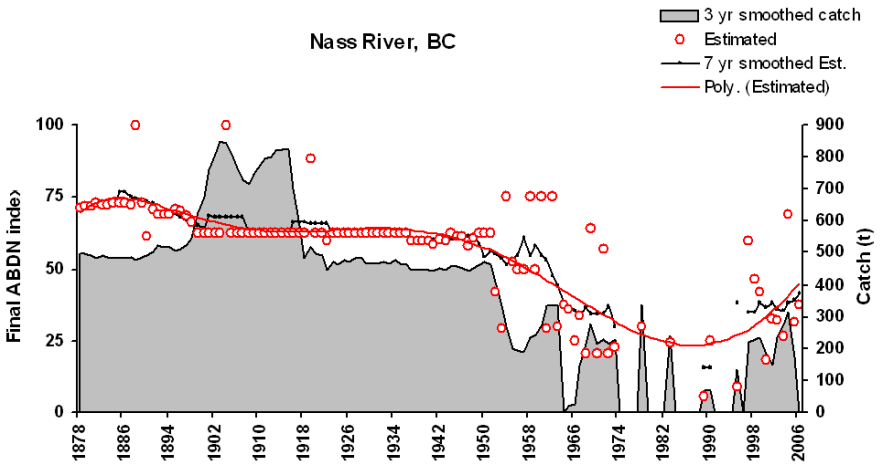

Figure 4.12. (a) Chilkat River, Alaska and (b) Unuk River, Alaska estimated eulachon abundance status (circles), 7 year smoothed abundance status estimations (black line), 3 yr. smoothed catch (grey fill) and a polynomial fitted trend line (red line).

#### 4.3.2.4 Nass River, Northern BC

Two time-series of smoothed catch data were used for the Nass River abundance status estimations. The first estimated abundance time-series (a) was based on the reconstructed smoothed total catch (the commercial catch plus First Nations reconstructed catch calculated in Chapter 2 from 1878-1952). The second time series (b) was based on the total recorded catch from all data sources from 1929-2006 (Appendix 1) excluding estimated catches.

Overall, the second time-series (b) estimated a higher average ABDN index than (a) (Figure 14.3a and b). Time-series (a) had an average ABDN index of 57 whereas time-series (b) had an average ABDN index of 65. The higher abundance status estimations for time-series (b) occurred because the majority of the abundance status estimations were based solely on catch data and time-series (a) had a higher maximum catch (851 t vs. 478 t) than time-series (b); thus lower catch ratios would indicate lower abundance. The addition of other data sources such as, report comment data may confirm or change these results. Time-series (a) predicts a slow decline in ABDN that begins around 1950 and then a slow increase in ABDN during the early 1990s. However, data for this time period was very limited. Time-series (b) predicts a gradual decline in abundance that starts at the beginning the time-series and ends around 1950 when the ABDN index averages approximately 50 or a medium abundance level. Both time-series indicate an increasing ABDN trend in the most recent decade beginning around 1998. Other data sources could add support to these estimations, for example, run status information collected from First Nations elders and fishers and a reconstruction of past catches using grease production (methods from Chapter 3) for the twenty-years between 1974 and 1994 where data are most limited for the Nass River. For the final coast-wide ABDN table, estimations using time-series (a) will be utilized.

a)




b)

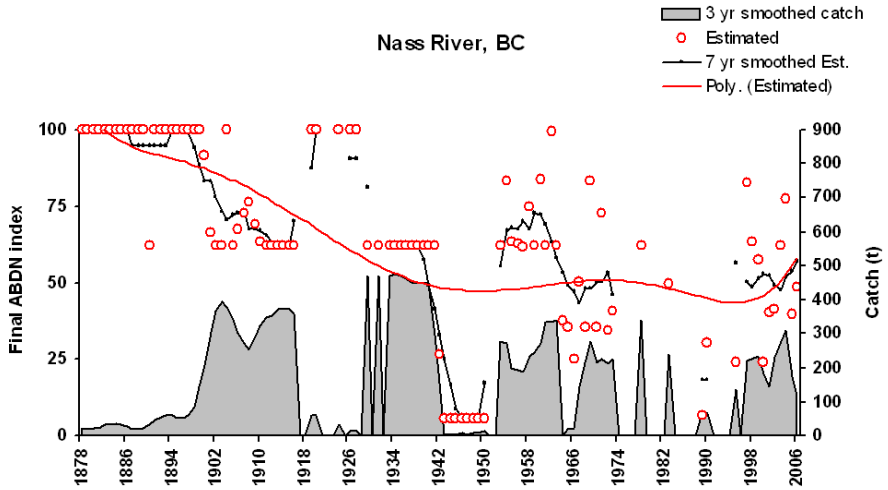



Figure 4.13. Nass River estimated eulachon abundance status (circles), 7 year smoothed abundance status estimations (black line), 3 yr. smoothed catch (grey fill) and a polynomial fitted trend line (red line) using (a) estimated catch time-series and (b) using 'reported' catch.

#### 4.3.2.5 Skeena River, Northern BC

The estimated eulachon ABDN index for the Skeena River has fluctuated between 1, a low abundance level, and 75, a medium-high abundance level, during the past two decades (Figure 14.14). Throughout the time-series, there have also been extreme lows, for example, in the years 2000 and 2006. The ABDN index estimations for this river were based solely on

report and interview/local comment information. Additional run status information or catch data from past DFO records or from interviews with First Nations elders and fishers would help to improve these estimations.

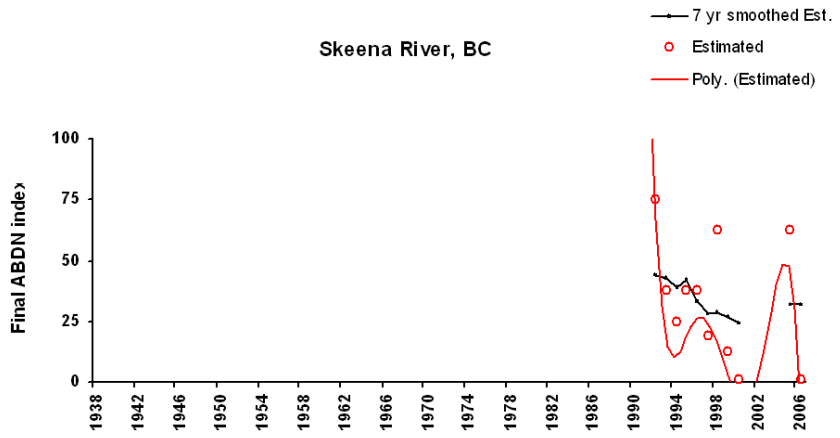


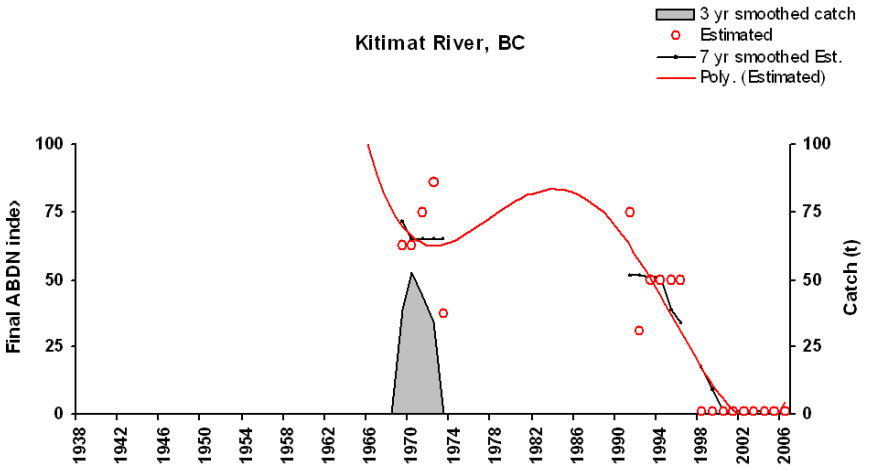

Figure 4.14. Skeena River, BC estimated eulachon abundance status (circles), 7 year smoothed abundance status estimations (black line), 3 yr. smoothed catch (grey fill) and a polynomial fitted trend line (red line).

#### 4.3.2.6 Kitimat River, Douglas Channel and Kemano River, Gardner Canal, BC

The estimated annual eulachon ABDN index for the Kitimat River drastically dropped during the mid 1990s and has remained low since 1998 (Figure 4.15a). This time-series could be improved if additional abundance information was collected from First Nations elders and fishers because information from the 1970s and 1980s is limited.

The estimated annual eulachon ABDN index for the Kemano River remained above a medium abundance level (ABDN index = 50) until the late 1990s (Figure 4.15b). A low to medium-low abundance level period occurred between 1999 and 2001 followed by a short three-year recovery and more recently a low ABDN index estimation of 1 for 2005 and 2006.

a)




b)

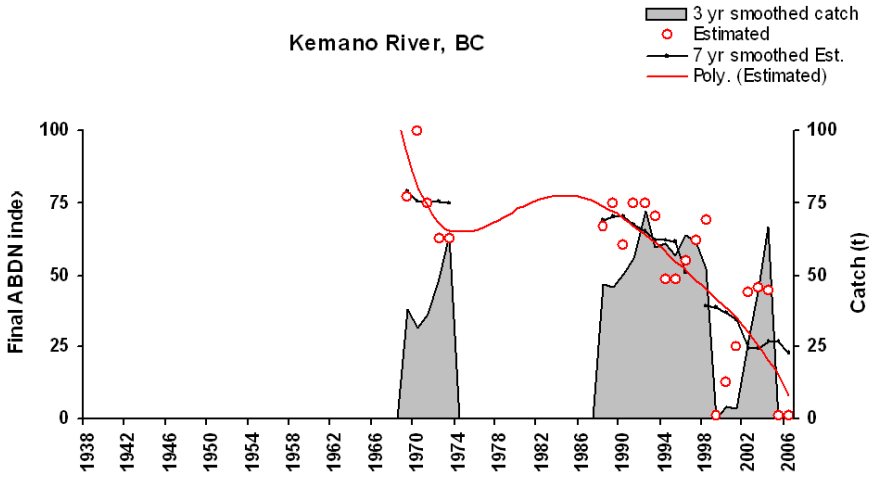


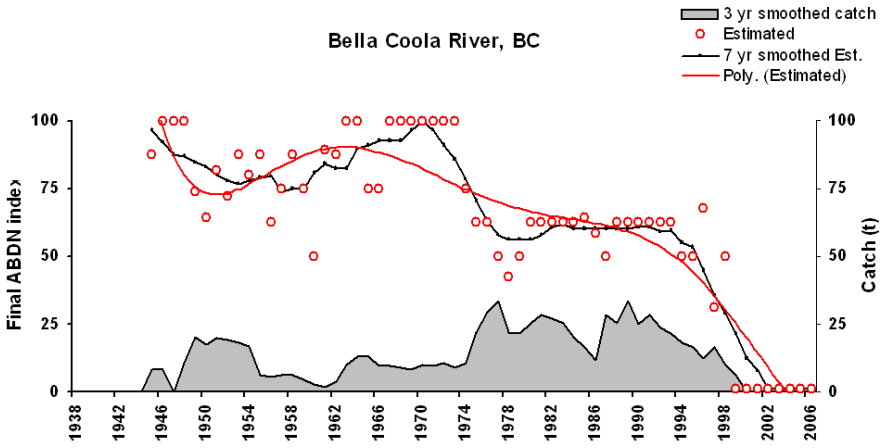

Figure 4.15. Kitimat River, BC (a) and Kemano River (b) estimated eulachon abundance status (circles), 7 year smoothed abundance status estimations (black line), 3 yr. smoothed catch (grey fill) and a polynomial fitted trend line (red line).

### 4.3.2.7 Bella Coola River, North Bentinck Arm and Wannock River, Rivers Inlet Central Coast, BC

The estimated annual eulachon ABDN index for the Bella Coola River has fluctuated over its 61 year time-series but appears to have begun a slow decline during the mid-1970s (Figure 4.16a). The ABDN index remained consistently above 50 or a medium abundance level, until the mid 1990s where it declined sharply below a medium abundance level. Since 1999 the abundance status has remained at a very low level (ABDN index = 1).

The estimated annual eulachon ABDN index for the Wannock River began to decline in the mid 1970s and since 1997, has dropped and remained at a low abundance level (ABDN index = 1) (Figure 4.16b).

a)




b)

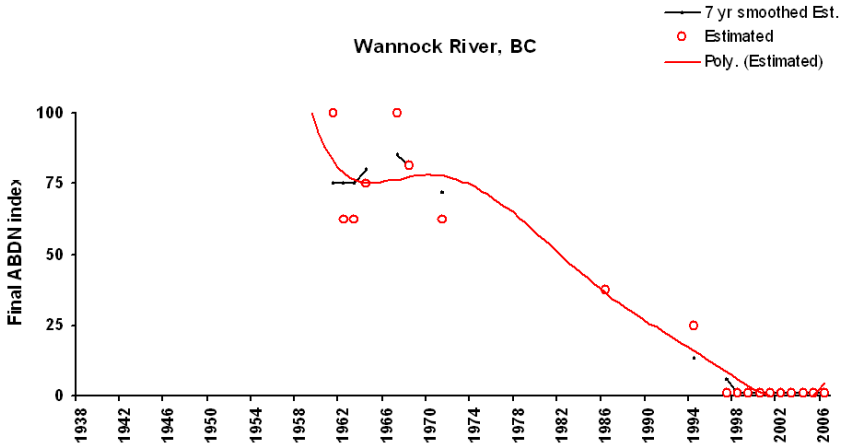



Figure 4.16. Bella Coola River, BC (a) and Wannock River (b) estimated eulachon abundance status (circles), 7 year smoothed abundance status estimations (black line), 3 yr. smoothed catch (grey fill) and a polynomial fitted trend line (red line).

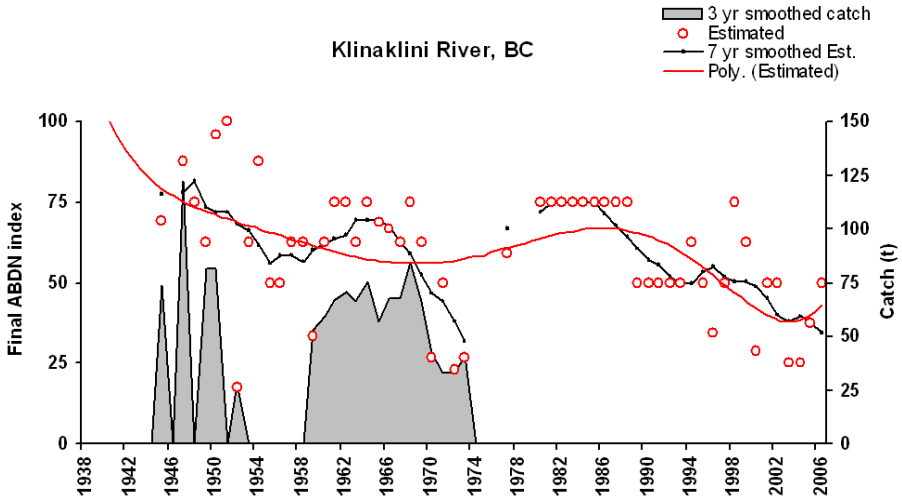
### 4.3.2.8 Klinaklini River, Knight Inlet and Kingcome River, Kingcome Inlet, BC

The estimated annual eulachon ABDN index for the Klinaklini River has fluctuated between a medium-high and medium-low abundance level over its estimated time-series (Figure 4.17a). There appears to be a small decline in abundance level during the early 1970s and a

larger decline, more recently, during the mid 1990s. The abundance level trend appears to be improving and has been estimated at medium abundance (ABDN index = 50) for 2006.

The Kingcome River's estimated annual eulachon ABDN index appears to have had more extreme fluctuations than the Klinaklini River (Figure 4.17b). Over the past 14 years this system has had periods of low abundance levels (ABDN index =1) followed by years of medium abundance levels.

a)




b)

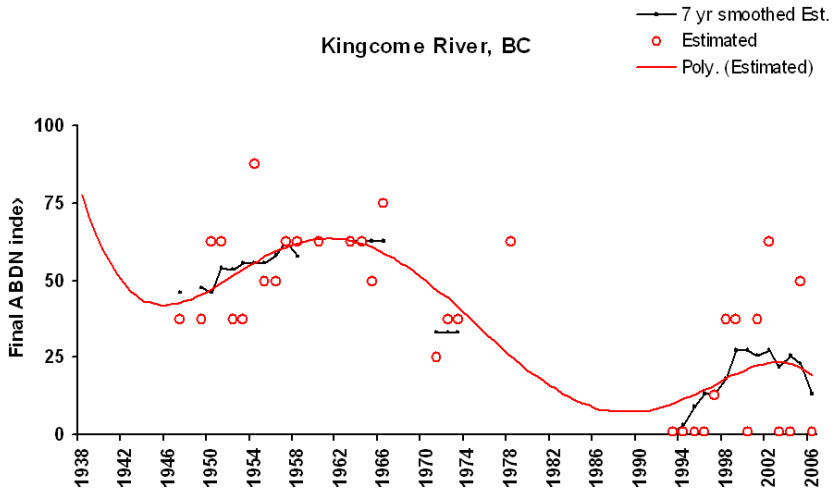



Figure 4.17. Klinaklini River, BC (a) and Kingcome River (b) estimated eulachon abundance status (circles), 7 year smoothed abundance status estimations (black line), 3 yr. smoothed catch (grey fill) and a polynomial fitted trend line (red line).

### 4.3.2.9 Fraser River, Southern BC

Of the 15 eulachon systems the Fraser River has the longest estimated eulachon ABDN index time-series (125 years). The ABDN index began to show a noticeable decline during the mid 1940s followed by a steady decrease in abundance level for the rest of the time-series (Figure 4.18). Over the past 15 years there has been a more significant decline with a small increase estimated in 1996 (ABDN index = 61). Since then the abundance level has remained between low and medium-low (ABDN index between 1 and 37).

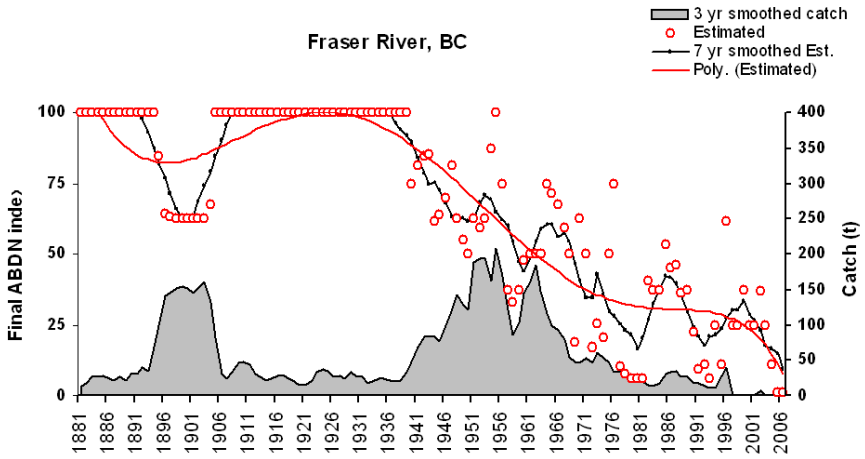



Figure 4.18. Fraser River, BC estimated eulachon abundance status (circles), 7 year smoothed abundance status estimations (black line), 3 yr. smoothed catch (grey fill) and a polynomial fitted trend line (red line).

### 4.3.2.10 Columbia River, Washington/Oregon

The estimated eulachon ABDN index for the Columbia River has remained consistently below a medium-high abundance level (ABDN index = 75) for the entire time-series. The abundance level fluctuated between the medium and medium-high abundance level until the mid 1990s. From 1994 to 1999 ABDN index dropped to a medium-low abundance level (ABDN index = ~13) (Figure 4.19). It improved slightly from 2000-2003 (ABDN index range: 31-49), however, the ABDN index dropped and remained below 12 after 2003.

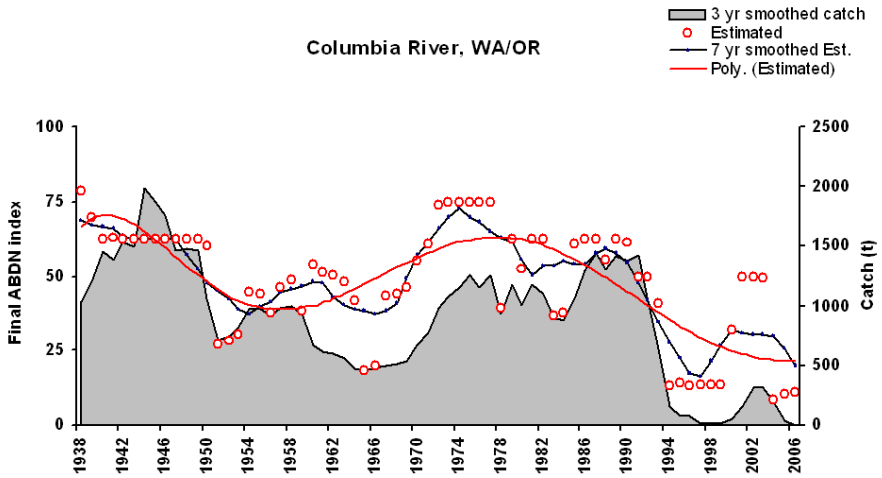



Figure 4.19. Columbia River, BC estimated eulachon abundance status (circles), 7 year smoothed abundance status estimations (black line), 3 yr. smoothed catch (grey fill) and a polynomial fitted trend line (red line).

#### 4.3.2.11 Klamath River, Northern California

The estimated eulachon ABDN index for the Klamath River dropped drastically in the early 1990s and has remained low for the past 15 years (Figure 4.20). The last decade the Klamath ABDN index was above 75 was during the late 1980s. Additional run status information or catch data from past government records or from interviews with First Nations elders and fishers would help to improve the estimations for this river.

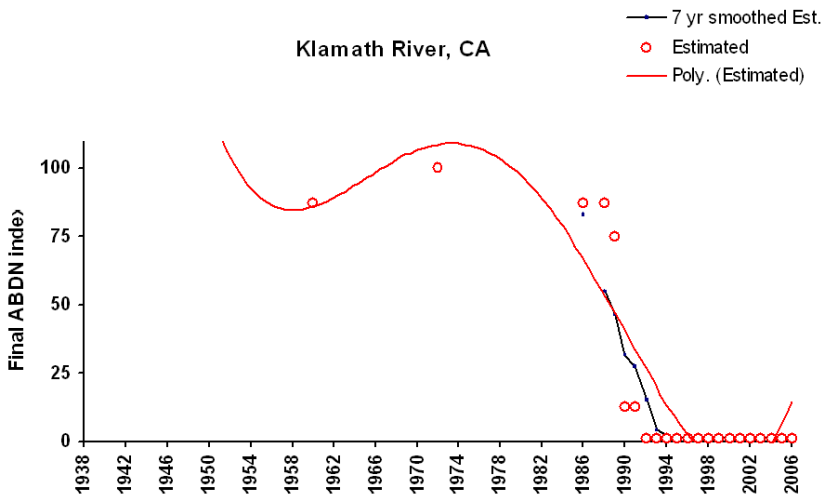
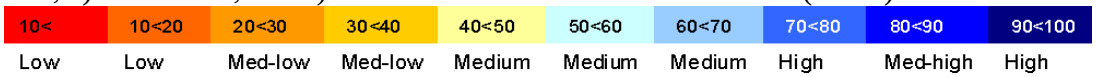


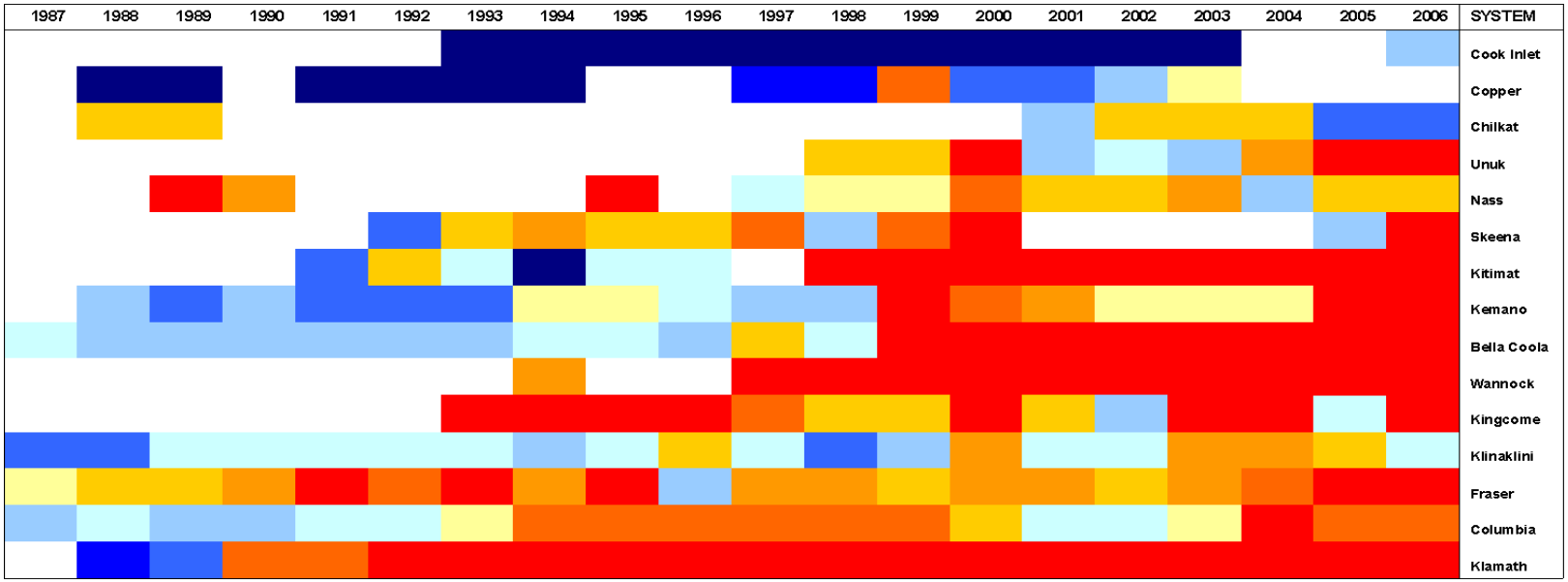

Figure 4.20. Klamath River, CA, estimated eulachon abundance status (circles), 7 year smoothed abundance status estimations (black line), 3 yr. smoothed catch (grey fill) and a polynomial fitted trend line (red line).

Over the last 20 years, a large proportion of the systems have had multiple years of low abundance (Table 4.10a). The most recent coast-wide table has noticeably more red squares (low years of abundance) compared to the earlier coast-wide tables. One important factor to note regarding Table 4.10a is that the rivers located farther north generally have higher abundance indices (blues) than those located farther south. There are a few exceptions, for example the Klinaklini River located in the Central Coast, BC, had higher abundance in 2006 than the Unuk River located in Southeastern Alaska (Table 4.10a).

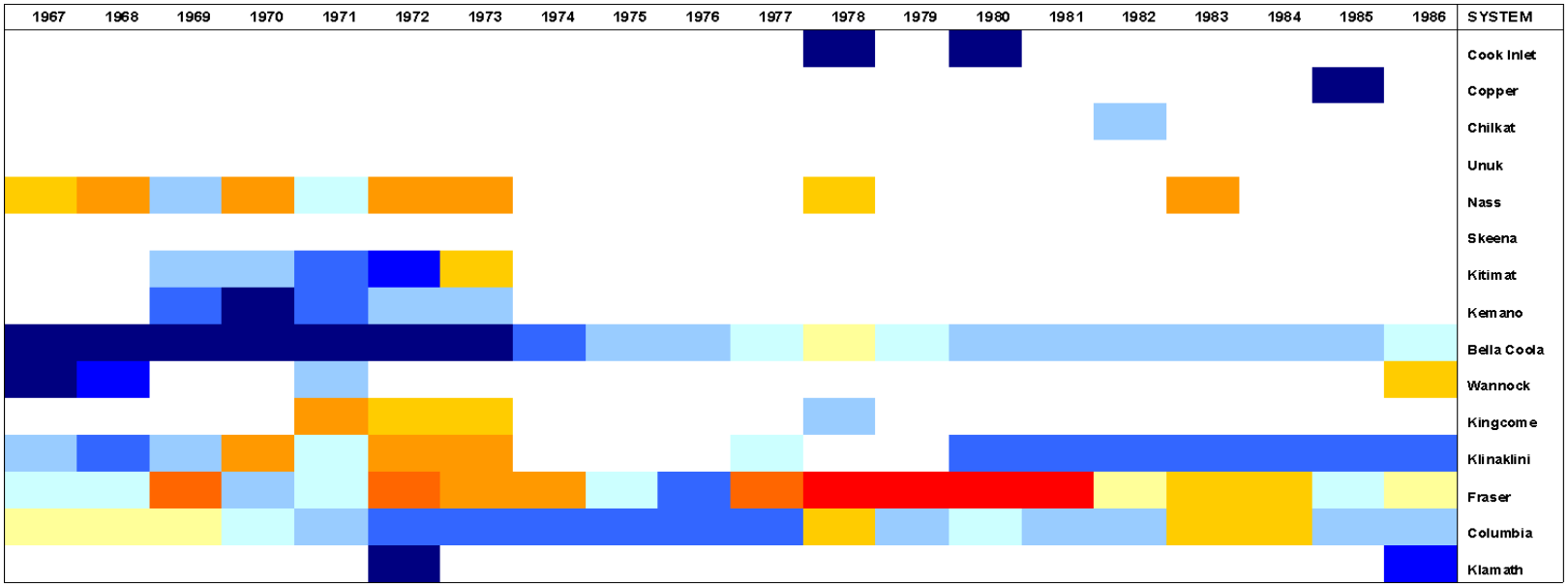
Table 4.10. Fifteen Pacific North Coast eulachon system's abundance status estimations for four separate 20 year time periods a) 1987-2006; b) 1967-1986; c) 1947-1966; and d) 1927-1946. Abundance status indices (1-100) and relative abundance level (low-high)



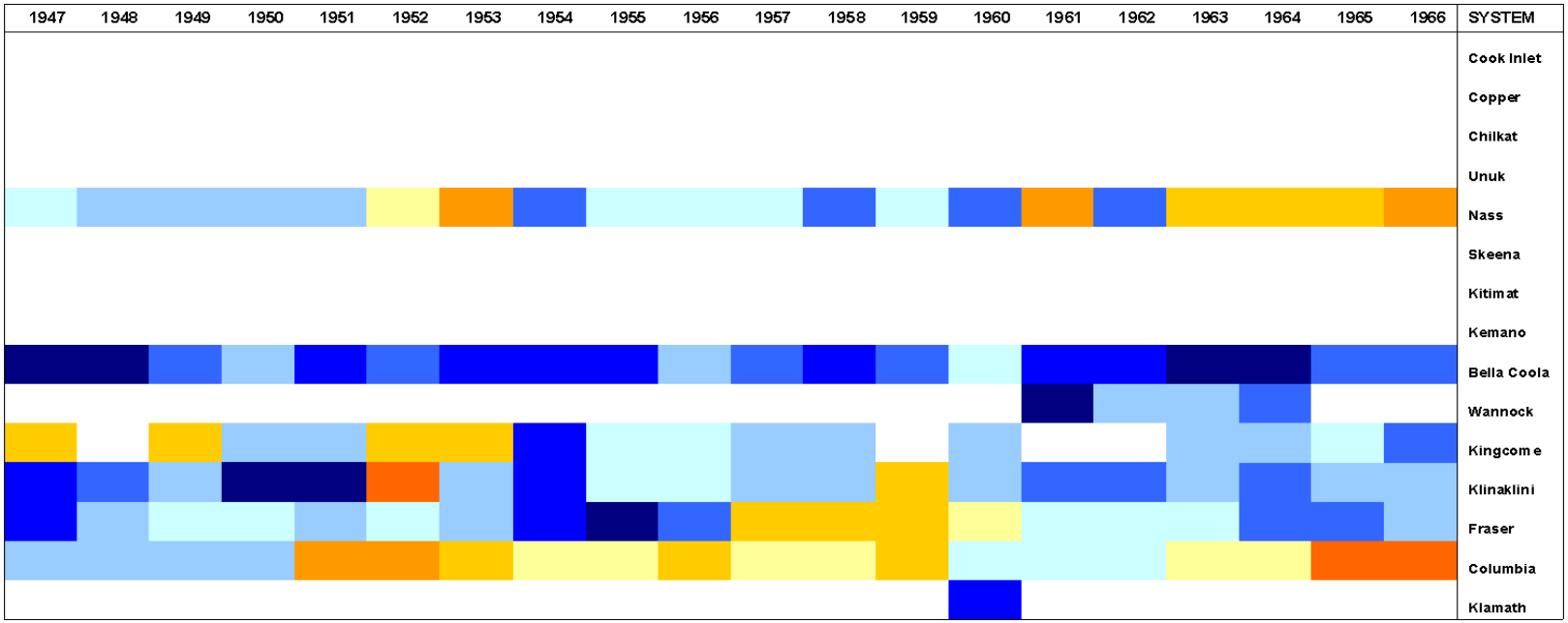

a)



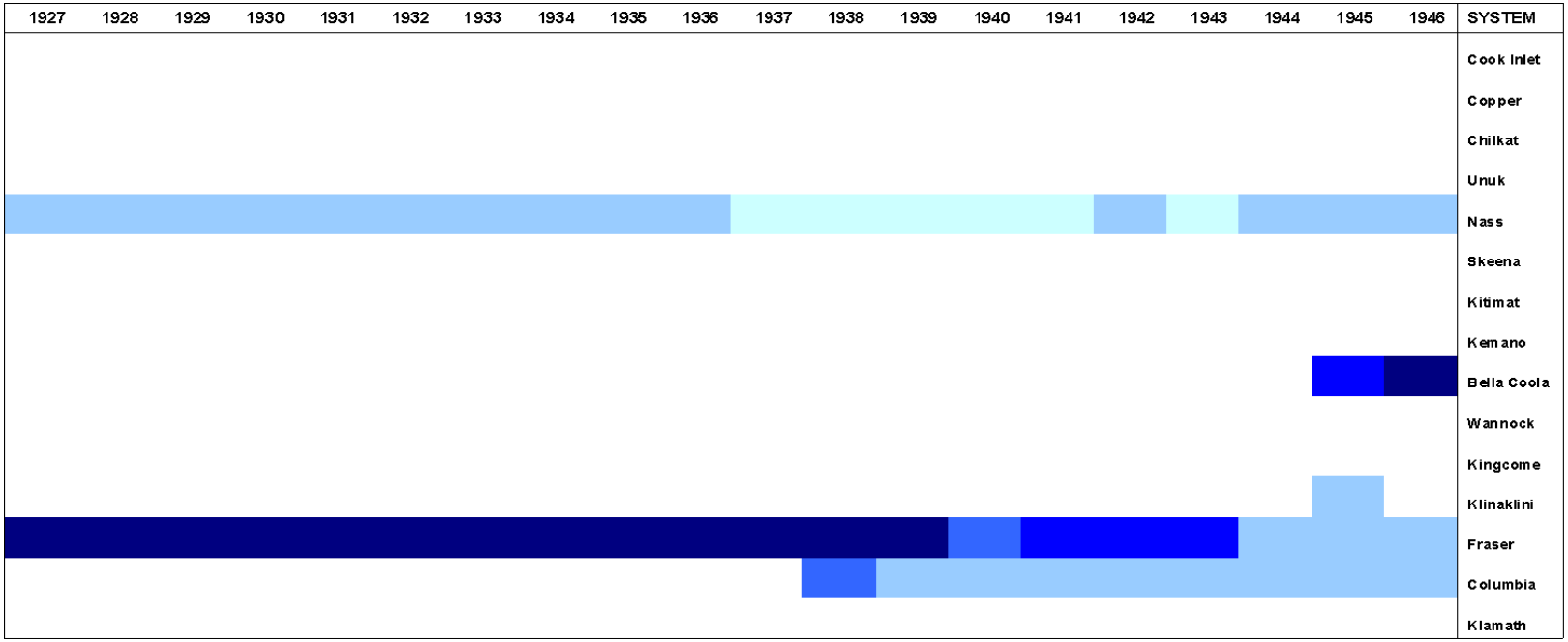

b)



c)


1947 1948 1949 1950 1951 1952 1953 1954 1955 1956 1957 1958 1959 1960 1961 1962 1963 1964 1965 1966
SYSTEM
Cook Inlet
Copper
Chilkat
Unuk
Nass
Skeena
Kitimat
Kemano
Bella Coola
Wannock
Kingcome
Klinaklini
Fraser
Columbia
Klamath

d)


1927 1928 1929 1930 1931 1932 1933 1934 1935 1936 1937 1938 1939 1940 1941 1942 1943 1944 1945 1946
SYSTEM
Cook Inlet
Copper
Chilkat
Unuk
Nass
Skeena
Kitimat
Kemano
Bella Coola
Wannock
Kingcome
Klinaklini
Fraser
Columbia
Klamath

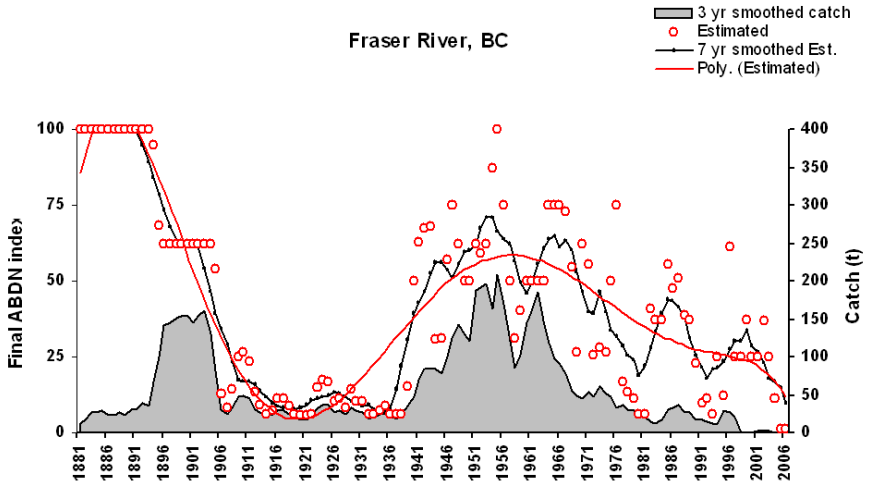
## 4.4 Discussion

The numerous white squares in Table 4.10 (a, b, c and d) dramatically illustrate the lack of data for most eulachon bearing systems across the species' entire North Pacific range. This study summarized existing information to construct a representation of the past and present eulachon abundance of selected rivers. With the exception of some of the more northern rivers, for example, Cook Inlet and the Chilkat, River, Alaska, there has been a noticeable decline in abundance in most eulachon systems over the past 20 years (Table 4.10a). The eulachon systems that have had very low abundance status for an extended time period are those located in the most southern part of the range, for example, the Klamath River, California, the Columbia River, Washington/Oregon and the Fraser River, BC. Smaller northern rivers such as the Wannock River, the Bella Coola River and the Kitimat River, have suffered a more dramatic and long standing period of low abundance.

The benefit in using the fuzzy logic expert system, which was designed to estimate the relative abundance of eulachons in fifteen eulachon systems using a combination of data sources, is that estimations of abundance status can be made for a species that has limited data. The system incorporates all existing data, whether it is qualitative or traditional quantitative data (i.e. catch time-series data) to make its prediction. However, when only catch data is available the results rely heavily on the placement and the size of the maximum catch. This system has tried to minimize this problem by smoothing the catch data with a three year running average. This tends to dampen out extreme values, which may or may not be erroneous, and highlights the movement of the data with time. For example, there has been some speculation as to the accuracy of the Fraser River catch data from the early 1950s as the reported catch may include all commercially caught smelts, even though the catch has been reported as eulachon (pers. comm., Doug Hay 2007). Thus the maximum catch of this time series (337.5 t) in 1952 may misrepresent the true maximum catch. When the data is smoothed the maximum catch equals 208.6 t and occurs in 1955. However, if the smoothed maximum catch is taken from the peak in the early 1900s (161.4 t in 1903) the estimations look much different for the first half of the estimated time-series (Figure 4.22a and b). Time-series (a) estimates a collapse in the early 1900s, whereas time-series (b) estimates a high

abundance status level during the same time period. Even so, the second halves of both time-series are similar, and the depletion trends in the most recent years are basically the same, regardless of the position and value of the maximum catch.

a)




b)

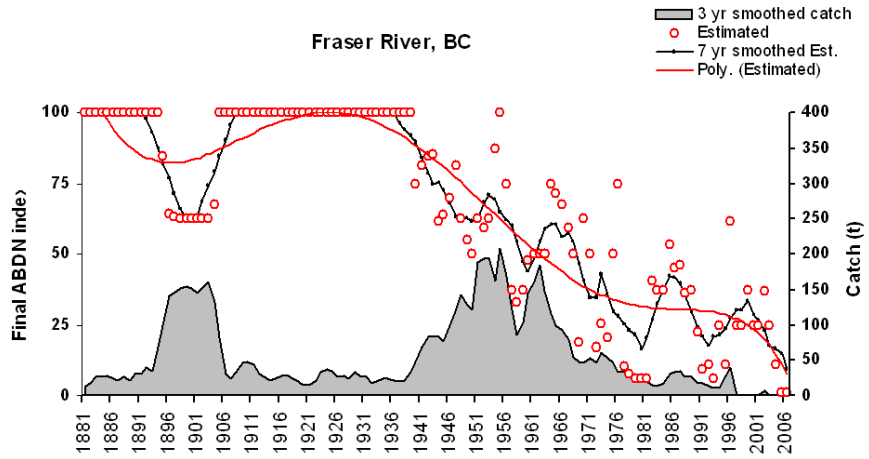



Figure 4.21. Fraser River, BC estimated eulachon abundance status (circles), 7 year smoothed abundance status estimations (black line), 3 yr. smoothed catch (grey fill) and a polynomial fitted trend line (red line) with (a) catch ratios calculated using the maximum catch from catch peak (1903) and (b) from the reported smoothed maximum catch (1955).

The risk of false estimations from over-reliance on catch data can be reduced by incorporating other sources of information. For example, information about why there were

low commercial eulachon catches between the early 1900s and the early 1940s makes the estimations from time-series (b) more plausible. The document that reported these early catches also stated that eulachon markets had deteriorated during this time because knowledge of other species increased, thus the demands of small local markets not the abundance, dictated the size of the catch during this time (Clemens and Wilby 1946).

The use of this expert system is an admission that knowledge of each eulachon system is incomplete and uncertain, yet by applying the system a reasonable abundance status trend can be estimated. There will be deviations in the final results depending on the data available and the applicable rules, however, these appear to be relatively small in most cases (Figure 4.8a, b and c). Needless to say, the rules of the expert system and the weighting of the rules are based on the researcher's expert opinion and could be adjusted after collaboration with other scientists.

## 4.5 Conclusion

In conclusion, it is suggested that the fuzzy expert system approach described here is a useful tool to estimate eulachon relative abundance status. Many of these abundance index estimations could be improved with the gathering of more information within each local region. Ideally each system would have a continuous 80+ year time-series for each of the eight data sources. However, this would never be possible as SSB estimates and CPUE were not measured in the past. Nevertheless additional historic catch records or qualitative information on run size may be buried in archives of government offices or museums and could be looked for.

First Nations have accumulated detailed knowledge regarding past eulachon abundance patterns and run sizes from their own experiences and from those of their elders. Information has been passed down through generations and is critical for a species, like the eulachon, that is lacking 'hard' data. Interviews with First Nations and local experts should be conducted in all areas, using the methods developed in Chapter 3 so that information on past run sizes and grease production can be obtained and applied to the expert system. This expert system was

built with the assumption that more information would, or could be added, to its existing data base so that future estimations could be made and past estimations improved.

To conclude this project, a small number of the eulachon impact hypotheses will be explored to determine the relationship between the estimated abundance indices and the impact hypotheses suggested in Chapter 5.

# References


Alverson, D. L. & Dunlop, K. 1998. Status of world marine fish stocks. University of Washington Fisheries Research Institute, Seattle, Washington.

Berry, M. D. 1996. Knight Inlet- Klinaklini River eulachon-1995. Draft report submitted to the Tanakteuk First Nation, Alert Bay, BC. 17 p.

Berry, M. D. & Jacob, W. 1998. 1997 Eulachon research on the Kingcome and Wannock Rivers. Final report to the Science Council of British Columbia (SCBC #96/97-715). 62 p.

Buchanan, B. G. & Shortliffe, E. H. 1984. *Rule-based expert systems- the MYCIN experiments of the Stanford Heuristic Programming Project*. USA: Addison-Wesley, Menlo Park, California.

Cheung W.W.L., Pitcher, T. J. and Pauly, D. 2007. Using an expert system to evaluate vulnerabilities and conservation risk of marine fishes from fishing. *In*: Lipshitz A. P. (ed.). *New Research on Expert Systems*. Nova Science Publishers, New York.

Cheung, W.L. 2007. Vulnerability of marine fishes to fishing: from global overview to the Northern South China Sea. Ph.D. Thesis, Resource Management and Environmental Studies, The University of British Columbia, Vancouver. 369 p.

Clarke, A., Lewis, A., Telmer, K. & Shrimpton, J. 2007. Life history and age at maturity of an anadromous smelt, the eulachon *Thaleicthys pacificus* (Richardson). *Journal of Fish Biology* **71**: 1-15.

Clemens, W. & Wilby, G. 1946. Fishes of the Pacific Coast of Canada (1st edition). Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin no.68. 368 p.

Cox, E. 1999. *The fuzzy systems handbook: a practitioner's guide to building, using, and maintaining fuzzy systems*. AP Professional, San Diego, California.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans. 1940-1979. Fisheries Inspectors weekly reports and annual narrative reports. Districts of: Chilliwack-Hope, Mission-Harrison, Steveston, Chilliwack-Yale. Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans. 1941-1973. Fisheries Inspectors weekly reports and annual narrative reports (1941-46, 1948, 1950, 1953-60, and 1965-73). Nass and Skeena sub-districts. Prince Rupert, British Columbia, Canada.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans. 1944-1989. Fisheries Inspectors weekly reports and annual narrative reports. Bella Coola District, Bella Coola, British Columbia, Canada.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans. 2006. Pacific region integrated fisheries management plan- eulachon April 1, 2006 to March 31, 2007. Canada. 22 p.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans. 2007. Pacific region integrated fisheries management plan- eulachon April 1, 2007 to March 31, 2008. Canada. 22 p.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans. 2008. Overview of the eulachon fishery. Pelagics & minor finfish- Pacific Region, Canada. Retrieved January 30, 2008, from: http://www.pac.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/ops/fm/herring/eulachon/default_e.htm#.com

EcoMetrix Incorporated (EcoMetrix). 2006. Summary of 2006 eulachon study results and 2007 study design. Report prepared for: EUROCAN PULP and PAPER CO., Kitimat, BC.

Grainger, R. J. R. & Garcia, S. M. 1996. Chronicles of marine fishery landings (1950-1994): trend analysis and fisheries potential. FAO Fisheries technical paper no. 359. FAO, Rome.

Hay, D. E. & McCarter, P. 2000. Status of the eulachon *Thaleichthys pacificus* in Canada. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Canadian Stock Assessment Secretariat, Research Document 2000/145. 92 p.

Hilborn, R. & Mangel, M. 1997. *The ecological detective, confronting models with data*. Princeton University Press, New Jersey.

Lewis, A. 1997. Skeena eulachon study 1997. Report prepared by Triton Environmental Consultants Ltd., Terrace, BC and the Tsimshian Tribal Council, Prince Rupert, British Columbia for Forest Renewal BC.

Lewis, A. F. J., and O'Connor, P. J. 2002. Bella Coola eulachon study 2001. Consultant's report prepared by Ecofish Research Ltd. for Nuxalk Fisheries Commission, Bella Coola, B.C.

Lewis, A.F.J. & Ganshorn, K. 2004. Alcan's Kemano River eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*) monitoring program: Haisla fishery monitoring 2004. Consultant's report prepared for Alcan Primary Metal Ltd., Kitimat, British Columbia.

Mackinson, S. & Nottestad, L. 1998. Points of view: combining local and scientific knowledge. *Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries* **8:** 481-490.

McHugh, J.L. 1941. Eulachon catch statistics. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Progress Reports of Pacific Biological Station and Pacific Fisheries Experimental Station No. 49. Pages 18-19.

Moody, M. F. 2005. Unpublished. Bella Coola eulachon study 2003 final report. Nuxalk Nation Fisheries Department, Bella Coola, British Columbia.

Moody, M. F. 2006. Unpublished. Bella Coola eulachon study 2004 draft report. Nuxalk Nation Fisheries Department, Bella Coola, British Columbia.

Negoita, C. V. 1985. *Expert systems and fuzzy systems*. Benjamin/Cumming's, Menlo Park, California.

Nisga'a Fisheries and Wildlife Department. 2008. Nisga'a fisheries program: final report of 2007 projects. Prepared for Nass Joint Technical Committee, New Aiyansh, BC. Nisga'a fisheries report NF07-01.

Nuxalk Fisheries. 2005-2006. Unpublished. Bella Coola River eulachon assessment data. Nuxalk Nation, Bella Coola, British Columbia.

Orr, U. 1984. Eulachon sampling on the lower Nass River in relation to log handling. Unpublished data report. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. Prince Rupert, British Columbia or Vancouver, British Columbia. 25 p.

Pedersen, R. V. K., Orr, U. N., and Hay, D. E. 1995. Distribution and preliminary stock assessment (1993) of the eulachon, *Thaleichthys pacificus*, in the lower Kitimat River, British Columbia. Canadian Manuscript Report of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences no. 2330. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Prince Rupert, BC, North Coast Division and Habitat and Enhancement Branch, Pacific Biological Station. 23 p.

Pinkerton, E. & Weinstein, M. 1995. Fisheries that work. Sustainability through community-based management. A report to the David Suzuki Foundation, Vancouver, British Columbia. 217 p.

Ricker, W. E., Manzer, D. F., and Neave, E. A. 1954. The Fraser River eulachon fishery, 1941-1953. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, manuscript report no. 583. 35 p.

Stevens, B. 2001. Eulachon research and effluent treatment pilot plant studies 2001. Report prepared for: EUROCAN PULP and PAPER CO., Kitimat, British Columbia.

Therriault, T. & McCarter, P. 2005. Using an eulachon indicator framework to provide advice on Fraser River harvest opportunities for 2006. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Canadian Science Advisory Secretariat Document (2005/077). 15 p.

Walters, C. J. & Martell, S. J. D. 2004. *Fisheries ecology and management*. Princeton University Press, Princeton and Oxford.

Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife & Oregon Department of Fish Wildlife. 2001. Washington and Oregon eulachon management plan. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia. 32 p.

Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife & Oregon Department of Fish Wildlife. 2004. Joint staff report concerning commercial seasons for sturgeon and smelt in 2005.

Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife & Oregon Department of Fish Wildlife. 2005. Joint staff report concerning commercial seasons for sturgeon and smelt in 2006

Winbourne, J. L. & Dow, S. 2002. Unpublished. 2002 Central Coast eulachon project: final report of field surveys. Consultant's report prepared for the Nuxalk Fisheries Department. Bella Coola, British Columbia.

Zadeh, L. 1965. Fuzzy sets. *Information and Control* **8**: 338-353.

**Personal communication**

Hay, D. E. 2008. Retired Research Scientist at the Department of Fisheries and Oceans Pacific Biological Station. Nanaimo, BC.

# 5 Assessing the impacts on eulachon populations[18]

## 5.1 Introduction

Nearly all eulachon populations, from California to southeastern Alaska, have shown recent, sharp declines in the spawning runs, especially since the mid 1990s (Hay and McCarter 2000) but the reasons remain uncertain. In February 2007, the Department of Fisheries and Oceans (DFO) held a workshop in Richmond, British Columbia (BC), to determine research priorities for eulachon using an impact hypothesis approach (hereafter referred to as the 2007 Workshop). The goal was to identify "key uncertainties affecting science advice for eulachon management" (Pickard and Marmorek 2007). This chapter will summarize the available evidence, for and against, the main hypotheses (Table 5.1) suggested during this workshop.

There have been numerous reductions in eulachon spawning habitat and larval rearing areas (estuarine environments) caused by forest related operations, in-river dredging operations, industrial pollution (Hay and McCarter 2000), shoreline development and river flow management practices (Eulachon Research Council 1998). Changes in the global climate have also affected, firstly, the freshwater environment due to the erosion of glaciers, thus altering the timing and the size of spring freshets (Barry 2006), and secondly the marine environment, reducing the availability of food, increasing the northward migration of warm water predators such as adult hake (*Merluccius productus*), or increasing the number of eulachon competitors such as juvenile hake (Hay and McCarter 2000). There have also been impacts from the capture of eulachon, whether it is eulachon caught in off-shore in shrimp trawl fisheries (Hay *et al.* 1999) or eulachon caught in targeted in-river fisheries (Chapter 2). Finally, increases in the bird and mammal populations may have contributed to increased predation of eulachon within estuaries (Hay *et al.* 1997). It remains unknown if the drastic decline of some eulachon populations was a result of a single event or a combination of events. It would be beyond the scope of this thesis to do a complex analysis on all possible causes for the decline of the eulachon and further complicating this task is the limited amount

[18] A version of this chapter will be submitted for publication. Moody, M.F. and Pitcher T.J. Assessing the impacts on eulachon populations.

of data available to test any one hypothesis. Whatever the cause(s) may be, the largest obstacle(s) preventing the recovery of some populations need(s) to be identified, "you know we've got all these things that we think might [have happened]. To me, find out so that you can do something about it, get them back somehow" (015 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). Hence, this chapter examines the effects of changes in shrimp catch, hake biomass, hake catch, ocean conditions and seal (*Phoca vitulina*) and sealion (*Eumetopias jubatus*) abundance on the changing abundance of seven eulachon populations estimated in Chapter 4.

Table 5.1 Impact hypotheses developed at the "2007 workshop to determine research priorities for eulachon." Those investigated are marked (*)

| Hypothesis # | Description of hypothesis |
|---|---|
| H1 | Land and water management impacts led to the recent coast-wide decline in eulachon |
| H2 | Pollution (industrial effluents, sewage and agricultural runoff) has reduced spawning success on some rivers. |
| H3 | Pollution (industrial effluents, sewage and agricultural runoff) has reduced egg and larvae survival on some rivers. |
| H4 | Dredging activity results in spawner and egg entrainment as well as the smothering of eggs. |
| H5 | Dredging activity negatively impacts eulachon freshwater habitat. |
| H6 | Changes in the volume and discharge patterns of rivers draining forested areas change the availability of suitable spawning sediments and reduce the success of eulachon spawning and the survival of eggs. |
| H7 | Debris from log handling and booming in rivers has direct deleterious impacts on egg survival. |
| H8 | Log booms in marine and estuarine areas affect the survival of eulachon larvae and juveniles. |
| H9 | Shoreline construction (e.g., roads, dykes) reduces the amount and quality of eulachon spawning habitat resulting in decrease in spawning success and egg / larvae survival. |
| H10 | Diversions/dams affect water volume, temperature and sediment levels reducing the quality and quantity of eulachon spawning habitat. |
| H11 | Climate-driven changes in freshwater hydrology (glacier / snow melt) are causing the decline in eulachon. |
| H12 | Climate-driven changes in the estuary (ocean currents / run timing) have caused a reduction in larvae growth and survival. |
| **H13*** | Climate-driven changes in ocean conditions (Increase in sea surface temperatures (SST), freshwater runoff, salinity, pH and sea levels) directly impact juvenile / adult eulachon survival. |
| H14 | Climate-driven changes in near-shore ocean / continental shelf conditions (increase in sea surface temperatures, freshwater runoff, salinity and sea levels) have reduced the availability of food, reducing the survival of eulachon. |
| **H15*** | Increase in predation of eulachon by warm water species such as hake as their distributions move northward has reduced the survival of juvenile (1+) eulachon. |
| **H16*** | Increase in competition from warm water species such as hake as their distribution moves northward has reduced the survival of juvenile and adult eulachon. |
| H17 | Eulachon are caught as bycatch in the offshore shrimp trawl fishery. |
| H18 | Bycatch reduction devices used in the shrimp trawl fishery are effective at reducing the amount of eulachon caught. |
| **H19*** | Shrimp trawler harvest has made a significant contribution to the recent decline in eulachon. |
| H20 | Shrimp trawler harvest is a significant factor preventing the recovery of eulachon. |
| H21 | First Nations harvest has made a significant contribution to the recent decline in eulachon |
| H22 | First Nations harvest is a significant factor preventing the recovery of eulachon. |
| H23 | Commercial fishing has made a significant contribution to the recent decline in eulachon. |
| H24 | Commercial fishing may be a significant factor slowing the recovery of eulachon. |
| **H25*** | Mammal / bird / fish predation of spawners has been a significant factor contributing to the recent decline in eulachon. |
| H26 | The decline in eulachon is harming dependent populations of mammals, birds and fish. |

Source: Pickard and Marmorek 2007

### 5.1.1 The Nuxalk perspective

The widespread belief of the Nuxalk respondents (86%) during my 2006 Nuxalk interviews was that the shrimp trawl fishery was by far the most likely reason for the collapse of the British Columbia (BC) Central Coast eulachon (Table 5.2). It has been well publicized in the Central Coast region that eulachon are captured as by-catch in the shrimp trawl fishery, for example, the Coast Mountain News article on March 16, 2000 was titled, "Shrimp fishery on Central Coast threatens oolichan run" (Kuhn 2000). Some of the participants have also had personal experiences involving eulachon by-catch.

> In Namu, the first years we worked out there [1970s], trawlers came in…shrimp trawlers. My dad, I was wondering, why he always went out back…he'd go pick out the eulachons that were dumped on the floor. The trawler would dump the shrimp into the big holding tanks…we had to grade [the shrimp]. The eulachons would get thrown on the floor with everything else that wasn't needed. My dad would pick up the eulachons and then he'd take them home and cook them. Tubs and tubs of eulachon they'd dump off the edge (044 Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

In addition, one Nuxalk commercial salmon fisherman recalled a conversation he had with a shrimp trawler deckhand a few years ago. The deckhand claimed that he was told by his boss to "keep quiet about the catches of eulachon they were getting" alluding to the fact that there were lots of eulachon being caught as by-catch (010 Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

Additional explanations for the decline given by the participants included: over fishing of the female eulachon; seine fishing in eulachon spawning grounds; too efficient of fishing methods (seine nets); booming of logs in the estuary; increased silt in the river from logging practices; global warming causing increases in predators (seals, porpoises (*Phocoena vomerina)*, hake and chub mackerel (*Scomber japonicus*); and increases in river temperatures (Table 5.2).

Table 5.2 Possible causes for the decline of the Bella Coola eulachon given by Nuxalk community participants during the 2006 Nuxalk interviews

| **Possible causes** | **% of participants** | **Number of responses*** |
|---|---|---|
| No answer given | 14% | (4/29) |
| Some cause stated | 86% | (25/29) |
| Shrimp trawl by-catch | 83% | (24/29) |
| Fishing related (fishing females; in spawning areas; using seine nets) | 17% | (5/29) |
| Anthropogenic changes to river/estuary (dams; dykes; log booms; inc. silt from logging operations) | 14% | (4/29) |
| Climate change- inc. predators | 10% | (3/29) |
| Climate change- inc. river temp | 7% | (2/29) |

*More than one cause given per person

## 5.2 Methods

The first part of this study will summarize and provide background information on each hypothesis described in Table 5.1. The second part will examine some of the impact hypotheses using data from seven of the fifteen eulachon systems (i.e., the Nass River, BC; the Kemano River, BC; the Bella Coola River, BC; the Klinaklini River, BC; the Fraser River, BC; the Columbia River, Washington/Oregon, USA) whose annual abundance statuses were estimated in Chapter 4. These rivers were chosen because they had the longest time-series of abundance estimations over the eulachon geographic range. Each eulachon abundance data set was compared with (1) offshore BC shrimp trawl catch data (DFO 1972-2006); (2) hake (age 3+) biomass data (1966-2006) (Helser *et al.* 2006); (3) hake catch data (1966-2005) (Helser *et al.* 2006); (4) climate data including: the Southern Oscillation Index (SOI) (DFO 1951-2006), the Northern Oscillation Index (NOI) (1948-2006) (Schwing *et al.* 2000), the Upwelling Index (UI) (National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) 1946-2006), and Sea Surface Temperature (SST) data from the lighthouse at Amphitrite Point, near Barkley Sound, on the West Coast of Vancouver Island (DFO 1940-

2006); and finally (6) northern harbour seal (*Phoca vitulina*) and Steller sea lion (*Eumetopias jubatus)* data prepared by Ainsworth (2006). For each data set, Spearman's rank correlation coefficient and the coefficient of determination ($r^2$ value) were calculated[19]. Each of the eulachon abundance time-series were also time lagged by two and three years and also compared with the six data sets. The final results from the correlation analyses can be found in Appendix 9.

## 5.3 Results and discussion

### 5.3.1 Land and water management

At the 2007 Workshop, the first hypothesis (H1), "land and water management impacts led to the recent coast wide decline in eulachon" included nine sub-hypotheses (H2-H10) which discussed forestry operations, industrial pollution, dredging operations, shoreline developments and water flow operations (dykes/dams) (Pickard and Marmorek 2007). All of these activities occur in the freshwater environment and thus they may be (1) contributing to the in-river mortality of returning eulachon adults and their deposited eggs and hatched larvae; (2) limit or cause damage to eulachon spawning habitat; and (3) provide barriers to eulachon spawning migration.

#### 5.3.1.1 Forestry operations

The forestry operations that may impact eulachon populations include the removal of trees and log handling processes, such as log transfer, log sorting and log storage. The removal of trees from a watershed can have many effects on a river system, for example, it may increase fine sediment (Beschta 1978), increase sediment production (Hartman *et al*. 1996), change the composition of spawning gravel (Scrivener and Brownlee 1989) and increase the temperature of the river (Holtby 1988). Log handling operations may also impact the rivers by damaging shoreline and underwater substrate during construction or operation or by

[19] A free on-line statistics software (calculator) was used (Wessa 2008) to calculate the rank correlation coefficient, corrected for the ties in the ranked data, and also gave the 2-sided t-value for 95% confidence.

depositing wood waste that may smother habitat and its inhabitants (G3 Consulting Ltd. 2003).

The primary spawning habitat of eulachon occurs over small pebbles in moderate water velocities where the eggs can attach to pea-sized gravel (Smith and Saalfeld 1955). Increased flows may diminish the preferred spawning substrate as well as increase the chance of eggs being flushed into the marine environment prior to hatching. Eulachon eggs appear to tolerate low- to mid-range salinities during incubation but higher salinities (>16 ppt) can cause mortality (Lewis *et al*. 2002). Increased egg mortality has also been found in areas with higher silt and organic accumulations (Langer *et al.* 1977). Increased water flow may also hamper the migration of returning adults as eulachon are weak swimmers and thus they commonly enter rivers during high tides.

> It is likely that eulachon performance would be even poorer than that of herring, as the herring's body is deeper and presumably more muscular. This may be why the Nass River eulachon migration is timed so as to coincide with minimum river discharge and maximum flood tides (Langer *et al.* 1977).

Several local eulachon experts have reported increased flooding in logged eulachon river systems. Historically the flooding period of the Klinaklini River, Knight Inlet, used to take approximately a week to reach the flooding stage but in the past 15 years the flood stage is reached in as little as three hours (Ryan 2002). Flooding has also been observed in the Kingcome River, "it has become a problem, [the river] rises very quickly, within three to six hours, [and] lots of silt [is produced]" (Nicholson 2002). The logging activities in the Skeena watershed are also suspected to have increased flooding in its watershed, however, the larger size of the Skeena River may mask direct flooding effects (Ryan 2002).

Log handling operations are activities where logs are transferred from land to the water, transported to sorting and booming grounds, towed in booms or barges to storage areas and eventually transported to processing facilities (G3 Consulting Ltd. 2003). Two studies have examined the effects log handling activities on the eulachon (Langer *et al.* 1977; Orr 1984). A study from 1969-1971 specifically focused on log driving operations and identified three possible impacts: the blasting of obstructions, silt and organic inputs and log accumulations (Langer *et al.* 1977). The results were immediately used to assess and minimize the impacts of the log drive on the eulachon population. Fisheries officers were instructed to minimize

these impacts by using stricter restrictions to delay the timing of blasting, enforcing the mandatory removal of limbs from logs, and removing log jams. Log driving also occurred on the Columbia River until the practice was eliminated in 1914; however, other logging practices such as the reduction of riparian buffers continue to negatively affect fish species in this river (Lower Columbia Fish Recovery Board (LCFRB) 2004). Log booms may also have a harmful affect if they are located in-river or in the estuary, as accumulated debris may produce anoxic water reducing eulachon egg and larvae survival (Hay and McCarter 2000).

Although there are several harmful effects caused by forestry operations, few feel that these effects are solely responsible for the extreme decline of some eulachon populations.

> I couldn't understand…if it had to be the logging, you know? People have been logging in the valley for a hundred years and we still had a good run until they started shrimp fishing. I can't really believe it was logging on account we've had a good run when they were clear cutting up here (Harvey Mack Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

At the Eulachon Research Council (ERC) meeting held in Terrace BC in 2000, the British Columbia Forest Services stated that given the current knowledge on eulachon, they felt that ocean conditions were probably the main cause of the eulachon decline and past forest practices were probably not a significant contributor to the decline (ERC 2000). The impacts of forestry operations on eulachon survival are difficult to separate from other land use activities. Each eulachon system has a different type of forestry operation that occurs in its watershed, the timing and the duration of these operations also vary between watersheds. This makes it difficult to compare the impacts of forestry operations between eulachon systems. As a result the impacts from forestry operations have not been thoroughly investigated (Hay *et al.* 1997). The conclusions from the 2007 Workshop highlighted two impacts from logging operations that may potentially have an important effect on eulachon but of an uncertain magnitude: (1) the changes of volume and discharge patterns in smaller rivers that decrease the availability of suitable spawning sediments; and (2) the debris from log handling operations that impact eulachon egg and larval survival. These two conclusions need further investigation to demonstrate the magnitude of impact they may have on eulachon survival.

#### 5.3.1.2 Pollution

The overall hypothesis, "the pollution of spawning rivers contributed to a decline in eulachon" in rivers affected, or "contributed to a decline in the resilience of eulachon", included sub-hypotheses H2 and H3 at the 2007 Workshop (Pickard and Marmorek 2007). It is probable that in-river pollution reduces the spawning success of returning adults and the survival of eggs and larvae (Rogers *et al.* 1990). Pollutants enter a river from either point sources, such as sewage treatment plants and direct industrial discharges, or from, non-point sources, for example runoff from urban and agricultural areas (Dorcey 1976).

The effects of such pollution on eulachon have been studied on the Fraser River (Rogers *et al*. 1990) and the Kitimat River (Mikkelson *et al.* 1996) although other eulachon systems have also been impacted e.g. the Columbia River, Washington/Oreegon (Smith and Saafeld 1955; the LCFRB 2004). During the spring of 1986 and 1988 Fraser River eulachon were captured between the river mouth and 31 km upstream and studied for selected contaminants (Rogers *et al*. 1990). The fish were analyzed for several contaminants: chlorophenols (source: wood preservation operations), chloroguaiacols (source: pulp bleaching), DDT-related compounds (synthetic pesticide) and polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs). Chlorophenols and chloroguaiacols contaminants were found in water and tissue samples and whole fish; and some fish gonads were found to contain DDT-related compounds and PCBs. Most of the whole body, liver and gonad tests contained chlorophenols, chloroguaiacols and DDT-related compounds, all of which increased in concentration with the distance of capture from the mouth of the river. This study demonstrated that eulachon could potentially be used as an integrator of trace contaminants in the Fraser River as they do not feed in fresh water thus any contaminants must come directly from the environment. The authors also suggested that these pollutants may impact eulachon spawning success if eulachon egg fertility was affected in the same fashion as Baltic flounder (*Platichthys flesus*) and herring (*Clupea harengus*) (fertility decreased when PCBs >120ng $g^{-1}$).

Pollution impacts on eulachon have been extensively studied on the Kitimat River. The river once supported a large eulachon fishery conducted by the Haisla First Nation. In 1969, Eurocan Pulp and Paper Company (Eurocan) completed construction of a pulp and paper mill located on the Kitimat River. One of the Haisla's reserves is located along the shoreline

approximately 1.5 km downstream of the mill's discharge (BEAK 1991). The mill discharges its final effluent into the Kitimat River approximately 3.2 km upstream of the Kitimat estuary (BEAK 1991). In 1972, the Haisla eulachon catch was significantly lower than the previous season (~23 t compared to ~82 t in 1971) as there were complaints about the fish being "tainted" (DFO 1969-1973). Eulachon are believed to be more susceptible to tainting than other fish because off their high fat content and because they commonly return to spawn during low river flow periods when river effluent concentrations are highest (BEAK 1994). Since 1972 there has been no eulachon caught for food consumption from the Kitimat River (Tirrul-Jones 1985). Eurocan's effluent was first studied for "tainting" on exposed sockeye salmon in 1972 (Geiger) and then on exposed eulachon in 1973 by Fisheries and Marine Service and in 1975 by the Environmental Protection Service. All studies concluded that the Eurocan effluent was capable of causing off-flavours in the fish tested, which increased with effluent concentration (Derksen 1981). However, it wasn't until 1991, that Eurocan, under the direction of Waste Management Branch of the British Columbia Ministry of Environment, evaluated the potential of the effluent to affect the flavour of exposed eulachons (BEAK 1991). The 1991 testing results demonstrated that fish exposed to 10% effluent after 27 hours were "tainted" and those exposed to 5% effluent were "marginally tainted". Similar studies continued from 1992 to 1995 on both eulachon and eulachon grease. These studies demonstrated that eulachon and the grease were equally affected (BEAK 1996).

After the 1992 study, Eurocan installed a turpentine recovery system and made improvements in pulp washing in an attempt to reduce the tainting effects (BEAK 1994). However, during the 1996 study, tainting was still found to occur and similar taint detection thresholds were obtained for eulachon and rainbow trout (BEAK 1996). No studies were conducted in 1997, but they were continued in 1998. In 1999, there were very few spawning eulachon that returned to the Kitimat River and fish had to be obtained from the nearby Skeena River for testing. They were found to still be tainted but only during March and not during April (BEAK 2000). By 2001, significant changes had been made by Eurocan to stop the tainting of eulachon and the effluent quality parameters were found to be significantly better than those measured in 2000 (Stevens 2001). In 2004, the Haisla and Eurocan entered into a long-term agreement to develop a sensory evaluation test method over four years. This method would be used in future studies to determine if the final effluent impaired the

Haisla's use of the Kitimat eulachon. The 2005 study suggested that the eulachon were still being tainted but conflicting results were found in 2006 (EcoMetrix 2006). Nass River eulachon were obtained for the 2006 study as both the Kemano and Kitimat River eulachon runs were poor. The eight eulachon that were captured from the Kitimat River in 2006 were tested for tainting and were found to not be tainted, whereas the caged fish captured from the Nass River and exposed downstream of Eurocan's discharge were found to be tainted in 2006 (EcoMetrix 2006). A reason suggested for the contradicting results was exposure time to the effluent. The fish from the Nass River were exposed for a measured 48 hours whereas the exposure time of the Kitimat River eulachon was unknown. On a positive note, the final effluent in 2006 was the lowest measured during an eulachon tainting study. Nevertheless, there is also the issue of, effects to human health, resulting from anything that can be tasted as a taint.

Although there are major concerns over the uptake of contaminants by eulachon, their exposure to pollution preceded the recent major decline of the three known polluted eulachon systems: the Kitimat River, the Fraser River and the Columbia River. In contrast, rivers with minimal pollution have also suffered major declines, for example, the Kemano River, Bella Coola River and the Wannock River. Thus pollution may be an important contributing factor, but probably is not the sole reason for these declines. The only study that tested the effect of pollutants on egg survival and hatching was conducted in 1994 using Eurocan effluent and Kitimat River eulachon eggs (BEAK 1994). The results indicated that there appeared to be no detrimental effect, however, there were logistical difficulties that may have affected the final results. For instance, a poor return of adults occurred in 1994 thus there was a shortage of females with eggs at the same stage of development. To fully understand the impacts of pollution to eulachon survival, further investigations on egg survival and hatching are suggested.

#### 5.3.1.3 Dredging

Hypothesis 4 and 5 at the 2007 Workshop, suggested that dredging activities might negatively impact the eulachon by entraining adult spawners and deposited eggs; smothering downstream eggs with suspended sediments produced; and altering eulachon spawning

habitat (Pickard and Marmorek 2007). It has also been suggested that dredging activity in the vicinity of eulachon spawning areas can make the substrate unstable for egg incubation (LCFRB 2004).

The function of dredging is to remove quantities of sediment from an aqueous environment and dispose of them at a different location (Lasalle 1990). The main purposes of dredging are usually to increase or maintain the depth of water in a navigation channel, for flood and erosion control or to harvest sand for sale. Dredging in estuaries can have many environmental effects. Some of these include impaired light penetration from increased turbidity; altered tidal exchange, mixing and circulation; increased saltwater intrusion and creating an environment that is highly susceptible to low dissolved oxygen levels (Johnston 1981).

Annual dredging occurs in some eulachon rivers, but most commonly in rivers with higher human populations, such as the Fraser River (Naito 1998) and the Columbia River (LCFRB 2004). Shipping and port activity continues to increase on the Fraser River and channel deepening has occurred between 2001 and 2005 to accommodate larger ships (Fraser River Estuary Management Program 2006). More than half of the sand dredged from the Fraser River is removed, and thus is not deposited in the intertidal region. The major consequence is that the river bed level is lowered and the tidal range is increased (McLaren and Ren 1995). This may effect the survival of incubating eulachon eggs if the salinity of the river is increased; salinities (>16 ppt) cause egg mortality (Lewis *et al*. 2002). The annual maintenance dredging for the Columbia River's estuary has averaged 3.5 million cubic yards per year since 1976 and has concentrated the flow into one deep main navigation channel reducing the flow to side channels and peripheral bays (LCFRB 2004).

The entrainment of adult eulachon spawners by dredges was documented in 1976 on the Fraser River (Tutty and Morrison 1976) and at the mouth of the Columbia River between 1985 and 1988 (Larson and Moehl 1990). In the Fraser River, an estimated 17,417 spawning eulachon, or approximately 0.9 t, were captured between the months of March and June (Tutty and Morrison 1976). Eulachon entrained by hopper dredges in the Columbia River (mean entrainment: 0.002 individuals per cubic yard) was found to be minimal. However, it was cautioned that in river channels where the river may be more constricted, there would be

a greater chance of eulachon entrainment, especially during peak migration (Larson and Moehl 1990).

Entrainment of out migrating salmon and returning eulachon has been recognized on the Fraser River and as a result the timing of dredging operations has been prohibited during the months of March and June (Naito 1998). Consequently on the Fraser River, the entrainment of eulachon eggs and adults has been minimized. Impacts to eulachon spawning habitat is likely still occurring in all rivers where dredging occurs and the impact to eulachon survival should be further investigated.

#### 5.3.1.4 Shoreline development/flow management

Hypothesis 9 and 10 at the 2007 Workshop suggested that shoreline construction such as roads and dykes may reduce the quality of spawning habitat thus resulting in decreased spawning success and egg/larval survival. Also diversions, such as dams, were suggested to affect the quality and quantity of spawning habitat by changing water volume, temperature and sediment levels during eulachon spawning (Pickard and Marmorek 2007). At the 2002 Eulachon Conservation Society Workshop held in Prince Rupert BC, increased water velocity due to diking was identified as a concern. After a river has been diked the velocity at the thalweg increases because the current is forced into the middle of the channel (Sandheinrich and Atchinson 1986). This is of particular concern for eulachon spawning success, as eulachon prefer to spawn in moderate water velocities (Smith and Saalfeld 1955). Many eulachon rivers are located close to major cities or towns, thus have dikes built along them to control flooding (e.g. Fraser River). After the 1948 flood of the Fraser River an extensive diking program was initiated and resulted in the river being confined to a relatively narrow strip (Northwest Hydraulic Consultants 2006). It appears that eulachon may use the very shallow margins along the banks for spawning (Eulachon Conservation Society 2002) thus reduced quantities of shallow sandy areas may be limiting eulachon spawning habitat. Increased water velocities may also be why eulachon in some rivers are not migrating as far upstream as they once did (Eulachon Conservation Society 2002).

Some eulachon systems have also had dam(s) built within their watersheds, for example the Columbia River and the Kemano River. The Columbia River Basin has a very complex system of dams and reservoirs used for power generation, navigation and flood control. These have greatly reduced historical water levels during the spring freshet, as water is stored for power generation and irrigation, while the rest of the year the water flow has increased as water is released during the winter drawdown of the reservoirs (LCFRB 2004). The higher flows during the winter may negatively affect spawning eulachon and eggs/larvae as they usually enter and spawn in the Columbia River during the winter months. The Bonneville dam on the Columbia River also impedes the migration of spawning eulachon to their historical upriver spawning grounds as the fish are "often unable or unwilling to migrate through fish ladders" (LCFRB 2004). This does not explaint the present decline of eulachon as most dams were built during the 1930s and 1940s (Bargmann 2000).

Land and water management practices have changed the freshwater habitat of most eulachon systems and thus have likely contributed to their declines. However these impacts are probably not the sole cause of the recent coast-wide eulachon declines (Pickard and Marmorek 2007). At the 2007 workshop, three initial steps were recommended to help determine the land and water management practices that have impacted the eulachon: (1) the past and present impacts for each eulachon system need to be identified; (2) monitoring and yearly abundance estimates need to be conducted for index systems; and (3) the areas of critical freshwater habitat used for spawning and egg incubation need to be identified and mapped so that they can be protected. In 1976, a submersible pump was used to determine the presence or absence of eulachon eggs in the Fraser River to gain further knowledge of spawning areas (Samis 2007). A more recent study used radio telemetry on the Twentymile River, Alaska, (Spangler 2002) and acoustic trawls on the Fraser River (Stables *et al.* 2005). These studies have shed some light on eulachon migration patterns and spawning locations. However, similar studies need to be conducted in other impacted eulachon rivers.

### 5.3.2 Fisheries

The fisheries that capture eulachon are: (1) in-river fisheries targeted at catching eulachon which include commercial, First Nation and sport fisheries; and (2) offshore trawl fisheries that capture eulachon incidental bycatch. The in-river fisheries reduce the numbers of

spawning adults whereas the marine trawl fisheries reduce the numbers of the pre-spawning adults and juveniles.

#### 5.3.2.1 In-river eulachon catches: First Nation and commercial

##### 5.3.2.1.1 Fishing diminished stocks

Hypotheses 21 to 24 from the 2007 Workshop suggested that First Nations and commercial catches have "made a significant contribution" to the recent decline of the eulachon and may be a "significant factor in preventing the recovery of eulachon" (Pickard and Marmorek 2007). Thus any modest declines during the 1990s may not have been noticed initially and fishing effort may have been increased in order to obtain sufficient resources resulting in a larger number of available spawners being caught. To a certain extent these hypotheses were supported by a few of the 2006 Nuxalk interview participants.

> People started fishing higher up in the river and we never read the signs that they were diminishing, we just kept fishing them (Anfinn Siwallace Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

> You think about it now, we should have let those guys go and spawn. When it starts getting tough to catch them, whatever is there, we should have let spawn and we didn't we just went after them (Wally Webber Nuxalk Interviews 2006)

The conclusion for these hypotheses at the end of the workshop were that over fishing was "likely not an important link" (Pickard and Marmorek 2007) as catches by First Nations or directed commercial fisheries were usually small and did not increase in recent years (see Chapter 3 for catch records). In fact, in most cases, catches have probably decreased (e.g. Nass River). In 1996, the Fraser River eulachon spawning stock biomass was estimated at 1,916 t with a total catch of 62.3 t, a catch rate of approximately 3%, yet three and four years later there were still poor returns (420 t in 1999 and 120 t in 2000).

Although the signs of declining runs may have been missed, it was unlikely that increased effort alone caused the simultaneous collapse of several eulachon runs in the BC Central Coast. For example, the Kimsquit River in the Dean Channel and the Kilbella River in

Rivers Inlet both had annual runs that were not fished regularly and both collapsed during the late 1990s. Today, eulachon abundance of these rivers remains low.

#### 5.3.2.1.2 Methods of fishing

Several First Nations have witnessed major declines in their eulachon runs and some have expressed concerns regarding the use of newer fishing technologies. For example, a few of the 2006 Nuxalk interview participants expressed concerns regarding the seine net which was introduced to the Bella Coola eulachon fishery during the 1970s. The seine net operates by dragging a large, fine-meshed net across the bottom of the river, whereas the traditional trap net hangs suspended in the water column capturing eulachon with the lowering of the tide (see Chapter 3 for details). The seine net also replaced the traditional conical net in the Klinaklini River and Knight Inlet during the mid-1950s (McNair 1970). Today, however, some families of Knight Inlet have returned to the traditional conical net, as this gear is thought to capture eulachon less destructively (Fred Glendale pers. comm., 2007). Some Nuxalk fishers believe the lead line of the seine net scrapes and kills recently deposited eggs when it is dragged across the river bottom (002 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). The seine net was also described as "too easy" and "too efficient" when capturing eulachon (Wally Webber and Anfinn Siwallace Nuxalk Interviews 2006). In the past, during an abundant run, a conical net may take 3 to 4 days to fill up a stink box but when using a seine net a box could be filled with one set (Clarence Elliot Nuxalk Interviews 2006).

Another concern in recent years was that traditional rules were no longer being followed; one such rule was to allow the first run or wave of fish, primarily made up of females, to pass through without any fishing. "The females were such a treasure and everybody would go after them. What would naturally happen if the females are over fished? And they weren't in big numbers to start with…if you get rid of one side of the species you're unbalancing that whole system" (Horace Walkus Nuxalk Interviews 2006). Chapter 3 discusses in more detail the dominance of females in the first run and the amount of grease female eulachon produce compared to that of male eulachon. Although these practices may have contributed to the decline in eulachon returns, it is unlikely that these methods of fishing caused the simultaneous collapse of the BC Central Coast eulachon runs.

#### 5.3.2.2 Ocean fisheries

At the 2007 Workshop, impact hypotheses 17-20, suggest that shrimp trawl catch has contributed to the recent decline in eulachon (Pickard and Marmorek 2007). These hypotheses considered the significance of eulachon by-catch by the shrimp trawl fishery and the effectiveness of by-catch reduction devices (BRDs). Shrimp trawling occurs in the marine environment and captures predominantly age 1+ (60-130 mm) and age 2+ (90-180 mm) eulachon but may also include some age 3+ (140-200 mm) as determined by eulachon caught in DFO shrimp trawl surveys (DFO 2007a). Thus the incidental capture of eulachon in marine waters will affect the number of returning adults, one or two years later, assuming that the majority of eulachon mature between 2 and 3 years of age. It was determined by Clarke *et al.* (2007) that the Columbia River eulachon mature after 2 years and the more northern rivers, including the Fraser, generally mature after 3 years.

##### 5.3.2.2.1 Background

The earliest records of trawling for shrimp in BC waters are from 1895 (Clark and Huston 1998; Harbo 1997). However, the demand for shrimp on the Pacific Northwest Coast rapidly developed during the late 1950s with the development of automated peelers (Clark and Huston 1998). The majority of shrimp catch on the Pacific Northwest is taken by Oregon shrimp fisheries (Figure 5.1); the BC shrimp trawl fishery is relatively small in comparison (Figure 5.2a), averaging ~3,250 t since 1976 whereas Oregon averaged 11,750 t during the same period. Alaska once supported large commercial shrimp fisheries between the late 1950s and 1980s, which occurred predominantly in the Gulf of Alaska (GOA), but the shrimp population crashed during the late 1970s and early 1980s (Figure 5.2b). Most of the historic shrimp fishing areas in the GOA are now closed to shrimp trawling (e.g. Cook Inlet) and in more recent years the shrimp landings have been much smaller and predominantly come from Southeastern Alaska (ADFG 2006).

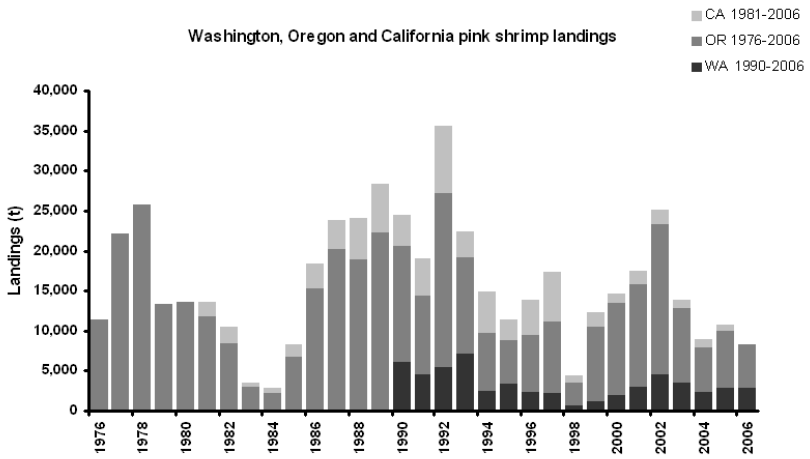
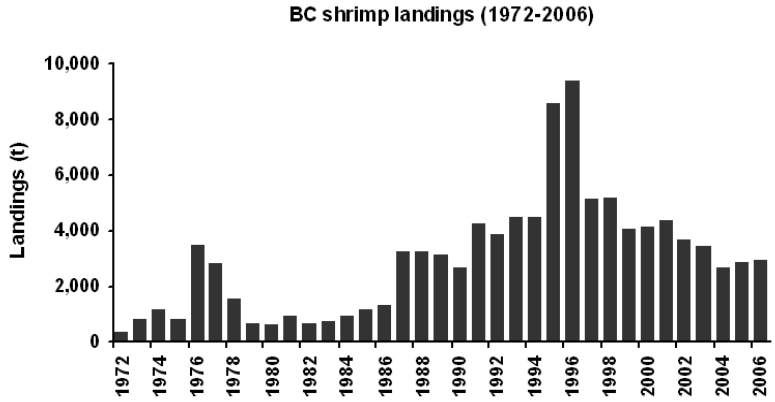


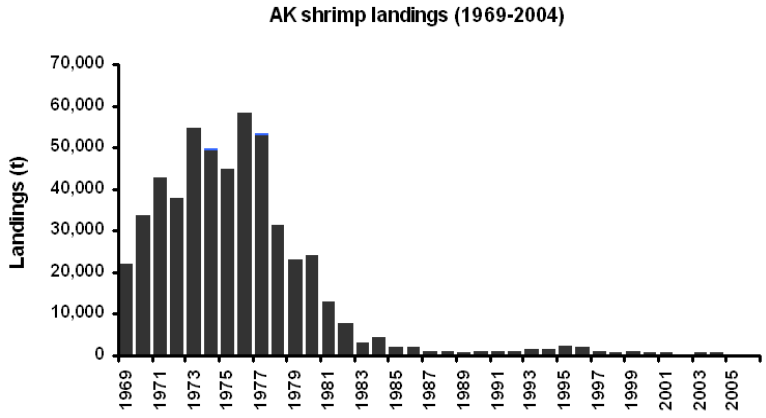

Figure 5.1. Washington (grey), Oregon (dark blue) and California (light blue) shrimp landings. Source: WDFG 2008; ODFG 2006; National Marine Service 2008.

a)




Source: DFO 2007b

b)




Source: ADFG 2006

Figure 5.2. Shrimp trawl landings from (a) BC and (b) Alaska.

Shrimp trawling is a method of fishing in which a vessel drags a cone-shaped net with a rectangular opening through the water to catch shrimp. The two types of trawling systems that are used in the BC shrimp fishery are the otter trawl and the beam trawl. Beam trawls use a net attached to a rigid beam, where the beam is used to hold the mouth of the net open regardless of the speed of towing (Jennings *et al.* 2001). The otter trawls use otter boards or doors, hydrodynamically designed so as they are pulled through the water the wings of the net are held open, requiring a certain tow speed to achieve an opened net. The size of the otter trawl is much larger than that of a beam trawl because it has no rigid structure (i.e., the beam) to limit its size or maneuverability.

#### 5.3.2.2.2 History of the BC shrimp industry

Before 1996, the BC shrimp trawl fishery occurred in three major areas of the BC Coast: the inshore waters of the Strait of Georgia, the coastal areas off the North Coast inlets, and the West Coast of Vancouver Island (DFO 1998). And up until 1996, the shrimp trawl fishery was generally open year-round with no catch limitations. The majority of landings were a mix of smooth pink shrimp (*Pandalus jordani*) (>90%) and sidestripe shrimp (*Pandalopsis dispar*) (Rutherford *et al*. 2004). However, after 1996, the fishery expanded into areas previously not fished, such as the shrimp management area, Queen Charlotte Sound (QCSnd) (Figure 5.3) and landings increased dramatically. The total catch of shrimp in 1995 (8557 t) almost doubled the 1994 landings (4502 t) (Figure 5.1a). The suggested reasons for this shift in fishing area and effort were: reduced fishing opportunities in the groundfish and salmon fisheries, higher prices of shrimp, a decline in Washington and Oregon shrimp catches and abundant shrimp stocks on the BC Coast (DFO 1999a; Clayton 2001). According to Dale Gueret, North Coast Fisheries Coordinator in charge of the Central Coast shrimp trawl fishery for 2000, the increased fishing effort occured after DFO instigated a Pacific salmon license buy back in 1997. As a result many fishers began utilizing their shrimp licenses resulting in more shrimp licenses being issued (Kuhn 2000). As a result of this increased effort and a concern for the shrimp resource, DFO announced the closure of the shrimp trawl fishery on March 21, 1997 until an acceptable management and assessment plan for the fishery was reached (DFO 1997). The fishery was eventually reopened, approximately a month later (April 08, 1997) and an agreement-in-principle to continue the development of a management plan to ensure the conservation of the resource between DFO and the Shrimp

Trawl Sectoral Committee (STSC) was made. The first elected STSC was formed in 1995 and consisted of industry and DFO representatives. The focus at this time was the conservation of the shrimp resource and not by-catch.

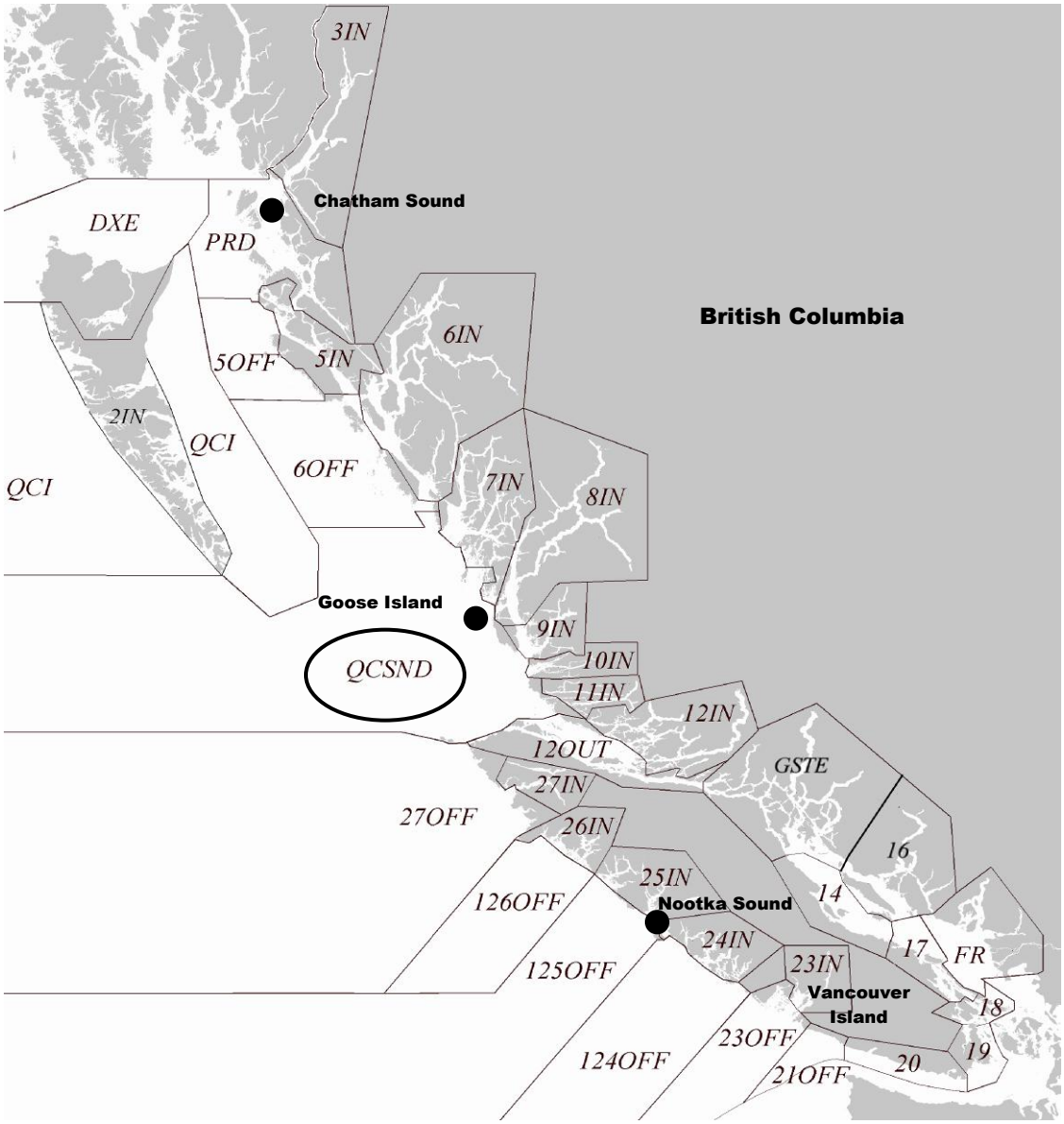



Figure 5.3. British Columbia shrimp trawl management areas established by DFO. Map also includes the locations where eulachon samples were obtained for mixed-stock DNA analysis testing (Beacham *et al.* 2005). Source: DFO 2007c.

#### 5.3.2.2.3 Shrimp by-catch

During the 1990s by-catch emerged as a major issue in the management of fisheries worldwide as the public became more informed by conservation and environmental groups (Alverson and Hughes 1995). In 1995 a by-catch subcommittee of the STSC was formed to address by-catch issues in the BC shrimp trawl fishery. One of the main objectives of the committee was the development of a sampling program to document the spatial and temporal nature of by-catch associated with the fishery (Olsen *et al.* 2000). In 1997, concern over halibut by-catch was expressed by the BC halibut fishery and resulted in an analysis of BC shrimp trawl by-catch by DFO during the 1997 and 1998 seasons. The analysis provided estimates of total by-catch, by species group, gear-type, shrimp management area and year (Olsen *et al.* 2000). The analysis found that eulachon by-catch was "fairly high" in some areas and it was estimated that over 160 t of eulachon was taken in 1997 with 90 t taken from the QCSnd area (Hay *et al.* 1999). The shrimp industry contended that a portion of these by-catch landings were the direct result of a few vessels "fear fishing" (Clayton 2001). Fear fishing is a term used to describe fishing that occurs when participants actively try to record higher volumes of vessels because they "fear" the fishery may be managed under an individual vessel quota (IVQ) system in the future (Clayton 2001) and quotas may be based on the size of historical catches. Nonetheless, a large amount of eulachon were captured as by-catch by the BC shrimp trawl fishery and in 1994 a sudden sharp decline occurred in three major eulachon spawning rivers; the Fraser River, the Columbia River and the Klinaklini River of Knight Inlet (Hay and McCarter 2000).

#### 5.3.2.2.4 Offshore eulachon abundance

The marine abundance and location of eulachon in the marine environment has been estimated from fish caught as by-catch in trawl fisheries and in multi-species research trawls (Hay and McCarter 2000). An annual eulachon biomass index is calculated from data collected during annual shrimp trawl surveys in two areas on the BC Coast 1) West Coast of Vancouver Island (WCVI) since 1973 and 2) QCSnd since 1998 (Figure 5.4). It is cautioned that these estimates are relative and not necessarily the absolute estimate of density and biomass (Hay *et al.* 1997).

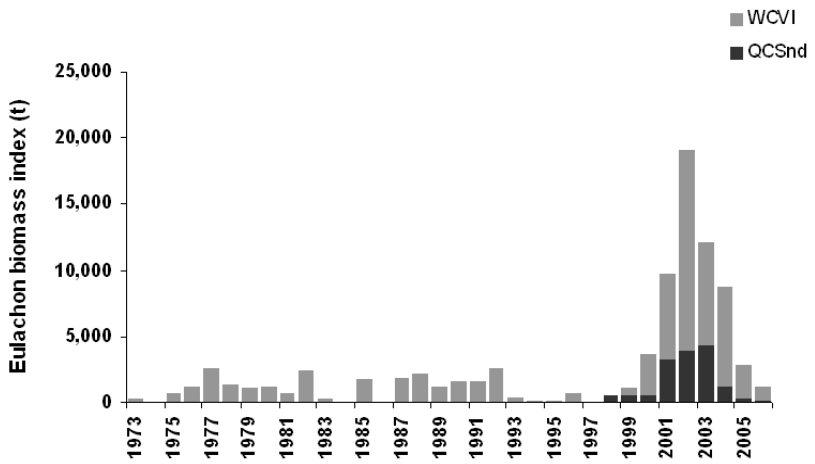



Figure 5.4. Offshore eulachon biomass indices for the West Coast Vancouver Island (WCVI) and for Queen Charlotte Sound (QCSnd)
Source: Hay *et al.* 1997; DFO 2008.

The Alaskan Department of Fish and Game (ADFG) also conduct small-mesh bottom trawl surveys for shrimp and forage fish in the waters of the Westward Region, around the Southern Peninsula and Kodiak Island. These surveys have been conducted intermittently since 1976 (Figure 5.5). Eulachon are also consistently found by groundfish fisheries and surveys between Unimak Island and the Pribilof Islands in the Bering Sea and in the Shelikof Strait, GOA (Conners and Guttormsen 2005). As with the BC surveys, the Alaskan surveys' primary purpose is to determine shrimp and groundfish biomass levels. However, they are also used to generate density estimates for forage fish (Jackson 2006). The importance of forage fish populations to the marine ecosystem have been recognized by Alaskan fisheries management thus prohibitions have been adopted on directed take of forage fish in the North Pacific and the Bearing Sea (Jackson 2006). The two dominant smelt species found in the GOA are capelin (*Mallotus villosus*) and eulachon and they represent the majority of biomass and incidental catch of forage fish[20] (Conners and Guttormsen 2005). Eulachon were the most abundant forage fish caught in bottom trawls in the GOA with biomass estimates ranging between 20,000 and 80,000 tons and it is even likely that these surveys probably underestimate their abundance (Conners and Guttormsen 2005). The highest measured biomass in the GOA occurred in 2003 (~115,000 t) and was approximately 9 times the combined total biomass measured in WCVI and QCsnd (~12,000 t). The biomass estimates,

[20] herring are not considered forage fish

prior to 2001, for both BC and Alaska are much lower than in recent years (Figures 5.4 and 5.6) and have shown substantial increases between 2001 and 2005. However, good returns have only been observed in the central Alaskan Rivers, such as the Copper River and Cook Inlet, while the populations in southeastern Alaska, southern and central BC, Washington/Oregon and California have not observed any significant increases (Chapter 4).

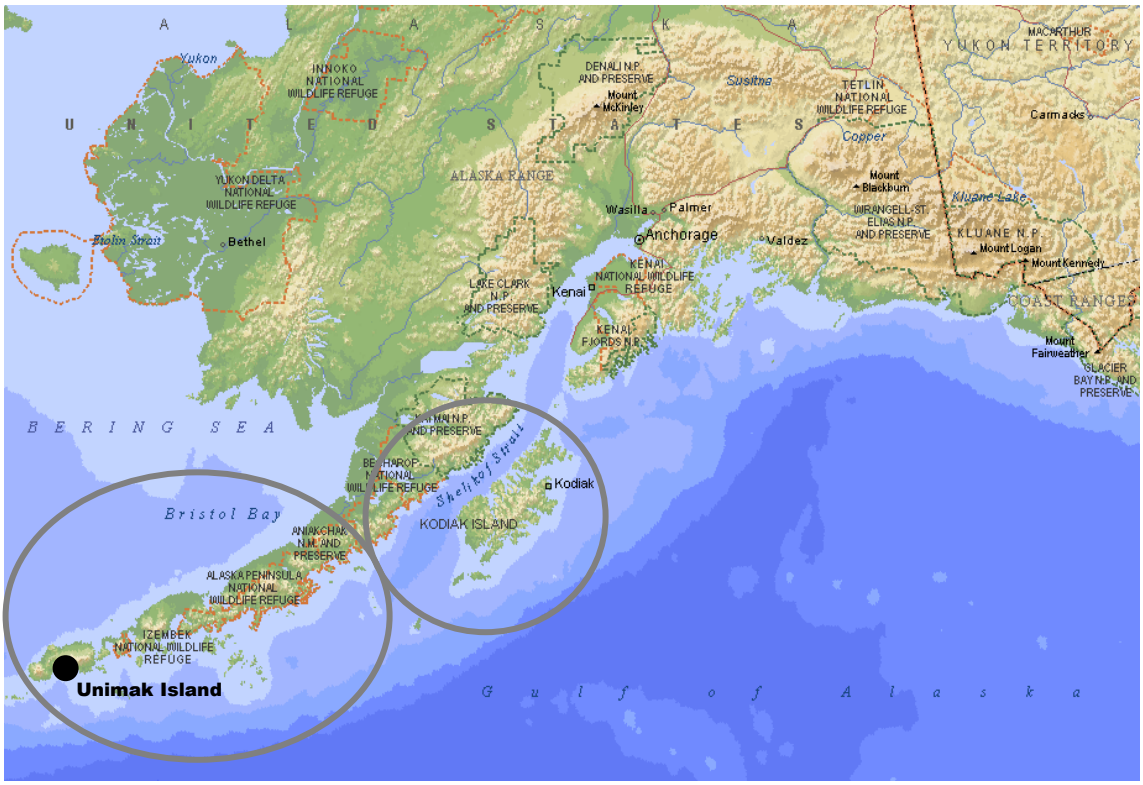



Figure 5.5. The genral locations of the offshore Alaskan areas where the majority of eulachon have been captured by shrimp and groundfish surveys.
Source: Conners and Guttormsen 2005; Jackson 2005.

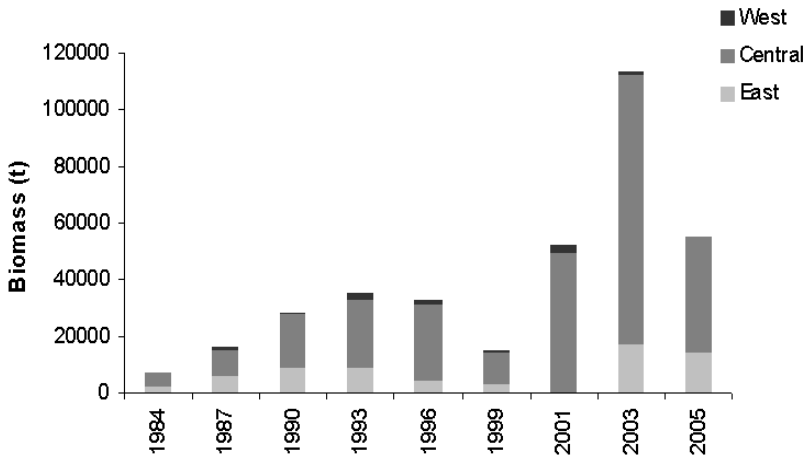



Figure 5.6. Offshore eulachon biomass indices for the Gulf of Alaska.
Source: Conners and Guttormsen 2005.

#### 5.3.2.2.5 Are eulachon in distinct populations?

After it was discovered that there were significant amounts of eulachon caught as by-catch in the shrimp trawl fishery (Hay *et al.* 1999), the question was raised "if eulachon home to their natal rivers to spawn, then is it possible that a number of distinct populations exist?" (McLean *et al.* 1999). This question is very significant because if eulachon are a single stock then the declining returns may be attributed to changes in distribution, not a decrease in abundance. Thus by-catch of eulachon may not be as significant. However, if each eulachon-bearing river is a distinct population, even a small by-catch of eulachon may significantly impact the returns because "the size of the by-catch may be very large relative to the size of some small runs" (Hay *et al.* 1999).

Previously, it has been suggested that since eulachon spend such a short time in freshwater they may not be as dependent on specific freshwater habitats as other anadromous species (McLean and Taylor 2001). There have been three different methods used to determine the population structure of the eulachon: vertebral number counts (Hart and McHugh 1944), mitochondrial DNA (McLean *et al.* 1999) and microsatellite variation (McLean and Taylor 2001; Beacham *et al.* 2005). Although Hart and McHugh's (1944) study indicated there were significant differences among watersheds, the results of McLean *et al.*'s (1999) mitochondrial DNA study revealed that eulachon were a weakly sub-divided population, essentially a single stock and not structured on a river-by-river basis. Thus eulachon were

managed in Canadian waters under this assumption until a more recent investigation, using microsatellite variation, showed that eulachon do display genetic differentiation among spawning aggregations of major rivers (Beacham *et al.* 2005). This differentiation between rivers was also sufficient to allow reliable stock composition when applied to mixed-stock samples.

An analysis was conducted on samples of mixed-stock eulachon collected from three BC shrimp management areas: WCVI (Nootka Sound), QCSnd (Goose Island) and Chatham Sound (Figure 5.3). These mixed-stock samples were compared to 9 eulachon river populations[21] (Beacham *et al.* 2005). The analysis of these samples indicated that the marine area of WCVI was composed of mainly Fraser and Columbia River eulachon. The Central Coast sample included eulachon from all 9 river populations, whereas the northern BC, Chatham Sound sample, was dominated by Northern and Central Coast eulachon populations. Thus, the eulachon by-catch captured off the WCVI would impact the Fraser and Columbia eulachon populations and the by-catch caught in QCSnd and Chatham Sound would impact the central and northern eulachon populations.

The drastic decline of the Bella Coola eulachon population in 1999 suspiciously occurred two years after the large 1997 eulachon by-catch taken in the BC commercial shrimp trawl fishery in area QCSnd. It is unfortunate that the largest by-catch occurred in the offshore areas inhabited by Central Coast eulachon, as they are some of the smaller eulachon populations. However, QCSnd has been closed to shrimp trawl fishing since 2000 and the overall effort has remained low, only 70 out of 245 licensed vessels were active in the 2006/07 season (DFO 2007). Yet eulachon fail to return in fishable numbers to the Bella Coola and to other Central Coast rivers, such as the Wannock River, in Rivers Inlet. These populations have either been reduced to extremely low levels past the point of recovery, or there is another factor preventing their recovery. Since there is a large discrepancy between the amount of eulachon returning to these rivers (Chapter 4) and the amount measured in offshore marine surveys (Figure 5.4), some other factor preventing their recovery, may be plausible. The Bella Coola eulachon relative abundance has been estimated at less than 50 kg for the past six seasons (Lewis and O'Connor 2002; Winbourne and Dow 2002; Moody 2005, 2006; Nuxalk Fisheries 2005-06) and the lowest reported offshore abundance in QCSnd at 193.2 t in 2006

[21] Columbia, Cowlitz, Fraser, Klinaklini, Bella Coola, Kemano, Skeena, Nass, Twenty-mile Rivers

(DFO 2008). There are nine months between the time the DFO offshore shrimp surveys calculate eulachon biomass and the time that the eulachon are to return to the rivers. Thus eulachon marine survival has been greatly reduced during these months and several climate change hypotheses have been suggested (these will be discussed in section 5.33)

#### 5.3.2.2.6 By-catch reduction devices (BRDs)

BRDs can be separated into those that separate species by differences in behavior and those that mechanically exclude unwanted organisms according to their size (Broadhurst 2000). In an attempt to reduce by-catch in the BC shrimp fishery BRDs were made mandatory in the shrimp trawl fishery in 2000. Prior to 2000 there were no regulations in place to monitor or to reduce the amount of by-catch taken and BRDs were used purely voluntarily. By 1995, some of the otter trawlers had begun to use separator grates to reduce by-catch and a few years later, these and other devices expanded to the beam trawlers (Boutillier *et al.* 1999). However, it was not until additional areas reported eulachon declines, such as the Bella Coola River and the Kemano River, and the amount of by-catch was made public that industry and DFO were motivated to create a new shrimp management plan that addressed the issue of eulachon by-catch. Another major influence in the development of the BRD regulations was DFO's new Pacific Selective Fishing Policy released in 1999 which stated:

> All Pacific fisheries, in which by-catch is an issue, will meet specified standards of selectivity. In fisheries where selective harvesting standards are not met, and bycatches remain a constraint to achievement of conservation objectives fishing opportunities will be curtailed (DFO 1999b).

The use of BRDs in the eastern Canadian shrimp fishery became mandatory in 1993, seven years before BC (Brothers 1996). Experimentation to reduce by-catch by East Coast fishers also started as early as 1970. However, fishers were reluctant to use sorting devices because of their complicated designs and the assumption that the grid increased the cost of shrimp trawling (Brothers 1996). However, in 1991 DFO extensively monitored the shrimp fishery in the Gulf of St. Lawrence extensively and found that from 435 sets observed, the total catch of shrimp was 275.4 t with a by-catch of 53.4 t of cod, 27 t of redfish, and 17.2 t of turbot; most of these species were juvenile fish with no commercial value (Brothers 1996). Thus, the need to decrease by-catch became very apparent on the Canadian East Coast.

The states of Washington, Oregon and California made BRD use mandatory during 2001 and 2003. However, the Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife (ODFW) had completed a study on fish excluder technology in 1996 (Hannah *et al.* 1996). Prior to BRD use, the unmarketable catch would occasionally be so large that entire tows were dumped (Hannah *et al.* 1996). There were also reports of high levels of eulachon by-catch by shrimp fisheries in areas located from northern Oregon to the southern end of British Columbia (Bargmann 1998). In 2001, shrimpers in Oregon were encouraged to use BRDs voluntary, but most "didn't attempt to use excluders until they were required" (Hannah *et al.* 1996). After the 2001 season, the ODFG made it known that shrimpers should be prepared to implement BRDs sometime during the 2002 season. In California BRDs were already required and in Washington they were made mandatory mid season in 2001 and 2002, and then permanently in 2003 (WDFW 2008). After the 2002 season, BRDs became mandatory in Oregon. The use of BRDs in these shrimp fisheries was initiated after each state committed to reducing the incidental catch of canary rockfish (*Sebastes pinniger*). The canary rockfish were declared overfished by the Pacific Fishery Management Council in 2000. Hence without the use of BRDs the maximum catch of canary rockfish could occur well before the shrimp quota is landed (Hannah and Jones 2007). Prior to the use of BRDs, the Oregon shrimp fishery had bycatch percentages of 32% to 61% of total catch with the majority of the catch consistently composed of Pacific hake and various smelt species (Hannah and Jones 2007). The highest percent catch of smelt was calculated in June 2000 (28.32%) (Hannah and Jones 2007). However, it was not specified how much of this catch was eulachon. Overall the use of BRDs in Oregon has resulted in a large reduction of total fish bycatch (66% - 88%) with smelt by-catch between 0.25% - 1.69% (Hannah and Jones 2007).

The BC shrimp trawl industry believes that there are no longer issues related to by-catch since BRDs became mandatory and feel that that they should be commended for their proactive work in reducing by-catch (Clark and Boehner 2003). The BC shrimp trawl has made efforts in addressing eulachon by-catch issues. They have completed preliminary by-catch reduction studies (2000 and 2001), held an international conference on by-catch reduction, reduced eulachon by-catch (although exact figures are debatable), and recommended 100% use of by-catch reduction devices starting in 2000 (Clark and Boehner 2003).

#### 5.3.2.2.7 By-catch reduction studies

In 2000 the BC shrimp trawl industry conducted a preliminary by-catch reduction study to collect information and identify gear configurations that could benefit the eulachon (Clayton 2001). The initial study was used to justify additional, more intensive, detailed, testing using commercial size nets. Three gear configurations were found to effectively reduce eulachon by-catch without significantly impacting the catch of shrimp; (1) adding a 2"rigid mesh, (2) the addition of 2 fish eyes[22] to the cod end, and (3) adding both the rigid mesh and the 2 fish eyes. These gear configurations provided a means of escape for eulachon once they enter the trawl net. The 2" mesh gear configuration consisted of a rigid square hung mesh net inserted into the hood of an otter net. The fisheyes consisted of two escape holes placed in the top part of the cod-end of the trawl net. The combination of the 2" (5 cm) rigid mesh with the fisheyes had better reduction results than either gear did by itself, with minimal reduction in shrimp catch. The earlier in the tow the fish were allowed to escape the greater the reduction in eulachon catch because there was less chance that the fish would 'gill' on the net and die. However, the most effective method tested prevented eulachon from being captured at all. This method added a 100 lb (45 kg) chain clump to the net which in turn scared the eulachon away from the net and prevented capture. Unfortunately this method did not effectively catch shrimp and the chain clump dug into the ocean bottom, increasing ocean debris in the catch. The final outcome from the 2000 preliminary study was the recommendation to DFO that "all otter trawl nets install a 42 sq ft (3.9 sq m) [panel] of 2"(5 cm) rigid square mesh" starting in 2001. The recommendation was accepted and included in the 2001 management plan for shrimp trawling (DF0 2001) and in return, industry was allowed to conduct the 2001 selectivity trials.

The first three gear configurations indentified in the preliminary study were used in the 2001 selectivity trials (Clayton 2002). One of the objectives of the 2001 study was to test the potential of these gear configurations to reduce eulachon by-catch rates in otter trawls. The final gear configuration that was found to be optimal at reducing eulachon and other species and retaining shrimp, was the use of a separator grid and a combination of soft square mesh placed lengthwise and crosswise in the upper belly of the otter net. Total eulachon reduction

[22] Escape holes in the top part of the net

was estimated at 53.5%. In Oregon, the BRD with the smallest percent of smelt by-catch by weight (0.25 %) was a rigid grate with bar spacing of 25-31 mm (Hannah and Jones 2007).

#### 5.3.2.2.8 Collateral damage

Although the BC shrimp trawl industry has claimed to have reduced eulachon by-catch by some 80% over the period from 2000-2001 (Clayton 2002), the issue of collateral damage has not been addressed. Collateral damage is the damage and mortality of escaping and discarded organisms caused by towed gears (Broadhurst *et al.* 2006). If the majority of discarded or escaped eulachon do not survive evasion of the net, capture by trawl gear, or the sorting using BRDs, it is of little importance that the amount of by-catch has been reduced.

Broadhurst *et al.* (2006) identified several biological, environmental and technical factors that occur during the sorting process which have been demonstrated to, or can lead to, escape mortalities, for example damage to an organism's skin or scales during the capture leading to infection; capture-induced exhaustion; the size of the individual being caught; the size of the catch and its composition (large catches cause fish to strike the mesh and each other more often); the size and shape of the mesh; and the amount of times an individual comes into contact with gear components. The estimated escape mortality has rarely been attributed to only one of these factors thus mortality usually occurs as a result of a combination, for example from both skin injuries and exhaustion (Suuronen *et al.* 1996b).

The reduction of eulachon by-catch has been studied to a limited extent by the BC shrimp trawl industry (Clayton 2001). However, the mortality of eulachon escaping from trawl nets and BRDs has not. Eulachon have several attributes that make them more vulnerable to discard or escape mortality, for example, small fish are less able to avoid capture and thus have less endurance to escape when they are captured (Suuronen *et al.* 1996a). A study conducted on herring by Suuronen *et al.* (1996a), indicated that the mortality of herring escapees from trawl codend meshes was found to be size dependent. Although the smaller fish showed less skin injury and infections than the larger fish, the smaller fish were dead after 1 week of caging whereas the larger fish were not. It was suggested that the smaller fish were more vulnerable to stress, exhaustion and damage during the trawl capture process. The survival of smaller (<12 cm) herring escapees was

not improved by the sorting grid. Thus eulachon would have a harder time escaping from faster towed nets, for example, the otter trawls.

Otter trawls in the BC shrimp trawl fishery have a significantly higher eulachon CPUE than beam trawls (Olsen *et al.* 2000). This is unfortunate as juvenile eulachon sizes offshore range between (6 and 20 cm) with an average size of 12.4 cm (personal observation[23], 2006). Underwater observations of herring in an off-bottom trawl also indicated that the fish did not readily pass through the web of the cod-end even though they readily could do so (High and Lusz 1965). The herring instead maintained a position in a specific area of the web and on a few occasions herring from the outside swam through the mesh into the bag to join those fish within the net. Thus it may be essential to develop a BRD that prevents eulachon from entering a trawl net, such as the 100lb (45 kg) weight used in the BC shrimp industry preliminary by-catch reduction trials, with the condition that the BRD also be effective in catching shrimp. Thus a scare tactic BRD may be the most successful way to reduce eulachon by-catch. Notwithstanding, Broadhurt *et al.* (2006) state that the mortality from discards is much greater than that of escapees thus the primary focus should always be to facilitate the rapid selection of fish using BRDs, designed and demonstrated to have minimal negative effects on escapees. Thus the 2" (5 cm) rigid mesh used by the BC shrimp fishery should hopefully help to prevent eulachon from entering the cod-end and prevent eulachon mortality from discards. Nevertheless the survival success of eulachon passing through this mesh should to be determined through further investigations.

### 5.3.3 Climate change

At the 2007 Workshop, the impact hypothesis "changing climate conditions have resulted in a decline in eulachon" included six sub-hypotheses (H11-H16) that emphasized impacts to eulachon spawning habitat and juvenile rearing grounds (Pickard and Marmorek 2007). These included changes to freshwater hydrology due to reduced glacier/snowmelt; changes in the estuarine environment affecting larvae growth and survival; changes in the marine

[23] Personal observation on DFO shrimp survey conducted in QCSnd May 12-18, 2006

environment affecting juvenile survival (increased predation, competition for food, food composition and food availability).

The earth's climate naturally varies over time and these climate variations can occur gradually or abruptly. Recently worldwide concern has grown over human generated greenhouse gases and their connection to intensified climate changes. Large-scale climate shifts were first introduced to fisheries scientists as "regime" shifts by Isaacs (1975). Generally, a climate regime shift can be defined as a characteristic behavior of a natural phenomenon, for example sea level pressure, that has undergone an abrupt change in a short period of time (Hare and Mantua 2000). There have been two major regime shifts in the last century, the widely accepted shift of 1976-1977 and the shift that occurred during 1988-89 (Beamish *et al.* 1999). These regime shifts can cause "major reorganizations of ecological relationships over vast oceanic regions" (Francis and Hare 1994) and also alter the mix and abundance of coexisting species, from primary producers to top predators (Benson and Trites 2002).

A climate regime also has inter-annual climatic events referred to as El Niños and La Niñas. An El Niño event is the wind driven reversal of the Pacific equatorial currents resulting in the accumulation of warm tropical surface water along the coast of the Americas (Duxbury and Duxbury 1997). A La Niña event occurs when there is colder than normal surface water in the eastern tropical Pacific (Duxbury and Duxbury 1997). A severe El Niño event causes the displacement of atmospheric pressure cells which affect climate patterns over large areas of the earth (Duxbury and Duxbury 1997). Certain processes have been identified by the appearance of one of these events. For example, the Southern Oscillation Index (SOI) identifies El Niño and La Niña conditions in the tropical Pacific Ocean (DFO 2006) and the Pacific Decadal Oscillation (PDO) is used to describe interdecadal climate variability based on northwestern hemisphere extratropical sea surface temperatures and sea level pressures (Mantua *et al.* 1997).

An extreme low pressure event occurred between 1976 and 1978 over most of the Pacific North Coast and resulted in a general warming over Alaska and a cooling in the central and western North Pacific (Beamish 1993). This included warmer than average Sea Surface Temperatures (SST) along the West Coast of North America (Miller *et al.* 1994). During this

regime the SOI changed from a regular oscillation of El Niño and La Niña anomalies to fairly persistent El Niño conditions (Beamish *et al.* 1999). This shift was associated with increases in primary and secondary production on a large scale and brought with it major changes in fish abundance (Beamish 1993). In 1989 a new regime began and was dominated by extreme and persistent El Niño conditions (Beamish *et al.* 1999). It has been found that during an El Niño event the thermocline is depressed and upwelling only brings nutrient-depleted water to the surface (Dorn 1995). This new regime caused a major decline in fish productivity during the 1990s along on the West Coast of Canada (McFarlane 2000). Globally, the decade from 1996-2005 has experienced nine of the ten warmest years ever recorded (surface temperature) (DFO 2006). Between 1997 and 1998 one of the strongest El Niño events occurred followed by a La Niña event in 1999 (Zamon and Welch 2005). And between 1999 and 2002, cool marine conditions have occurred, however, since 2003 warm ocean surface temperatures have persisted (DFO 2006). Warm years increase the vertical stratification of the water column and lead to reduced productivity, thus a return to cooler more "normal" conditions would allow for more normal mixing and nutrients to be resupplied to the surface layers (DFO 2006). Pelagic fish along the North Pacific Coast have been suggested as good indicators for climate change, as the environment pelagic fish inhabit and their life history, seem to be directly related to atmospheric and oceanographic variability (Klyashtorin1997; Benson *et al.* 2002; Agostini *et al.* 2006). And as eulachon are a northern, cold-water pelagic species, and appear to be quite sensitive to small environmental changes, they have also been suggested as an indicator species (Hay 1995).

The theoretical concept of an ecological regime shift has been criticized (Lees *et al.* 2006). It is felt that the factors which influence marine communities and the dynamics and impacts of these interactions are not fully understood and overfishing, not merely, climate regime shifts, tend to be related to ecological regime shifts. In any case, the possible impacts of climate regime shifts to in-river eulachon abundance will be summarized in this section (5.3.3) and then tested against the concept of climate regime shifts in section 5.3.5.

#### 5.3.3.1 Marine environment

##### 5.3.3.1.1 Food availability

Hypothesis 14 from the 2007 Workshop suggested that "climate-driven changes in near-shore ocean and continental shelf conditions have reduced the availability of food, reducing the survival of eulachon." Zooplankton (e.g., euphausiids and copepods) form a critical link between primary producers (phytoplankton) and pelagic fish. For example, the summer distribution of hake has shown a strong overlap with euphausiid distribution (Ware and McFarlane 1995) and the eulachon's primary prey appears to be a specific euphausiid species, (*Thysanoessa spinifera*) (Cooper 2000). Euphausiids can generally be found in most areas of the ocean but are more common in upwelling regions which are commonly located along the edges of the continental shelf or at the shelf break (Simard 1986) where nutrients are most available for planktonic growth.

From 1951 to 1993 the surface layer of the ocean steadily warmed and the zooplankton volume within the California Current decreased by an estimated 80% (Roemmich and McGowan 1995). The California Current, which is also referred to as the Coastal Upwelling Domain (CUD) (Ware and McFarlane 1989), is located on the Pacific North Coast between 25°N to 51°N latitude. From 1985-1999 eupahusiid species increased in abundance the northern tip of the California Current (waters off the southern tip of Vancouver Island), during the late 1980s and declined in abundance throughout the mid and late 90s (Mackas *et al.* 2001). From 1990-1998 this zooplankton community shifted from a dominant "boreal" species, to those commonly found from 40°N to the Bering Sea, to one which was dominated by southerly copepod and chaetognaths species, or those common to the southern parts of the California Current (Mackas *et al.* 2001). Thus the species that made up this zooplankton community, for any given year, were more variable than the total biomass of zooplankton (Mackas *et al.* 2001). This change in zooplankton composition likely affected the growth and survival of certain pelagic fishes. For example, Pacific herring stocks in Barkley Sound, Canada, have experienced poorer growth in the 1990s which is suspected to be linked to a decline in the availability of their key euphausiid prey (Tanasichuk 1997). As eulachon primarily prey on euphausiids, their growth is likely similarly affected. On the other hand, sardines may benefit from the shift in species composition as their reproductive success has been linked with increases in diatom abundance (Ware and Thomson 1991).

#### 5.3.3.1.2 Food composition

Pacific Sardines (*Sardinops sagax*) are a warm water species restricted to the latitudes of 60 °N and 50 °S. Sardines were once the largest fishery in British Columbia with annual catches averaging 40,000 t annually between 1925 and 1946. In 1947, they suddenly disappeared entirely from Canadian waters (McFarlane and Beamish 2001). The collapse of this stock was described as a classic example of over-fishing (Hilborn and Walters 1992) and was generally believed that there was little hope of the stock ever recovering (McFarlane and Beamish 2001). However, in 1992 sardines were reported in catches of Pacific hake and their abundance has increased so that they are now a dominant species in British Columbia surface waters (McFarlane and Beamish 1999). An experimental fishery was begun in 1995 and catches reached 1500 t in 1999 (McFarlane and Beamish 1999). The range of sardines has continued to expand as they were captured in Queen Charlotte Sound and in Dixon Entrance in 1997 and 1998 and in the waters off of southeastern Alaska in 1998 (McFarlane and Beamish 1999). The demise of the South Coast BC stock coincided with the 1947 regime shift which was believed to have been initiated by large-scale changes in coastal runoff and a decline in upwelling winds affecting summer salinity (Ware and Thomson 1991). It has been suggested that the reduced salinity led to a reduction in nutrient levels which reduced the production of diatoms and copepods (Ware and Thomson 1991). Sardines prey on copepods, euphausiids and phytoplankton (Emmet *et al.* 2005). It has been hypothesized that the fluctuations in sardine abundance are related to changes in species composition and abundances of phytoplankton, particularly diatoms (McFarlane and Beamish 2001). Sardines do not compete with eulachon for food (Pickard and Marmorek 2007), but the reappearance of sardines in BC waters may indicate that the composition of zooplankton has changed to one that benefits sardine but not eulachon.

#### 5.3.3.1.3 Increase in eulachon competitors and predators

Hypothesis 15 and 16 suggested that the northward migration of warm water species has increased predation on eulachon and increased the competition for food resources, resulting in reduced survival of juvenile (1+) eulachon (Pickard and Marmorek 2007). "You know, they eat lots…in the early summer there's mackerel that have been coming as far as the lower Burke…they eat lots, water's getting warmer and there's [also] more predators coming up from the south" (048 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). The dominant pelagic fish species in the

CUD are northern anchovy (*Engraulis mordax*), Pacific sardine, chub mackerel and Pacific hake (Benson *et al.* 2002). There have been large shifts in the composition of these species within the CUD and these shifts have been linked to fluctuations in the ocean climate, for example, there have been increases in the biomass of migratory chum mackerel (McCall *et al.* 1985), more abundant, smaller migratory Pacific hake (Ware and McFarlane 1995) and as mentioned previously, the reappearance of Pacific sardine on the British Columbia Coast (McFarlane and Beamish 2001). There are approximately nine months between the time the DFO offshore shrimp surveys calculate eulachon biomass and when eulachon return to the rivers. Is it possible that the increases in eulachon competitors or predators are affecting the number of eulachon returning to the rivers?

**Pacific hake**

Pacific hake are a pelagic fish found off the West Coast of Canada and the United States within the CUD. There are four distinct stocks of hake in this area, three smaller isolated inshore stocks and a large coastal migrating stock (Methot and Dorn 1995). The larger coastal stock spawns in the offshore waters of southern California during the winter and then during the spring and summer migrates north to feed, typically in the offshore areas around central Vancouver Island (Bailey *et al.* 1982).

During the spring and summer months there is a large commercial hake fishery conducted in US and Canadian waters. This fishery first began in the mid 1960s with the majority of the Canadian catch taken below 49°N off the South Coast of Vancouver Island. Canadian catches have increased steadily since 1977 with 124,237 t taken in 2004 (Figure 5.7). In 1991 and 1992 the level of fishable quota became controversial between the US and Canada, as more hake were found north of their previous northern limit (Methot and Dorn 1995). The total biomass of hake has declined steadily since the mid 1980s. Coast wide hake biomass surveys indicate that their northern limit has extended during the 1990s. In 1995 their limit was estimated around 51 °N, however, in 1998 it was estimated near Cape Spencer, Alaska (58°N) (Benson *et al*. 2002). The percentage of mature hake that migrate into Canadian waters has previously been estimated between 25 and 30% but since the early 1990s it has increased to approximately 40% (Benson *et al.* 2002) (Figure 5.8). Hake biomass off the

Southwest Coast of Vancouver Island was found to be strongly correlated with average temperature indicating that considerably more hake move into this area during warmer summers (Ware and McFarlane 1995). Thus these range extensions were found to occur more often during El Niño events (Dorn 1995).

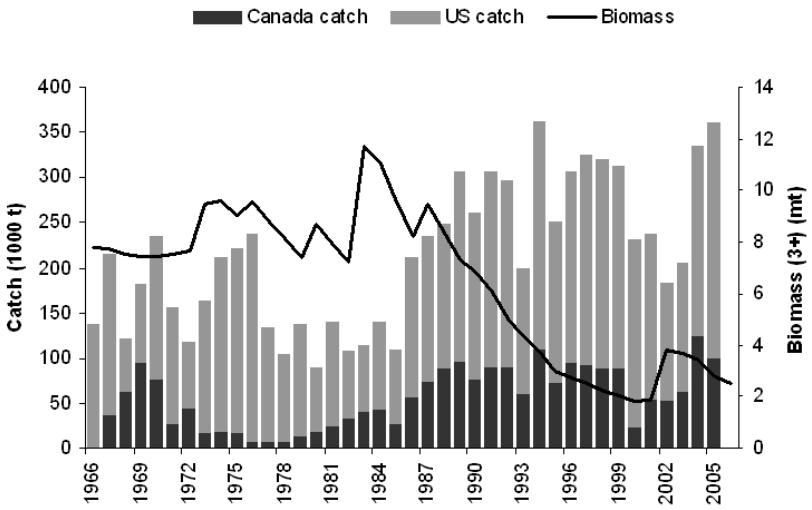



Figure 5.7. Commercial catch of hake for Canada and the United States and the biomass of age (3+) hake. Source: Helser *et al.* 2006 using biomass predictions from the BM model.

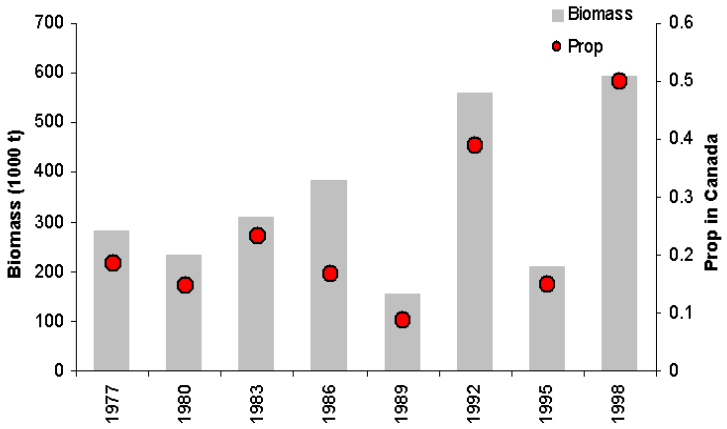



Figure 5.8. Biomass of hake and the proportion of the stock in the Canadian zone. Source: redrawn from Benson *et al.* 2002.

Hake have been found to prey on euphausiids, swimming crabs, pandalid shrimp, squid, schooling fish (herring and eulachon) and juvenile fishes in the Pacific Northwest (Buckley

and Livingston 1997). Euphausiids are the hake's primary food source, but as euphausiid productivity and biomass decrease, fish become of greater importance to hake (Rexstad and Pikitch 1986; Ware and McFarlane 1995). Also as hake grow the importance of fish to their diet becomes more important (Rexstad and Pikitch 1986). Eulachon have been found in the stomach contents of hake caught off the West Coast of Vancouver Island and off the coast of Oregon State (Livingston 1983; Rexstad and Pikitch 1986; Buckley and Livingston 1997). During the spring of 1980 eulachon comprised 22% of the hake's diet (hake sized 450-549 mm) and 79.6% of (550+ mm) sized hake off the coast of Oregon (Livingston 1983). In the summer of 1989 the hake's diet was dominated by fishes, of which herring were the most important, within the Columbia and Vancouver areas (43°00 N to 49°35'N) (Livingston 1983). "Other fish", which included eulachon and whitebait smelt (*Allosmerus elongates*), contributed 21% of the hake's diet in the Columbia area and 10% in the Vancouver area (Livingston 1983). However, the proportion of fish in a hake's diet can vary widely among years (Tanasichuk *et al.* 1991). Even though some species may comprise only a small percentage of the hake's diet their voracious feeding habits and large biomass, can have a significant impact on species below them in the food chain (Rexstad and Pikitch 1986).

During the 1983 El Niño event, 3 year old hake were common in Canadian waters where usually only older hake have been observed (Methot and Dorn 1995). Since 1994 there have been significant changes in juvenile and adult hake distribution, as the presence of juveniles along the Oregon and BC coasts suggests that spawning and juvenile settlement has spread northwards (Dorn *et al.* 1999). The summer distribution pattern of hake has also been shown to strongly overlap with the distribution of euphausiids (Ware and McFarlane 1995). Thus juvenile hake may be competing with eulachon for food resources which are common to both species (i.e., euphausiids). It has also been suggested that the shift of hake distribution northward may be related to the poleward subsurface flow of the California Current (Agostini *et al.* 2006). Hence in warm years when a stronger undercurrent is produced the migration of hake is assisted whereas a weaker flow may obstruct their migration. A stronger current would then benefit the smaller fish because they would be able to travel farther distances along the shelf break where food supply is high and expend less energy traveling within the current (Agostini *et al.* 2006). Thus, the higher numbers of juvenile hake in Canadian waters may be reducing the survival of juvenile eulachon populations by competing with them for

food sources. On the other hand, during La Niña conditions, there is apparently a southward shift in the percent of the hake's stock distribution and a smaller portion of the population found in Canadian waters, for example during 2001 (Helser *et al.* 2006).

There is also the possibility that the hake are not migrating back south and instead may be spawning in the north (Helser *et al.* 2006). The herring mortality from hake predation was studied in the La Perouse region, the Southwest Coast of Vancouver Island, using data from 1983 to 1991 (Ware and McFarlane 1995). During this time it was estimated that 208 t of herring were eaten daily or about 12,700 t during the months of August and September. This mortality was also found to increase during warmer summers. Thus, the increased northern migration of adult hake and their possible residency in Canadian waters may have increased hake's predation impact on juvenile eulachon since the mid-1990s. If hake predation on eulachon impacted offshore eulachon populations it would by and large affect the age 1+ and 2+ eulachon; that is the eulachon that return to spawn in the rivers 2 to 3 years later.

#### 5.3.3.2 Freshwater environment

Hypothesis 11 from the 2007 Workshop suggests that "climate-driven changes in freshwater hydrology are causing the decline in eulachon" (Pickard and Marmorek 2007). Changes to freshwater hydrology due to climate change have come about as snow packs and glaciers decrease in size thus changing runoff quantity and the overall timing of the glacier melt. However, the conclusion at the end of the workshop was that these changes were unlikely the primary factor driving the decline but may be a secondary factor preventing recovery (Pickard and Marmorek 2007). Also, there is some evidence that these changes may be affecting the timing of some eulachon runs.

As early as 1954, it was questioned as to whether the arrival timing of the Fraser River eulachon run could be related to the temperature of the river or to the adjacent ocean (Ricker *et al.* 1954). Some of the eulachon system's migration has reportedly begun earlier in recent years. For example, the Columbia River eulachon usually enter the river in January but more recently they have begun to enter in December (Bargmann 2002); in the Kemano River the migration has been getting earlier since 1988 (Lewis and Ganshorn 2004) and in recent years

the Copper River Delta eulachon in Alaska have shown a wide range in timing migration, "eulachon have been found as early as January and as late as June" (Joyce *et al.* 2004).

During the 2006 Nuxalk interviews, participants suggested that climate change was having an effect on the Bella Coola eulachon run timing. Previously, the weather during the eulachon season was referred to as "fierce" (019 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). "There'd be wind blowing, rain, hail and snow, all together, 'eulachon time', that's what they were waiting for" (019 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). But over the last ten years the weather in the Bella Coola valley has become increasingly milder. "When I was a kid, it was nothing to see three or four feet of snow on the ground, you don't even get it now and not cold" (043 Nuxalk Interviews 2006). "My theory is that it's global warming. We've got no more snow capped mountains or glaciers to keep the rivers cold" (Horace Walkus Nuxalk Interviews 2006). Studies of 100 or more glaciers indicate that glacier melting around the world has been pervasive during the last century (Meier *et al.* 2003). The erosion of mountain glaciers can provide the "most readily visible evidence of the effects of climate change" (Barry 2006). In addition, the erosion of glaciers is an important factor because water resources are affected in terms of runoff amount and the timing of the runoff (Barry 2006). The Columbia River eulachon migration has been reported to slow or to stop at temperatures colder than 4°C (WDFW & ODFW 2001), thus if warmer temperatures are reached sooner this may cause the migration to start early. The Nass River migration has been suggested to be dependent upon the severity of the winter, if there was an abnormally severe winter the run was delayed for a week (Langer *et al*. 1977). Kerstan Stahl, a speaker at the 2007 Eulachon workshop from the UBC Department of Geography, presented evidence that freshets throughout BC were coming earlier than in the past (Stahl 2007). Thus, the milder weather in recent years that has caused earlier spring freshets and may have triggered adult eulachon to enter the rivers sooner than in the past.

The majority of participants in the 2006 Nuxalk interviews reported that the earliest known observation of eulachon in the Bella Coola River was the second week of March. Of the twenty-nine participants, fifteen commented on the timing of the run and of these, 60% stated that the first wave of eulachon came in late March, followed by a second wave in mid April. Anthropologist Thomas McIlwraith described in detail "The taking and preparation of olachen" in his ethnographic study of the Nuxalk Indians from 1922 to 1924 (McIlwraith

Vol. II. 1948). In his account he reported that the Bella Coola eulachon usually arrived in late April. However, he also reported an even later run in a letter to a colleague in May 1922, "around the 1st of May came a huge run of oulachons," (Barker and Cole 2003). It was also noted more recently by Nuxalk fishers that the Bella Coola run had started to come earlier (010, 047 and Anfinn Siwallace Nuxalk Interviews 2006) and by Nuxalk elders in the 2002 Central Coast Eulachon Project (CCEP):

> For the last 20 years, eulachon have been coming up the Bella Coola at the end of March. Before that, they used to come in April, from April 10th on (007 and 010 in 2002 CCEP).
>
> It used to be April when we caught eulachons, and then it moved earlier and earlier as the weather got warmer and warmer. It's really early if the weather's warm (012 and 013 in 2002 CCEP).

The 2001-2006 Bella Coola eulachon assessment studies, which estimate the relative abundance of the Bella Coola eulachon spawning population, also catch adult eulachon in stationary gillnets to estimate the peak timing of the run (Table 5.3). During the 2006 study, the first adult was captured on February 20th with the peak capture on March 25th.

Table 5.3. Date of first and peak eulachon capture for the 2001-2006 Bella Coola eulachon assessment studies

| Year | Date of first capture | Date of peak capture |
|---|---|---|
| 2001 | 25-Mar | 25-Mar-01 |
| 2002 | 29-Mar | 03-Apr-02 |
| 2003 | 05-Mar | 27-Mar-03 |
| 2004 | 06-Mar | 23-Mar-04 |
| 2005 | 05-Mar | 05-Mar-05 |
| 2006 | 20-Feb | 25-Mar-06 |

Source: Lewis and O'Connor 2002; Winbourne and Dow 2002; Moody 2005, 2006; Nuxalk Fisheries 2005-06.

Historical descriptions of the peak of the Bella Coola eulachon run have also been found in two other sources 1) nineteen annual comments made in DFO fisheries officer's weekly reports from (1944-1989) and 2) a single comment in the "1998 Nuxalk Fisheries eulachon fishery report." These sources were used to plot the peak of the Bella Coola eulachon run against the year. The plot illustrated a decreasing trend of peak spawners over time with an $r^2$

value of 0.54 (Figure 5.9). This suggests that the peak of Bella Coola eulachon run has begun to arrive earlier in the last few decades.

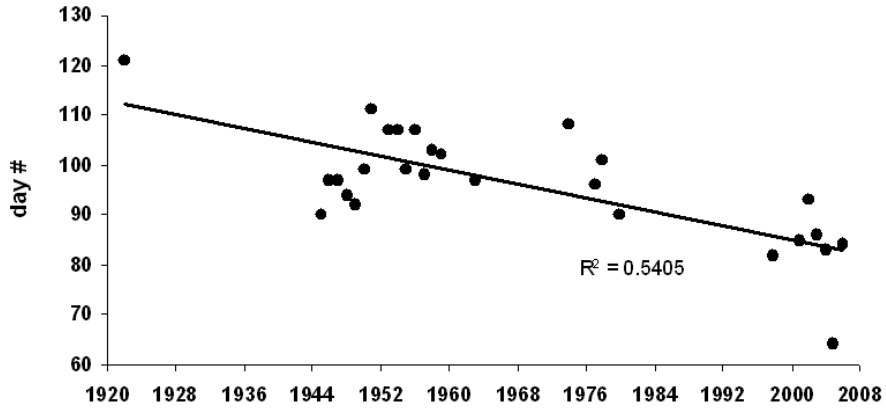



Figure 5.9. Peak of the Bella Coola eulachon run versus day number in the calendar year ($r^2$ value: 0.54).
Source: Lewis and O'Connor 2002; Winbourne and Dow 2002; Moody 2005, 2006; Nuxalk Fisheries 2005-06.

Although the run timing of eulachon returns in recent years appear to have been coming earlier in some rivers, the relationship of glacial runoff and its timing to eulachon abundance remains unknown.

#### 5.3.3.3 Estuarine environment

Hypothesis 12 from the 2007 Workshop suggested that "climate-driven changes in the estuary have caused a reduction in larvae growth and survival" (Pickard and Marmorek 2007). Larval surveys were conducted in Johnstone Strait and the Central BC Coast areas during 1994, 1996 and 1997 (McCarter and Hay 1999). The surveys indicated that larvae dispersed and mixed in these areas during an 18-20 week period approximately 4 weeks after adult spawning had occurred. The majority of larvae were captured in the surface waters between 0 and 15 m depth. During this period, it was also estimated that the larvae grew from approximately 3-4 mm to 30-35 mm. The timing and duration of eulachon larvae occurance was observed in the Bella Coola estuary from 2002 to 2006 during the 2002-2006 Bella Coola eulachon surveys (Winbourne and Dow 2002; Moody 2005, 2006; Nuxalk

Fisheries 2005-06). The earliest that the larvae were captured in the Bella Coola estuary was mid-March and the latest was mid-May. The largest numbers were captured during mid-Apri. Thus eulachon larvae may spend up to 2 months in this estuary. The long resident time of eulachon larvae in estuaries has been suggested as an important criterion for population configuration (McCarter and Hay 1999). Accordingly, if climate change affects the conditions of the estuary, eulachon larval growth and survival may be reduced. For example, it was suggested that the smaller spawning eulachon runs in "BC's deep, cold and remote inlets" may be more sensitive to ocean climate changes, "particularly those that impact freshwater discharge" because the majority of larvae are located in the upper layers of low saline water, eliminating most marine fishes and invertebrate predators (McCarter and Hay 1999). However, there is very limited information regarding the extent that eulachon use the estuary but it may be a very important part of their life cycle and key to their initial survival. Thus more information regarding the connection between eulachon larval survival and the estuary is needed.

### 5.3.4 Freshwater predators

Hypothesis 25 from the 2007 Workshop suggested that "mammal/bird/fish predation of spawners has been a significant factor contributing to the recent decline in eulachon" (Pickard and Marmorek, 2007). The harbour seal population decreased significantly in British Columbia during the mid 1960s as they were hunted for pelts and bounties between 1913 and 1964 (Olesiuk *et al*. 1990). However, after they were protected in 1970 in Canada and in 1972 in the United States, the populations began to increase (Olesiuk *et al*. 1990; Olesiuk, 1999). An aerial census was conducted on the lower Skeena River from 1977-1987 and in the Georgia Strait since the mid-1960s (Olesiuk *et al.* 1990). The estimated population in the lower Skeena River area increased from 520 in 1977 to 1,590 in 1987 and in the Strait of Georgia from 2,170 in 1973 to 15,810 in 1988. The total population in 1988 was estimated between 75,000 and 88,000 whereas in 1970 in was estimated between 9000 and 10500 individuals. The total BC population estimate was revised for 1996-1998 to 108,000 individuals (Olesiuk 1999). In Washington State the population increased 3-fold since 1978 and, 7 to 10-fold since 1970 (Jefferies *et al*. 2003). The total of all estimates from California to Alaska put the total range-wide harbour seal population for the mid-1990s in the order of 267,000 with approximately 40% occurring in BC and a large proportion of the BC

population in the Strait of Georgia (Olesiuk 1999). Nuxalk fishers have also noticed that in recent years there have been "hundreds" of dolphins in the Central Coast inlets and fjords where they were never seen before (006, 048 and Robert Andy Jr., Nuxalk Interviews 2006). Large numbers of predators are known to aggregate in the lower reaches of rivers during the beginning of eulachon runs (Marston *et al.* 2002; Sigler 2004). With large increases in predator numbers and decreased numbers of eulachon spawners, it is possible that these predators are having a large impact on depressed eulachon populations.

### 5.3.5 Comparisons (eulachon abundance vs. impact hypotheses)

To test a few of the impact hypotheses suggested in this chapter, Spearman's rank correlation was used to calculate the $r^2$ value between seven of the fifteen eulachon abundance status time-series estimated in Chapter 5 and: (1) shrimp catch data; (2) hake catch data; (3) hake 3+ biomass data; (4) Northern BC harbour seal and sea lion abundance; and (5) four climate indices (Table 5.5). Each data comparison was also tested using a 2 year lag and a 3 year lag for each of the eulachon abundance time-series. For example, shrimp catch data were compared with Columbia River eulachon abundance for the same year, then with Columbia River eulachon abundance two years later and finally with Columbia River eulachon abundance three years later. The results can be seen in Table 5.5.

Table 5.4. Correlation of determination (COD $r^2$ value) of in-river eulachon abundance with factors that have been suggested to affect in-river eulachon abundance
Negative (-) correlations are indicated with shades of grey, positive (+) correlations are indicated with shades of blue (darker shades of grey and blue denote a stronger linear association). Non-shaded squares with $r^2$ values indicate that no significant relationship was found to exist and the blank squares indicate that the relationship was not tested.

| | **RIVER** (Correlation of Determination (COD) $r^2$ value ) | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **FACTORS** | **Nass** | **Kemano** | **Bella Coola** | **Kingcome** | **Klinaklini** | **Fraser** | **Columbia** |
| Shrimp catch | 0.05 | 0.01 | 0.14 | 0.17 | 0.05 | 0.00 | 0.28 |
| Shrimp catch (2 yr lag) | 0.11 | 0.04 | 0.30 | 0.01 | 0.38 | 0.02 | 0.45 |
| Shrimp catch (3 yr lag) | 0.31 | 0.26 | 0.34 | 0.00 | 0.36 | 0.09 | 0.42 |
| Total hake catch | 0.08 | 0.08 | 0.13 | 0.17 | 0.13 | 0.00 | 0.17 |
| Total hake catch (2 yr lag) | 0.04 | 0.08 | 0.12 | 0.03 | 0.20 | 0.03 | 0.20 |
| Total hake catch (3 yr lag) | 0.01 | 0.19 | 0.29 | 0.03 | 0.24 | 0.08 | 0.20 |
| CAN hake catch | 0.09 | 0.00 | 0.04 | 0.23 | 0.06 | 0.01 | 0.27 |
| CAN hake catch (2 yr lag) | 0.01 | 0.01 | 0.00 | 0.11 | 0.18 | 0.00 | 0.18 |
| CAN hake catch (3 yr lag) | 0.02 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.01 | 0.22 | 0.00 | 0.12 |
| US hake catch | 0.05 | 0.10 | 0.14 | 0.08 | 0.13 | 0.00 | 0.10 |
| US hake catch (2 yr lag) | 0.03 | 0.10 | 0.17 | 0.00 | 0.11 | 0.05 | 0.16 |
| US hake catch (3 yr lag) | 0.01 | 0.20 | 0.37 | 0.02 | 0.19 | 0.12 | 0.16 |
| Seal/sea lion abun. | 0.04 | 0.00 | 0.10 | 0.46 | 0.05 | 0.01 | 0.36 |
| Seal/sea lion abun. (2 yr lag) | 0.00 | 0.02 | 0.10 | 0.33 | 0.21 | 0.03 | 0.35 |
| Seal/sea lion abun.(3 yr lag) | 0.01 | 0.11 | 0.08 | 0.13 | 0.30 | 0.01 | 0.33 |
| SST total | 0.01 | 0.00 | 0.12 | 0.03 | 0.00 | 0.15 | 0.03 |
| SST total (2 yr lag) | 0.02 | 0.02 | 0.10 | 0.11 | 0.00 | 0.02 | 0.04 |
| SST total (3 yr lag) | 0.11 | 0.00 | 0.07 | 0.08 | 0.01 | 0.01 | 0.01 |
| SST Apr-June | 0.02 | 0.01 | 0.12 | 0.15 | 0.02 | 0.24 | 0.04 |
| SST Apr-June (2 yr lag) | 0.00 | 0.19 | 0.09 | 0.23 | 0.00 | 0.03 | 0.01 |
| SST Apr-June (3 yr lag) | 0.06 | 0.04 | 0.06 | 0.29 | 0.00 | 0.02 | 0.00 |
| Hake biomass | 0.07 | 0.48 | 0.29 | 0.10 | 0.24 | 0.08 | 0.39 |
| Hake biomass (2 yr lag) | 0.10 | 0.51 | 0.22 | 0.00 | 0.21 | 0.08 | 0.46 |
| Hake biomass (3 yr lag) | 0.11 | 0.53 | 0.18 | 0.03 | 0.30 | 0.01 | 0.37 |
| UI north | 0.00 | 0.03 | 0.08 | | | | |
| UI north (2 yr lag) | 0.02 | 0.02 | 0.06 | | | | |
| UI north (3 yr lag) | 0.09 | 0.02 | 0.02 | | | | |
| UI central | | 0.00 | 0.06 | 0.01 | 0.00 | | |
| UI central (2 yr lag) | | 0.09 | 0.06 | 0.01 | 0.00 | | |
| UI central (3 yr lag) | | 0.08 | 0.02 | 0.06 | 0.02 | | |
| UI south | | | 0.03 | 0.00 | 0.04 | 0.01 | 0.03 |
| UI south (2 yr lag) | | | 0.03 | 0.00 | 0.01 | 0.05 | 0.04 |
| UI south (3 yr lag) | | | 0.01 | 0.00 | 0.01 | 0.02 | 0.04 |
| NOI | 0.03 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.21 | 0.02 |
| NOI (2 yr lag) | 0.02 | 0.02 | 0.06 | 0.29 | 0.00 | 0.02 | 0.06 |
| NOI (3 yr lag) | 0.12 | 0.07 | 0.03 | 0.18 | 0.01 | 0.01 | 0.00 |
| SOI | 0.00 | 0.02 | 0.04 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.12 | 0.03 |
| SOI (2 yr lag) | 0.00 | 0.01 | 0.01 | 0.30 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.10 |
| SOI (3 yr lag) | 0.04 | 0.03 | 0.01 | 0.16 | 0.02 | 0.00 | 0.02 |

#### 5.3.5.1 Shrimp catch

There was a negative correlation between five of the seven eulachon river's abundance tested and the shrimp catch data, with the exception of the Nass River which had a positive correlation ($r^2$ = 0.30). The positive correlation was found with a three year time lag in eulachon abundance. The strongest negative correlation was found between shrimp catch and the Columbia River eulachon abundance with a 2 year lag ($r^2$ = 0.46). The other rivers with negative correlations were the Kemano (3 year lag), the Bella Coola (all three tests) and the Klinaklini River (2 and 3 year lags).

#### 5.3.5.2 Hake catch

The hake data were divided into three data sets (Canadian hake catch, United States (US) hake catch and total hake catch = Canadian plus US) and tested separately. There was a negative correlation found between four of the seven rivers with at least one of the hake catch data sets. The Nass was the only river where a correlation was not found between eulachon abundance and hake catch. The Kemano River eulachon abundance did not have a correlation with the Canadian catch but had significant negative correlation with total ($r^2$= 0.19) and US ($r^2$= 0.2) hake catches after a three year lag in eulachon abundance. The Bella Coola River and the Fraser River abundances did not correlate with the Canadian hake catch. But the Bella Coola eulachon abundance did have a significant correlation with total hake catch and US hake catch. The highest $r^2$-values values were found with a three year lag in eulachon abundance (total: $r^2$= 0.29 and US: $r^2$= 0.37). The Kingcome River eulachon abundance only had one significant correlation and that was with the Canadian hake catch ($r^2$= 0.23). The Klinaklini River eulachon abundance had significant correlation with all three hake catch data sets. The most significant correlation was found with a 3-year lag in eulachon abundance and Canadian catch ($r^2$= 0.22); US catch ($r^2$= 0.19); total catch ($r^2$= 0.24). The Fraser River eulachon abundance only had a significant correlation with the US hake catch ($r^2$= 0.12). And finally the Columbia River had a significant correlation with all hake catch data sets. The correlations between the Columbia eulachon abundance, 2-year and 3 year lags, and hake total catch both had the exact same $r^2$-values (0.20). The correlations found between the Columbia eulachon abundance, 2-year and a 3 year lags, and hake US catch, also had the exact same $r^2$-values (0.16). And the highest $r^2$-value was found between the Canadian catch and the Columbia River eulachon abundance for the same year

($r^2$= 0.27). These positive relationships suggest that as hake catch increases eulachon abundance decreases and most significantly with a three year time lag in eulachon abundance.

#### 5.3.5.3 Hake biomass

A positive correlation was found between hake biomass and four of the seven river's eulachon abundance time-series. No correlations were found between the Nass, Kingcome and Fraser River's eulachon abundance status and hake biomass. The strongest correlation was found between hake biomass and Kemano River eulachon abundance with a three year lag ($r^2$ = 0.53). This also occurred between the Klinaklini River eulachon abundance with a three year lag ($r^2$ = 0.30). The Columbia River's eulachon abundance with a two year lag had its strongest correlation with hake biomass ($r^2$ = 0.46) and the Bella Coola River eulachon abundance had its strongest correlation with hake biomass for the same year ($r^2$ = 0.29).

#### 5.3.5.4 Seal and sea lion abundance

There was a negative correlation found between three of the seven rivers' eulachon abundance time-series (i.e., Kingcome, Klinaklini and Columbia Rivers) and seal and sea lion abundance. The strongest correlation was found between the Kingcome River eulachon abundance for the same year ($r^2$ = 0.46). This was also found using the Columbia River eulachon abundance for the same year ($r^2$ = 0.36). The strongest correlation for the Klinaklini River eulachon abundance was found with a three year lag in eulachon abundance ($r^2$ = 0.30).

#### 5.3.5.5 Climate indices

**(1) Sea Surface Temperature (SST)**

The average annual mean temperature and the mean temperature from April to June were used in this analysis. This data came from Amphitrite Point, located off the West Coast of Vancouver Island and closer to the more southern eulachon rivers (i.e., Fraser and Columbia Rivers). The average temperatures from April-June were used in this comparison because these months were used by Hay *et al*. (1997) when they compared temporal changes with Fraser River and Columbia River eulachon catches. Several weak significant negative relationships were found between SST and nearly all eulachon abundances, with the

exception of the Klinaklini and Columbia rivers. The Nass River eulachon abundance significantly correlated with mean annual SST when eulachon abundance had a three year lag ($r^2 = 0.11$). The Kemano River eulachon abundance also had only one significant correlation with SST (April-June) and this occurred when eulachon abundance had a two years lag ($r^2 = 0.19$). There were very similar correlations found between the Bella Coola River eulachon abundance and the two sets of SST data. Eulachon abundance for the same year with annual SST ($r^2 = 0.12$) and from April to June SST ($r^2 = 0.12$). Eulachon abundance for with a two year lag and annual SST ($r^2 = 0.10$) and from April to June SST ($r^2 = 0.09$). The Kingcome River eulachon abundance only had a significant correlation with the SST data from April to June. The highest correlation was found when eulachon abundance had a 3 year lag ($r^2 = 0.29$). The Fraser River eulachon abundance, for the same year, had a significant correlation with both sets of SST data (annual SST $r^2 = 0.15$; April-June SST $r^2 = 0.24$).

### (2) Upwelling Index (UI)

Only one significant correlation was found in the 36 comparison tests between eulachon abundance and the UI. There are several different UI's calculated along the Pacific Coast, thus for the northern rivers (i.e., Nass, Kemano and Bella Coola) the UI from 54°N 134°W was used; for the Central Coast rivers (i.e., Kemano, Bella Coola, Klinaklini and Kingcome) the UI from 51°N 131°W; and for the Southern rivers (i.e., Bella Coola, Klinaklini, Kingcome, Fraser and Columbia) the UI from 48°N 125°W was used. The Bella Coola River was included in all area comparisons, and the Klinaklini and Kingcome Rivers were used in both the central and southern area comparisons. This was done because it was unknown which areas best fit these rivers. Only the Bella Coola eulachon abundance was found to have a significant, yet weak, positive correlation ($r^2 = 0.08$) with the UI North data.

### (3) Northern Oscillation Index (NOI)

The NOI had a significant positive correlation with three of the seven rivers (i.e., Nass, Kingcome and Fraser). The Nass River eulachon abundance with a three year lag had a significant positive correlation with the NOI ($r^2 = 0.12$); the Kingcome River eulachon abundance, with a two year and three year lag, also had a significant positive correlation with the NOI ($r^2 = 0.29$ and 0.18); and the Fraser River eulachon abundance with no lag had a significant positive correlation with the NOI ($r^2 = 0.21$).

**(4) Southern Oscillation Index (SOI)**

The SOI had a significant positive correlation with three of the seven rivers abundance time-series (i.e., Kingcome, Fraser and Columbia). The Kingcome River eulachon abundance with two and three year lags had a significant positive correlation with the SOI ($r^2 = 0.30$ and $r^2 = 0.16$); the Fraser River abundance with no lag had a significant positive correlation with the SOI ($r^2 = 0.12$); and the Columbia River eulachon abundance with a two year lag, also had a significant positive correlation with the SOI ($r^2 = 0.10$). The Fraser River and Kingcome River's correlations with the SOI were very similar to those found with the NOI.

## 5.4 Conclusion

There is a high level of complexity in a natural ecosystem and it is not always possible to judge correctly what the critical factors in the life of a population of fish are. Several impact hypotheses have been suggested in this chapter to explain the recent decline of Pacific Coast eulachon populations. A few of these hypotheses have been compared with seven eulachon system's abundance estimates from Chapter 4. A negative correlation was found between eulachon abundance status for at least one of the seven rivers tested and shrimp catch, hake catch, seal/sea lion abundance and SST. This suggests that these factors negatively affect eulachon spawning abundance. A positive correlation was found between hake biomass and the climate indices UI, NOI and SOI and suggests that some eulachon system's abundance follows a similar pattern.

The Nass River eulachon abundance had few significant relationships between the factors tested. This may because the Nass River is located the farthest north of all the eulachon systems tested and thus may not be affected as in the same way as the more southern systems. Also the majority of these indicators are calculated from data south of the Nass River. For example, the majority of shrimp and hake catch are taken from the West Coast of Vancouver Island (WCVI) and the SST measurements are also collected from this area.

The correlation between shrimp catch was the strongest between Columbia River eulachon abundance with a two and three year lag. This is likely the result of the majority of the shrimp catch coming from the WCVI and the by-catch including 1+ and 2+ eulachon

juveniles. Thus affecting the eulachon returns to the Columbia River two to three years later. The Klinaklini and Bella Coola eulachon abundance status was also negatively affected two and three years later with the highest significant correlation occurring three years later. This is likely because the more northern eulachon populations are found to return to spawn between three and four years of age whereas the majority of Columbia River eulachon have been found to spawn after two years of age (Clarke *et al.* 2007). The negative relationship between hake catch and eulachon populations may occur because it is possible that eulachon are caught as bycatch in groundfish trawl fisheries.

The positive correlation between eulachon abundance and hake biomass does not support the hypothesis that hake have negatively impacted eulachon abundance by migrating further north. The positive relationship instead suggests that ocean conditions that positively benefit hake biomass may have also positively affected eulachon abundance one to three years later. This seems probable as the eulachon in the ocean are between one and three years of age with the majority 1+ and 2+ juveniles which would result in improved eulachon abundance two and three years later. However, the increased northern hake migrations have only been observed since the mid-1990s. Thus the time-series may be too short to reveal a negative correlation.

The seal and sea lion abundance was found to negatively affect the more southern rivers tested (i.e., Kingcome, Klinaklini and Columbia). This is surprising because the seal and sea lion data, estimates the northern BC seal and sea lion populations, thus the more northern rivers would be the ones expected to be negatively affected. But it is possible that there are similar seal/sea lion abundance trends throughout the Pacific Northwest Coast and it is these three rivers which are most highly affected by increases in marine mammals.

"What are the contributing factors to the decline?" This was the most common question asked during my interviews with the Nuxalk Nation community in 2006. "If we don't know that, all we'll continue to do is point fingers because if they do return we want to know what we can do better nowadays" (Anfinn Siwallace Nuxalk Interviews 2006). This chapter has provided a summary of the possible negative impacts to the eulachon and drawn attention to the factors which may have the largest impact to eulachon

populations. Future investigations preparing to study eulachon declines should focus on the factors highlighted in this chapter, particularly those which have displayed significant negative relationships with eulachon abundance.

# References


Agostini, V. N., Francis, R. C., Hollowed, A. B., Pierce, S. D., Wilson, C. & Hendrix, A. N. 2006. The relationship between Pacific hake (*Merluccius productus*) distribution and poleward subsurface flow in the California Current system. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Science* **63:** 2648-2659.

Ainsworth, C.H. 2006. Strategic marine ecosystem restoration in Northern British Columbia. Ph.D. Thesis, Resource Management and Environmental Studies, The University of British Columbia, Vancouver. 422 p.

Alaskan Department of Fish and Game. 2006. Shrimp fisheries in Alaska- harvests and status. Division of commercial fisheries. Retrieved January 20, 2007 from: http://www.adfg.state/ak.us/pubs/notebook/fish/eulachon.php

Alverson, D. & Hughes, S. 1995. Bycatch: from emotion to effective natural resource management. *In* Solving bycatch: consideration for today and tomorrow. Alaska Sea Grant College Program Report 96-03. Pages 13-28.

Bailey, K. M., Francis, R. C. & Stevens, P. R. 1982. The life history and fishery of Pacific Whiting, *Merluccius productus*. California Co-op Oceanic Fisheries Investigative Report **23**: 81-98.

Bargmann, G. 1988. Forage fish management plan. A plan for managing the forage fish resources and fisheries of Washington. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, Washington. 77 p.

Bargmann, G. 2000. *In* summary report for Fraser eulachon forum. Facilitated by Fraser Basin Council for the Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, New Westminister, British Columbia. 20 p.

Bargmann, G. 2002. Cited in Eulachon Conservation Society 2002.

Barker, J. & Cole, D. 2003. *At home with the Bella Coola Indians*. UBC press, Vancouver, British Columbia.

Barry, R. 2006. The status of research on glaciers and global glacier recession: a review. *Progress in Physical Geography* **30**(3): 285-306.

Beacham, T. D., Hay, D. E. & Le, K. D. 2005. Population structure and stock identification of eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*), an anadromous smelt, in the Pacific Northwest. *Marine Biotechnology* **7**(4): 363-372.

BEAK Consultants Limited (BEAK). 1991. Fish tainting potential of Eurocan effluent in the Kitimat River, British Columbia. Report prepared for EUROCAN PULP and PAPER CO., Kitimat, British Columbia.

BEAK Consultants Limited (BEAK). 1994. Kitimat River eulachon fishery and the effects of Eurocan effluent on eulachon flavour and egg survival- 1994. Report prepared for EUROCAN PULP and PAPER CO., Kitimat, British Columbia.

BEAK International Incorporated (BEAK). 1996. Comparison of taint detection thresholds between eulachon and rainbow trout. Report prepared for EUROCAN PULP and PAPER CO., Kitimat, BC.

BEAK International Incorporated (BEAK). 2000. Kitimat River eulachon tainting evaluation-2000. Report prepared for: EUROCAN PULP and PAPER CO., Kitimat, BC.

Beamish, R. J. 1993. Climate and exceptional fish production off the West Coast of North America. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Science* **50**: 2270-2291.

Beamish, R. J., Noakes, D. J., McFarlane, G. A., Klyashtorin, L., Ivanov, V. V. & Kurashov, V. 1999. The regime concept and natural trends in the production of Pacific salmon. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Science* **56**: 516-526.

Benson, A. J., McFarlane, G. A., Allen, S. E. & Dower, J. F. 2002. Changes in Pacific hake (*Merluccius productus*) migration patterns and juvenile growth related to the 1989 regime shift. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Science* **59**: 1969-1979.

Benson, A. J. & Trites, A. W. 2002. Ecological effects of regime shifts in the Bering Sea and eastern North Pacific Ocean. *Fish and Fisheries* **3**: 95-113.

Beschta, R. 1978. Long-term patterns of sediment production following road construction and logging in the Oregon coast range. *Water Resource Research* **14:** 1011-1016.

Boutillier, J. A., Bond, J. A. & Nguyen, H. 1999. Halibut bycatch in the British Columbia shrimp trawl fishery. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Canadian Science Advisory Secretariat Document 1999/122. 11 p.

Broadhurst, M. K. 2000. Modifications to reduce bycatch in prawn trawls: A review and framework for development. *Review in Fish Biology and Fisheries* **10**: 27-60.

Broadhurst, M. K., Suuronen, P. & Hulme, A. 2006. Estimating collateral mortality from towed fishing gear. *Fish and Fisheries* **7**: 180-218.

Brothers, G. 1996. Shrimp selectivity. Prepared for workshop on responsible fishing: new and selective harvesting technologies, December 4 & 5. Department of Fisheries and Oceans, St. John's, Newfoundland.

Buckley, T. W. & Livingston, P. A. 1997. Geographic variation in the diet of Pacific Hake, with a note on cannibalism. California Co-op Oceanic Fisheries Investigative Report **38:** 53-62.

Clarke, A. D., Lewis, A., Telmer, K. H. & Shrimpton, J. M. 2007. Life history and age at maturity of an anadromous smelt, the eulachon *Thaleicthys pacificus* (Richardson). *Journal of Fish Biology* **71:** 1-15.

Clarke, J. & Boehner, S. 2003. 2002 Shrimp trawl fishery review. Prepared for the Pacific Coast Shrimpers' Cooperative Association and the Department of Fisheries and Oceans by Archipelago Marine Research Ltd. 23 p.

Clarke, J. & Huston, W. 1998. 1997 Shrimp trawl fishery review. Prepared for the Pacific Coast Shrimpers' Cooperative Association and the Department of Fisheries and Oceans by Archipelago Marine Research Ltd. 28 p.

Clayton, W. L. 2001. Securing the future sustainability of the BC shrimp-by-trawl fishery through evaluation of bycatch reduction technologies. Pacific Coast Shrimpers' Cooperative Association, Victoria, British Columbia. 33 p.

Clayton, W. L. 2002. Improvement in bycatch reduction through reconfiguration of BRD's in the BC Shrimp-by-trawl industry (reducing the environmental impacts of fishing activity). Pacific Coast Shrimpers' Cooperative Association, Victoria, British Columbia. 59 p.

Conners, M. E. & Guttormsen, M. A. 2005. Appendix: forage fish species in the Gulf of Alaska. *In* stock assessment and fishery evaluation report for the groundfish resources of the Gulf of Alaska. North Pacific Fishery Management Council. Pages 928-956.

Cooper, C. 2000. Cited in Hay and McCarter 2000.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans. 1969-1973. Fisheries Inspectors annual narrative reports. Butedale sub-district. Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Canada. Kitimat, British Columbia.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 1997. News release: DFO announces closure of shrimp trawl fishery April 1. NR-PR-97-07E

Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 1999a. Shrimp trawl fishery off the West Coast of Canada. DFO Science Stock Status Report C6-08.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 1999b. A policy for selective fishing in Canada's Pacific fisheries. A new direction: the third in a series of papers from Fisheries and Oceans Canada. May. 34 p.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 2001. Pacific region integrated fisheries management plan: shrimp trawl- April 1, 2001 to March 31, 2002.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 2006. 2005 Pacific region status of the oceans. DFO science ocean status report 2006/001.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada 2007a. West Coast Vancouver Island and Central Coast juvenile eulachon length frequency. Retrieved January 30, 2008, from http://www.pac.dfo-mpo.gc/sci/herring/herspawn/pages/ocean1_e.htm

Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 2007b. Commercial landings-sea fisheries-shrimp (1972-2006). DFO statistical services. Retrieved January 30, 2008, from: http://www.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/communic/statistics/commercial/landings/index_e.htm

Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 2007c. Pacific region integrated fisheries management plan: shrimp trawl- April 1, 2007 to March 31, 2008.

Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 2008. Results to West Coast Vancouver Island (WCVI) and Queen Charlotte Sound shrimp surveys. Retrieved January 18, 2008 from: http://www-ops2.pac.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/xnet/content/shellfish/shrimp/Surveys/surveys.htm

Derksen, G. 1981. Environmental review of the Eurocan pulp mill at Kitimat, B.C. Environment Canada, Environmental Protection Service, Pacific Region. Regional program report no. 81-27. 65 p.

Dorcey, A. 1976. *The uncertain future of the lower Fraser*. Westwater Research Centre, University of British Columbia Press, Vancouver, British Columbia.

Dorn, M. W. 1995. The effects of age composition and oceanographic conditions on the annual migration of Pacific Whiting, *Merluccius Productus*. California Co-op Oceanic Fisheries Investigative Report **36**: 97-105.

Dorn, M. W., Saunders, M. W., Wilson, C. D., Guttormsen, M. A., Cooke, K., Kieser, R. & Wilkins, M. E. 1999. Status of the coastal Pacific hake/whiting stock in US and Canada in 1998. Canadian Stock Assessment Secretariat, Research Document 99/90. 104 p.

Duxbury, A. C. & Duxbury, A. B. 1997. *An introduction to the world's oceans* (5th edition). Wm. C. Brown Publishers, USA, Dubuque, IA.

EcoMetrix Incorporated (EcoMetrix). 2006. Summary of 2006 eulachon study results and 2007 study design. Report prepared for EUROCAN PULP and PAPER CO., Kitimat, British Columbia.

Emmett, R. L., Brodeur, R. D., Miller, T. W., Pool, S. S., Krutzikowsky, G. K., Bentley, P. J. & Mccrae, J. 2005. Pacific sardine (*Sardinops sagax*) abundance, distribution, and ecological relationships in the Pacific Northwest. California Co-op Oceanic Fisheries Investigative Report **46**: 122-143.

Eulachon Conservation Society. 2002. Eulachon Conservation Society workshop minutes, December 5-6, 2002. Prince Rupert, British Columbia. 24 p.

Eulachon Research Council. 1998. Eulachon Research Council, March 1998. Minutes summarizing meetings in Terrace and Simon Fraser University, Vancouver, BC. Informal joint report prepared jointly by BC Forests and Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 16 p.

Eulachon Research Council. 2000. Eulachon Research Council, May 2000. Minutes summarizing meetings in New Westminister, Terrace and Bella Coola, BC. Informal joint report prepared jointly by BC Forests and Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 24 p.

Fraser River Estuary Management Program. 2006. Monitoring the estuary management plan, 2006: backgrounder. September. Vancouver, British Columbia.

Francis, R. C. & Hare, S. R. 1994. Decadal scale regime shifts in the large marine ecosystems of the north-east pacific: a case for historical science. *Fish Oceanography* **3**:279-291.

Geiger, S. 1972. Report of an investigation of the tainting of the flesh of sockeye salmon through exposure of the fish to pulp mill effluent. Environment Canada.

G3 Consulting Ltd. 2003. Guidebook: environmentally sustainable log handling facilities in British Columbia. Report prepared for Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Habitat and Enhancement branch, Pacific and Yukon region, Burnaby, British Columbia. 72 p + appendices.

Hannah, R. W. & Jones, S. A. 2007. Effectiveness of bycatch reduction devices (BRDs) in the ocean shrimp (*Pandalus jordani*) trawl fishery. *Fisheries Research* **85**: 217-225.

Hannah, R. W., Jones, S. A. & Hoover, V. 1996. Evaluation of fish excluder technology to reduce finfish bycatch in the ocean shrimp trawl fishery. Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife, information report series no. 96-4. 46 p.

Harbo, R. 2004. History of management actions in the shrimp trawl fishery (draft). Department of Fisheries and Oceans. 6 p.

Hare, S. R. & Mantua, N. J. 2000. Empirical evidence for North Pacific regime shifts in 1977 and 1989. *Progress in Oceanography* **47:** 103-145.

Hart, L. & McHugh, J. 1944. The smelts of British Columbia. *Fisheries Research Board of Canada* **64:** 10-14.

Hartmann, G., Scrivener, J. & Miles, M. 1996. Impacts of logging in Carnation Creek, a high-energy coastal stream in British Columbia, and their implication for restoring fish habitat. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Science* **53** (Suppl. 1): 237-251.

Hay, D. E., Boutillier, J., Joyce, M. & Langford, G. 1997. The eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*) as an indicator species in the North Pacific. *In* forage fishes in marine ecosystems, pages 509-530. Proceedings of the Wakefield fisheries symposium, Alaska Sea Grant College Program 97-01. Fairbanks: University of Alaska.

Hay, D. E. & McCarter, P. 2000. Status of the eulachon *Thaleichthys pacificus* in Canada. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Canadian Stock Assessment Secretariat, Research Document 2000/145. 92 p.

Hay, D. E., Southey, H., Clarke, J., Parker, G. & McCarter, P. 1999. Catch composition of British Columbia shrimp trawls and preliminary estimation of bycatch- with emphasis on eulachons. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Canadian Science Advisory Secretariat Research Document 1999/26. 40 p.

Helser, T. E., Fleischer, G. W., Martell, S. & Taylor, N. 2006. Stock assessment of Pacific hake (whiting) in US and Canadian waters in 2006.

High, W. L. & Lusz, L. D. 1965. Underwater observations on fish in an off-bottom trawl. *Journal Fisheries Research Board of Canada* **23**(1): 153-155.

Hilborn, R. & Walters, C. J. 1992. *Quantitative fisheries stock assessment: choice, dynamics and uncertainty*. Chapman and Hull, New York.

Holtby, L. 1988. Effects of logging on stream temperatures in Carnation Creek, British Columbia, and associated impacts on the coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*). *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Science* **45:** 502-515.

Isaacs, J. D. 1975. Some ideas and frustrations about fishery science. California Co-op Oceanic Fisheries Investigative Report **18**: 34-43.

Jackson, D. R. 2006. Trawl survey of shrimp and forage fish in Alaska's Westward Region, 2005. Alaska Department of Fish and Game, fishery management report no. 06-58, Anchorage. 40 p.

Jefferies, S. 1986. Seasonal movements of population trends of harbour seals (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*) in the Columbia River and adjacent waters of Washington and Oregon: 1976-82. Final Report Marine Mammal Commission no. MM2079357-5. 41 p.

Jennings, S., Kaiser, M. & Reynolds, J. 2001. *Marine fish ecology*. Blackwells, Oxford.

Johnston Jr., S.A. 1981. Estuarine dredge and fill activities: a review of impacts. *Environmental Management* **5**(5): 427-440.

Joyce, T. L., Lambert, M. B. & Moffitt, S. 2004. Eulachon subsistence harvest opportunities final report. Office of Subsistence Management, United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Cordova, Alaska.

Klyashtorin, L. B. 1997. Global climate cycles and Pacific forage fish stock fluctuations. *In* forage fishes in marine ecosystems, pages 545-557. Proceedings of the Wakefield fisheries symposium, Alaska Sea Grant College Program 97-01. Fairbanks, University of Alaska.

Kuhn, R. 2000. Shrimp fishery on Central Coast threatens oolichan run. *Coast Mountain News.* Bella Coola, British Columbia. March 16.

Langer, O.E., Shepherd, B.G. & Vroom, P.R. 1977. Biology of the Nass River eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*). Department of Fisheries and Environment Canada, technical report series no. PAC/T-77-10. 56 p.

Larson, K. W. & Moehl, C. E. 1990. Entrainment of anadromous fish by hopper dredge at the mouth of the Columbia River. *In* Effects of dredging on anadromous Pacific Coast fishes, pages 102-112. Workshop proceedings, September 8-9, 1988. Edited by C.A. Simenstad. Seattle: University of Washington Sea Grant Program.

Lasalle, M. W. 1990. Physical and chemical alterations associated with dredging: an overview. *In* Effects of dredging on anadromous Pacific Coast fishes, pages 1-12. Workshop proceedings, September 8-9, 1988. Edited by C.A. Simenstad. Seattle: University of Washington Sea Grant Program.

Lees, K., Pitois, S., Scott, C., Frid, C., Mackinson, S. 2006. Characterizing regime shifts in the marine environment. *Fish and Fisheries* **7**: 104-127

Lewis, A.F.J. & Ganshorn, K. 2004. Alcan's Kemano River eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*) monitoring program: Haisla fishery monitoring 2004. Consultant's report prepared for Alcan Primary Metal Ltd., Kitimat, British Columbia.

Lewis, A. F.J., McGurk, M.D., & Galesloot, M.G. 2002. Alcan's Kemano River eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*) monitoring program 1988-1998. Consultant's report prepared by Ecofish Research Ltd. For Alcan Primary Metal Ltd., Kitimat, British Columbia. 136 p.

Lewis, A. F. J., and O'Connor, P. J. 2002. Bella Coola eulachon study 2001. Consultant's report prepared by Ecofish Research Ltd. for Nuxalk Fisheries Commission, Bella Coola, B.C.

Livingston, P. 1983. Food habits of Pacific whiting, *Merluccius productus*, off the West Coast of North America, 1967 and 1980. *Fisheries Bulletin* **81**: 629-636.

Lower Columbia Fish Recovery Board. 2004. Lower Columbia Salmon Recovery and Fish & Wildlife Subbasin Plan.

MacCall, A., Klingbeil, R. & Methot, R. 1985. Recent increased abundance and potential productivity of Pacific mackerel (*Scomber japonicus*). California Co-op Oceanic Fisheries Investigative Report **26**: 119-129.

Mackas, D., Thomson, R. E. & Galbraith, M. 2001. Changes in the zooplankton community of the British Columbia continental margin, 1985-1999, and their covariation with oceanographic conditions. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Science* **58:** 685-702.

Mantua, N. J., Hare, S. R., Zhang, Y., Wallace, J. M. & Francis, R. C. 1997. A Pacific interdecadal climate oscillation with impacts on salmon production. *Journal of the American Meteorological Society* **78**: 1069-1079.

Marston, B. H., Willson, M. F. & Gende, S. M. 2002. Predator aggregations during eulachon *Thaleichthys pacificus* spawning runs. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* **231**: 220-239.

McCarter, P.B. & Hay, D. E. 1999. Distribution of spawning eulachon stocks in the Central Coast of British Columbia as indicated by larval surveys. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Canadian Stock Assessment Secretariat Document 99/177. 64 p.

McFarlane, G. A. & Beamish, R. J. 2001. The re-occurrence of sardines off British Columbia characterizes the dynamic nature of regimes. *Progress in Oceanography* **49**: 151-165.

McFarlane, G. A., King, J. R. & Beamish, R. J. 2000. Have there been recent changes in climate? Ask the fish. *Progress in Oceanography* **47**: 147-169.

McIlwraith, T. 1948. *The Bella Coola Indians. Vol. 1 & 2*. University of Toronto Press, Toronto.

McLaren, P. & Ren, P. 1995. Fraser River Action Plan. Sediment transport and its environmental implications in the lower Fraser River and Fraser Delta. DOE FRAP 1995-03. Prepared by GeoSea Consulting Ltd., Salt Spring Island, British Columbia, for Environment Canada. 113 p.

McLean, J. E., Hay, D. E. & Taylor, E. B. 1999. Marine population structure in an anadromous fish: life-history influences patterns of mitochondrial DNA variation in the eulachon, *Thaleichthys pacificus*. *Molecular Ecology* **8**: S143-S158.

McLean, J. E. & Taylor, E. B. 2001. Resolution of population structure in a species with high gene flow: microsatellite variation in the eulachon (Osmeridae: *Thaleichthys pacificus*). *Marine Biology* **139**: 411-420.

McNair, P. L. 1971. Descriptive notes on the Kwakiutl manufacture of eulachon oil. *Syesis* **4**: 169-177.

Meier, M. F., Dyurgerov, M. B. & McCabe, G. J. 2003. The health of glaciers: recent changes in glacier regime. *Climate Change* **59**: 123-135.

Methot, R. D. & Dorn, M. W. 1995. Biology and fisheries of North Pacific hake (*M. productus*). *In Hake: biology, fisheries and market.* Edited by Alheit, J. & Pitcher, T. J. Chapman and Hall, London. Pages 389-414.

Mikkelson, P., Paasivirta, J., Rogers, I. & Ikonomou, M. 1996. Studies on eulachon tainting problem: analyses of tainting and toxic aromatic pollutants. *In Environmental fate and effects of pulp and paper mill effluents*. Edited by Servos M. R., Munkittrick K. R., Carey J. H., and Van Der Kraak G. J. St. Lucie Press: Delray Beach, FL. Pages 327-333.

Miller, A. J., Cayan, D. R., Barnett, T. P., Graham, N. E. & Oberhuber, J. M. 1994. The 1997-77 climate shift of the Pacific Ocean. *Oceanography* **7**(1): 21-26.

Moody, M. F. 2005. Unpublished. Bella Coola eulachon study 2003 final report. Nuxalk Nation Fisheries Department, Bella Coola, British Columbia.

Moody, M. F. 2006. Unpublished. Bella Coola eulachon study 2004 draft report. Nuxalk Nation Fisheries Department, Bella Coola, British Columbia.

Naito, B. 1998. Cited in Eulachon Research Council 1998.

National Marine Fisheries Service. 2008. California commercial landings. Southwest Regional Office, NOAA. Retrieved January 20, 2008 from: http://swr.nmfs.noaa.gov/fmd/bill/landings.htm

Nicholson, M. 2002. Cited in Eulachon Conservation Society 2002.

Northwest Hydraulic Consultants. 2006. Lower Fraser River hydraulic model. Final report prepared for the Fraser Basin Council, December. Vancouver, British Columbia. 135 p.

Nuxalk Fisheries. 2005-2006. Unpublished Bella Coola eulachon assessment data. Nuxalk Nation, Bella Coola, British Columbia.

Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2006. Pink shrimp: shrimp landings. Marine Resources Program (MRP) shellfish project: fish division. Retrieved January 17, 2007, from: http://www.dfw.state.or.us/MRP/shellfish/commercial/shrimp_landings.asp

Olesiuk, P. F. 1990. Recent trends in the abundance of harbour seals, (*Phoca vitulina*) in the Strait of Georgia, British Columbia. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Science* **47**(5): 992-1003.

Olesiuk, P. F. 1999. An assessment of the status of harbour seals (*Phoca vitulina*) in British Columbia. . Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Canadian Science Advisory Secretariat Research Document 93/33. 71 p.

Olsen, N., Boutillier, J. & Convey, L. 2000. Estimated bycatch in the British Columbia shrimp trawl fishery. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Canadian Science Advisory Secretariat Research Document 2000/168. 14 p.

Orr, U. 1984. Eulachon sampling on the lower Nass River in relation to log handling. Unpublished data report. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. Prince Rupert, British Columbia or Vancouver, British Columbia. 25 p.

Pickard, D. & Marmorek, D. R. 2007. A workshop to determine research priorities for eulachon, workshop report. Prepared by ESSA Technologies Ltd., Vancouver British Columbia for Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Nanaimo, British Columbia. 58 p.

Rexstad, E. A. & Pikitch, E. K. 1986. Stomach contents and food consumption estimates of Pacific hake, *Merluccius productus*. *Fisheries Bulletin* **84**(4): 947-956.

Ricker, W. E., Manzer, D. F., and Neave, E. A. 1954. The Fraser River eulachon fishery, 1941-1953. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, manuscript report no. 583. 35 p.

Roemmich, D. & McGowan, J. 1995. Climatic warming and the decline of zooplankton in the California Current. *Science* **267**: 1324-1326.

Rogers, I. H., Birtwell, I. K. & Kruzynski, G. M. 1990. The Pacific eulachon (*Thaleichthys Pacificus*) as a pollution indicator organism in the Fraser River estuary, Vancouver, British Columbia. *Science of the Total Environment* **97/98**: 713-727.

Rutherford, D., Barton, L., Gillespie, G. & Boutillier, J. 2004. Utility of historical catch data in setting reference points for the British Columbia shrimp by trawl fishery. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Canadian Science Advisory Secretariat Research Document 2004/026. 49 p.

Ryan, T. 2002. Cited in Eulachon Conservation Society 2002

Samis, S. 1977. Sampling eulachon eggs in the Fraser River using a submersible pump. Water Quality Division Habitat Protection Directorate, Department of Fisheries and the Environment Canada, Pacific Region, technical report no. PAC T-77-18. 10 p.

Sandheinrich, M. B. & Atchison, G. J. 1986. Environmental effects of dikes and revetments on large riverine systems. Technical report E86-5. U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS.

Scrivener, J. & Brownlee, M. 1989. Effects of forest harvesting on spawning gravel and incubation survival of chum (o*ncorhynchus keta*) and coho salmon (*o.kisutch*) in Carnation Creek, British Columbia. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Science* **46**: 681-695.

Sigler, M. F., Womble, J. N. & Vollenweider, J. J. 2004. Availability to Steller sea lions (*Eumetopias jubatus*) of a seasonal prey resource: a prespawning aggregation of eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*). *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Science* **61**: 1475-1484.

Simard, Y., Ladurantaye, R. d. & Therriault, J.-C. 1986. Aggregation of eupahusiids along a coastal shelf in an upwelling environment. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* **32**: 203-215.

Smith, W. E. & Saalfeld, R. W. 1955. Studies on Columbia River smelt, *Thaleichthys pacificus* (Richardson). Washington Department of Fisheries, Fisheries Research Papers **1**(3): 3-26.

Spangler, E. A. K. 2002 The ecology of eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*) in Twentymile River, Alaska. M.S. Thesis. Fairbanks: University of Alaska.

Stables, T. B., Perrin, C. J. & Rosenau, M. L. 2005. Acoustic and trawl surveys to locate eulachon aggregations in the lower Fraser River, British Columbia. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* **25**: 675-688.

Stahl, K. 2007. Streamflow changes in BC: impact of climate change and glacier retreat. Presentation at the February 2007 Workshop to determine research priorities for eulachon (Pickard and Marmorek 2007)

Stevens, B. 2001. Eulachon research and effluent treatment pilot plant studies 2001. Report prepared for: EUROCAN PULP and PAPER CO., Kitimat, British Columbia.

Surronen, P., Perez-Comas, J. A., Lehtonen, E. & Tschernij, V. 1996a. Size-related mortality of herring (*Clupea harengus* L.) escaping through a rigid sorting grid and trawl codend meshes. *ICES Journal of Marine Science* **53**: 691-700.

Suuronen, P., Erickson, D. L. & Orrensalo, A. 1996b. Mortality of herring escaping from plagic trawl codends. *Fisheries Research* **25:** 305-321.

Tanasichuk, R. 1997. Influence of biomass and ocean climate on the growth of Pacific herring (*Clupea pallasi*) from the Southwest Coast of Vancouver Island. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Science* **54**: 2782-2788.

Tanasichuk, R., Ware, D., Shaw, W. & McFarlane, G. 1991. Variations in diet, daily ration, and feeding periodocity of Pacific hake (*Merluccius productus*) and spiny dogfish (*Squalus acanthias*) off the lower West Coast of Vancouver Island. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Science* **48**: 2118-2128.

Tirrul-Jones, J. L. 1985. Kitamaat village- Kitimat centennial museum archeological research project 1984: survey and mapping of I.R. 1. Submitted to Kitamaat Village Band Council and Kitimat Centennial Museum Association.

Tutty, B.D. & Morrison, J.A. 1976. Dredge monitoring capture data and entrainment estimates during the 1976 juvenile migration in the lower Fraser River. Technical paper series PAC/T-76-21. Habitat Protection Directorate, Pacific Region, Environment Canada.

Ware, D. M., and McFarlane, G. A. 1989. Fisheries production domains in the northeast Pacific Ocean. *In* Effects of ocean variability on recruitment and an evaluation of parameters used in stock assessment models. Edited by R. J. Beamish, and G. A. McFarlane. Canadian Special Publications in Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences no. 108: 359-379.

Ware, D. M. & McFarlane, G. A. 1995. Climate-induced changes in Pacific hake (*Merluccius productus*) abundance and pelagic community interactions in the Vancouver Island upwelling system. *In* Climate change and northern fish populations. Edited by R.J. Beamish. Canadian Special Publication in Fisheries Aquatic Science no. 121: 509-521

Ware, D. M. & Thomson, R. E. 1991. Link between long-term variability in upwelling and fish production in the Northeast Pacific Ocean. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Science* **48**: 2296-2306.

Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife & Oregon Department of Fish Wildlife. 2001. Washington and Oregon eulachon management plan. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife: Olympia. 32 p.

Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2008. Washington State coastal pink shrimp fishery regulations and information. Retrieved January 17, 2008 from: http://wdfw.wa.gov/fish/shelfish/shrimp/comm/index.html

Wessa, P. 2008. Free statistics software. Office for research development and education, version 1.1.22-r4. Retrieved January 18, 2008 from: http://www.wessa.net/

Winbourne, J. L. & Dow, S. 2002. Unpublished. 2002 Central Coast eulachon project: final report of field surveys. Consultant's report prepared for the Nuxalk Fisheries Department. Bella Coola, British Columbia.

Zamon, J. E. & Welch, D. W. 2005. Rapid shift in zooplankton community composition on the northeast Pacific shelf during the 1998-1999 El Niño- La Niña event. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Science* **62:** 133-144.

**Personal Communication**

Glendale, Fred. 2007. Member of the Da'naxda'xw/Awaetlala Nation, Knight Inlet, BC. Conversation: July 8, 2007

# 6 Conclusion

## 6.1 Discussion

Eulachon populations have been declining over the past few decades especially since the mid-1990s (Hay and McCarter 2000). However, there are a few exceptions: there are still healthy populations in the central Alaska (e.g., Copper River and Cook Inlet Rivers) and in the Nass River, northern British Columbia, which supports an annual fishery by the Nisga'a First Nation. Historically, there has been poor documentation on eulachon populations and eulachon fisheries. Thus, the objectives of this thesis were to provide a summary of past and present eulachon fisheries and provide a series of coast-wide annual eulachon population abundance estimates which could be used to analyze the possible impacts to eulachon populations.

## 6.2 Strengths, weaknesses and future work

There were three main analyses contained in this thesis, an estimation of eulachon catch from past eulachon grease production (Chapter 2), an estimation of past eulachon abundance using a fuzzy logic expert system (Chapter 4) and a comparison of these estimates of abundance status with several impact hypotheses (Chapter 5).

The interviews with the Nuxalk Nation community (Chapter 3) demonstrated that traditional ecological knowledge (TEK) and local ecological knowledge (LEK) information are very useful to acquire knowledge and an understanding of a fishery, in addition to making estimations of past eulachon catches and abundance trends possible. Thus this methodology could be applied in other coastal communities with First Nation eulachon fisheries.

The fuzzy expert system used in Chapter 4 was found to be a useful tool for estimating the abundance status of certain eulachon populations. Although eulachon data were limited, it was possible to combine the available quantitative and qualitative information to gain an understanding of the eulachon abundance trends for several populations. Many of the

abundance index estimations could be improved if more information was available from each region. Interviews using the methodology from Chapter 3, could be conducted with First Nations and local experts to obtain information on past run sizes and to estimate past catches. The fuzzy expert system was built with the assumption that more information would, or could, be added to its existing data base, so that future estimations could be made and past estimations could be improved upon. A more extensive correlation analysis (Chapter 5) could be conducted with improved eulachon abundance status estimates and with additional climate indices that were not tested. A multiple step regression could also be conducted to determine which factors contribute and by how much, to specific eulachon population declines. Howver, the correlation analysis that was conducted in Chapter 5 should draw attention to the factors which may have the most significant impact to eulachon populations. These findings should be addressed when future investigations prepare to study eulachon declines.

This project provides historical background of the main eulachon areas and highlights vulnerable eulachon populations. This project also provides methodology (Chapter 3) for areas with the least historical information to improve the current abundance status estimates from Chapter 4. Eulachon assessment and monitoring programs could then be established in areas where the historical background of an eulachon population is known so that present biomass estimates would have baseline data to relate findings to.

The status of the eulachon is an important topic for fisheries management. The eulachon is a key component to the culture and traditions of many First Nations communities thus the severe decline of some eulachon populations has devastated their communities. The health of some predator populations which depend on the eulachon as a source of food, for example, avian predators, marine mammals (Sigler *et al.* 2004) and sturgeon (*Acipenser transmontanus*) (Eulachon Research Council 1998) may be negatively affected by poor eulachon returns. Also fisheries managers who manage commercial fisheries, such as the BC shrimp trawl fishery, need to know the status of certain eulachon populations, as fishing opportunities are contingent on the strength of eulachon returns (DFO 2006). And finally the decline in eulachon populations may be an indicator of changes in the ocean climate.

# References

Department of Fisheries and Oceans. 2006. Pacific region integrated fisheries management plan- shrimp April 1, 2006 to March 31, 2007. Canada. 26 p.

Eulachon Research Council. 1998. Eulachon Research Council, March 1998. Minutes summarizing meetings in Terrace and Simon Fraser University, Vancouver, BC. Informal joint report prepared jointly by BC Forests and Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 16 p.

Hay, D. E. & McCarter, P. 2000. Status of the eulachon *Thaleichthys pacificus* in Canada. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Canadian Stock Assessment Secretariat, Research Document 2000/145. 92 p.

Sigler, M. F., Womble, J. N. & Vollenweider, J. J. 2004. Availability to Steller sea lions (*Eumetopias jubatus*) of a seasonal prey resource: a prespawning aggregation of eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*). *Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Science* **61**: 1475-1484.

# Appendices

Appendix 1. All sources of eulachon catch, CPUE, comments on fishing effort and annual run strength for the Nass River

| Year | Source |
|---|---|
| **1878-1916**<br>**1919-1920**<br>**1924**<br>**1926-1927**<br>**1929-1932**<br>**1935** | • Commercial catch data (1881-1940) adapted from Figure 12 page 14<br><br>Clemens, W. & Wilby, G. 1946. Fishes of the Pacific Coast of Canada (1st edition). Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin no.68. 368 p. |
| **1929** | • First Nation's catch data (1929)<br><br>Department of Marine and Fisheries and Dominion Bureau of Statistics. 1929. Fisheries Statistics, sub district no. 8 – Naas River Area, Prince Rupert, British Columbia, Canada. |
| **1931** | • First Nation's catch data (1931)<br><br>Department of Fisheries and Oceans. 1931 Indian food fishery annual statistics: Nass River area. |
| **1933-1941** | • First Nation's catch data (1933-1941)<br><br>Eulachon catch statistics: Indian take in the Nass (1933-1941) adapted from Figure 12 page14. *In*<br><br>Clemens, W. & Wilby, G. 1946. Fishes of the Pacific Coast of Canada (1st edition). Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin no.68. 368 p. |
| **1941-1950** | • First Nation's commercial catch as reported in:<br><br>Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 1941-1973. Fisheries Inspectors weekly reports and annual narrative reports (1941-46, 1948, 1950, 1953-60, and 1965-73). Nass and Skeena sub-districts. Prince Rupert, British Columbia. |
| **1953-1957** | • First Nation's catch and comments on run strength<br><br>Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 1941-1973. Fisheries Inspectors weekly reports and annual narrative reports (1941-46, 1948, 1950, 1953-60, and 1965-73). Nass and Skeena sub-districts. Prince Rupert, British Columbia. |
| **1958-1967** | • First Nation's catch data (1881-1940)<br><br>Connor, J. W. 1967. Letter Re: oulachan catch- Nass River. September 7. To A.L. Murray, Conservation and Protection from J.W. Connor, District Protection Officer. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Prince Rupert, British Columbia |

| | |
|---|---|
| **1968** | • First Nation's catch data (1968)<br><br>Kent, J. A. 1968. Letter Re: Nass River Native Indian Oulachon Fishery- 1968. April 23. To J.W. Connor, District Protection Officer, from J.A. Kent, Assistant District Protection Officer. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Prince Rupert, British Columbia |
| **1969-1973** | • First Nation catch and comments on run strength<br><br>Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 1941-1973. Fisheries Inspectors weekly reports and annual narrative reports (1941-46, 1948, 1950, 1953-60, and 1965-73). Nass and Skeena sub-districts. Prince Rupert, British Columbia. |
| **1978** | • First Nation's catch data (1978)<br><br>McIntyre, D. 1978. Letter Re: eulachon runs for 1978 [Nass River]. April 11. For eulachon file, by District Supervisor. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Prince Rupert, British Columbia |
| **1983** | • First Nation's catch data (1983)<br><br>Orr, U. 1984. Eulachon sampling on the lower Nass River in relation to log handling. Unpublished data report. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. Prince Rupert, British Columbia or Vancouver, British Columbia. 25 p. |
| **1990** | • First Nation's catch data and effort information (1990)<br><br>Nisga'a Tribal Council. 1990. Nisga'a eulachon fishery 1990. Unpublished report prepared by Nisga'a fisheries crew and Nortec Consulting. 24 p. |
| **1989 and 1995** | First Nation's catch data- Nass River. *In*:<br>Hay, D. E. & McCarter, P. 2000. Status of the eulachon *Thaleichthys pacificus* in Canada. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Canadian Stock Assessment Secretariat, Research Document 2000/145. 92 p. |
| **1997-2006** | Nass Catch and CPUE estimates- Nisga'a Fisheries and LGL Consulting. *In*:<br><br>Pickard, D. & Marmorek, D. R. 2007. A workshop to determine research priorities for eulachon, workshop report. Prepared by ESSA Technologies Ltd., Vancouver British Columbia for Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Nanaimo, British Columbia. 58 p. |

Appendix 2. Copy of the UBC Research Ethics Board Certificate of Approval

The University of British Columbia
Office of Research Services and Administration
**Behavioural Research Ethics Board**

# *Certificate of Approval*

| PRINCIPAL INVESTIGATOR | DEPARTMENT | NUMBER |
|---|---|---|
| Pitcher, T.J. | Fisheries | **B05-1093** |

INSTITUTION(S) WHERE RESEARCH WILL BE CARRIED OUT

CO-INVESTIGATORS:
Moody, Megan, Fisheries

SPONSORING AGENCIES
Westcoast Energy Inc.

TITLE:
Historical Analysis of 'Grease Production' by the Nuxalk First Nation

| APPROVAL DATE | TERM (YEARS) | DOCUMENTS INCLUDED IN THIS APPROVAL: |
|---|---|---|
| DEC 15 2005 | 1 | Dec. 7, 2005, Consent form / Nov. 15, 2005, Contact letter / Questionnaires |

CERTIFICATION:

The protocol describing the above-named project has been reviewed by the Committee and the procedures were found to be acceptable on ethical grounds for research involving human subjects.

[redacted]

*Approved on behalf of the Behavioural Research Ethics Board*
*by one of the following:*

[redacted]

This Certificate of Approval is valid for the above term provided there is no change in the experimental procedures

## Appendix 3. Template of letter sent to Nuxalk community members requesting participation in 2006 interviews

Dec. 2005

To:

**RE: Request for participation in the study titled, 'Historical Analysis of 'Grease Production' by the Nuxalk First Nation'**

We would like to ask for your participation in a research study on the eulachon. Megan Moody, a member of the Nuxalk Nation will solely conduct the interviews. Megan is the daughter of Quatsinas (Edward Moody) and Sandy Burgess (formerly Sandy Moody), granddaughter of Cecilia Siwallace, and Edward Moody Sr.

Megan grew up in Bella Coola and returned every summer during her years at the University of Victoria. She also worked for the Nuxalk Band Administration as the Fisheries Program Manager for three years (Nov 2001- Aug 2004). At this time she managed the Bella Coola eulachon study with the local eulachon crew. It was during this time that she decided to go back to school and pursue her Master's degree in Fisheries science and focus her research on the eulachon.

This study will reconstruct historical eulachon catch by analyzing past 'grease' production. This will be determined through interviews, that question the amount of 'grease' produced each year, the number of families involved and the amount of 'grease' consumed each year, etc. The purpose of this study is to gather information on the historical abundance of the Bella Coola eulachon run. It will also be used to further understand the decline of the Bella Coola eulachon run and hopefully provide valuable information for future management decisions. A final report using the information gathered during the interview will be submitted to the University of British Columbia as a requirement for the completion of a Master's of Science degree with the department of Resource Management and Environmental Studies.

The interviews will be conducted early in 2006. We anticipate that the interview will take two to three hours. A series of set questions will be asked, but you will also be given an opportunity to provide any additional information, should you so desire. The interview will also be audio recorded.

We have attached two copies of a consent form. We ask that you read through the form, and if you agree to participate in our study, please ***sign both copies***. Please keep one copy for yourself and return the second copy to us.

We will be pleased to provide you with results of this study. The results will also be available to the Nuxalk community and a summary posted in the local flyer. If you have any questions or concerns, please do not hesitate to contact us. Thank you for your time and assistance. We consider your opinions valuable and appreciate any input that you can give.

Sincerely,

Dr. Tony Pitcher

Professor
UBC Fisheries Centre

Megan Moody

MSc. Student
UBC Fisheries Centre

# Appendix 4. Template of consent forms signed by Nuxalk community participants for the 2006 Nuxalk interviews

**Title: Historical Analysis of 'Grease Production' by the Nuxalk First Nation**

**Principal Investigator:**

Professor Tony J. Pitcher, University of British Columbia Fisheries Centre.

**Co-Investigator:**

Megan Moody, M.Sc. student, University of British Columbia Fisheries Center.

**Study Purpose:**
The purpose of the research is to reconstruct historical eulachon catch by applying local environmental knowledge (LEK) of past 'Grease' production to improve the understanding of past Bella Coola eulachon runs sizes. This will be determined through interview questions, such as: the amount of grease produced each year, the number of families involved, the amount of 'grease' consumed each year, etc. This project is funded by a scholarship awarded to Megan Moody by the UBC faculty of Graduate Studies.

**Study Procedures:**
This research study, "Historical Analysis of 'Grease Production by the Nuxalk First Nation", is one part of a Master's of Science thesis document entitled "A Historical Analysis of the current and past runs of the Pacific Coast Eulachon and the impacts that traditional fisheries, commercial fisheries and bycatch in the shrimp trawl fishery, have had on these runs." Megan Moody, whom is a member of the Nuxalk Nation will conduct the interviews.

Your participation will involve one interview, 2-3 hours in length and will be recorded on audiotape. The interview is being recorded to ensure that your responses are accurately recorded however you may, at any time, refuse to answer any or all questions, and may request that the audiotape be turned off.

Your contribution to this project will be combined with contributions from other Nuxalk members with past knowledge of the eulachon fishery and the eulachon 'grease' making process. The information gathered will be used to improve the understanding of past Bella Coola River eulachon abundances. The thesis will be made public and a copy of the final interview results will be provided to you upon request. A summary of the results will also be posted in the Nuxalk community flyer.

**Contact for information about the study:**
If you have any questions or desire further information with respect to this study, you may contact Megan Moody at xxx-xxxx

**Compensation:**
No compensation will be received for participation in this research project.

**Contact for concerns about the rights of research subjects:**
If you have any concerns about your treatment or rights as a research subject, you may contact the Research Subject Information Line in the UBC Office of Research Services at (604) 822-8598.

**Storage of audio recording:**
The audio recording of your interview will be stored by the research team for 5 years and then destroyed after this time period. If you do not want your interview recording destroyed the original and all copies can be returned to you.

I want the recording of my interview destroyed _____

I want the recording of my interview returned to me _____

**Confidentiality:**
I understand that the interview responses and audiotape will be made available only to myself and to members of the research team. I understand that notes will also be taken during the interview and that on audiotapes and interview notes I will be identified only by a numeric code; my name will not appear on these materials. I have the right to decide whether I want my contribution to be anonymous or to be credited to me.

I do _____ I do not _____ want my contribution to this project to be credited to me.

**Consent:**
I understand that my participation in this study is entirely voluntary and that I may refuse to participate or withdraw from the study at any time without penalty or prejudice. I agree to the above conditions, and I have received a copy of this consent form for my own records.

Participant's Name Signature Date

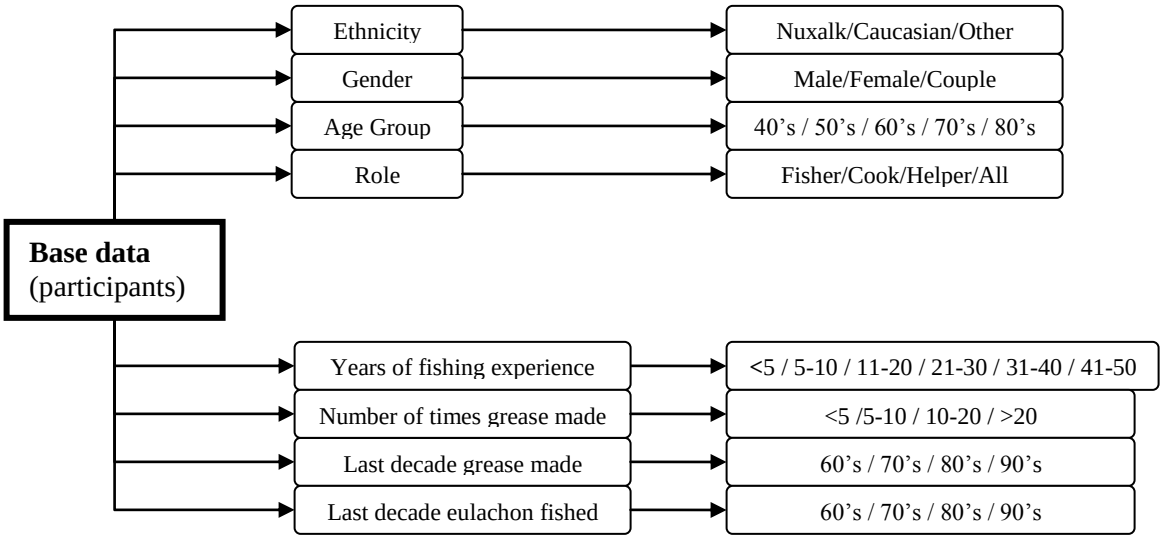
*******Thank you for your time, interest, and participation. Your opinions are valuable and any input that you can give this study is appreciated*******

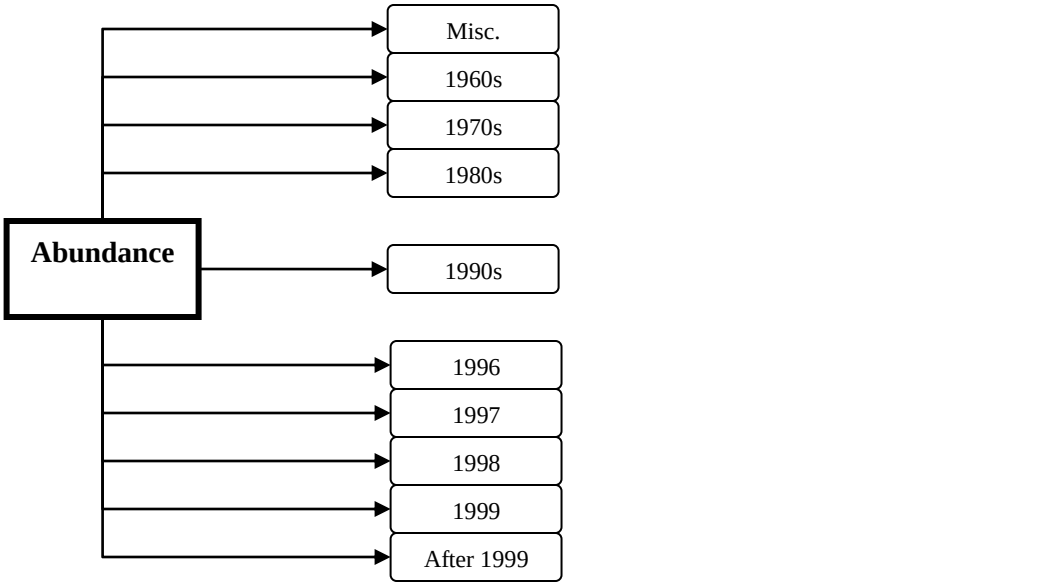
Appendix 5. N6 categories used to organize 2006 Nuxalk interview data

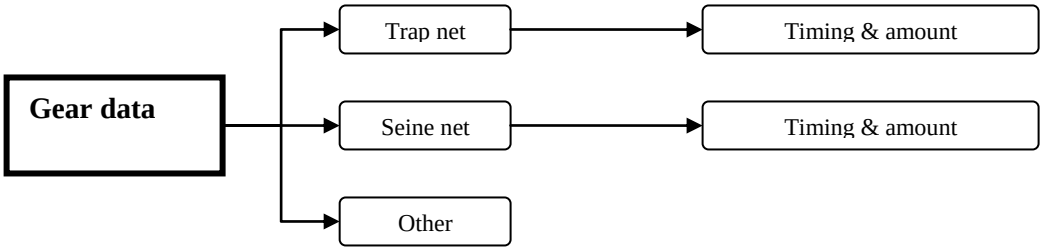
## 1) Free node categories

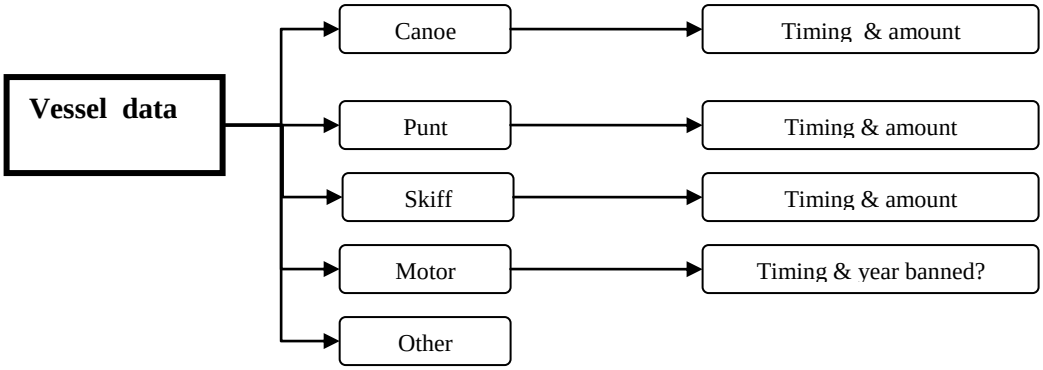
| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Eulachon life cycle | Fish description | Run timing | River conditions | Weather changes | Predators of eulachon |
| Grease process | Stink box | Fermenting process | Cooking process | Cooking box | Size of crew |
| Learning & teaching | Trade | Herring fishing | Odd occurrences | | |
| Personal consumption of grease/eulachon | Sharing of labour/catch/grease | South Bentinck eulachon fishing | Eulachon in other rivers | | |
| Who's to blame for declines? | Traditional rules for fishery | Changes in attitudes towards | Collapse of Bella Coola eulachon run | | |

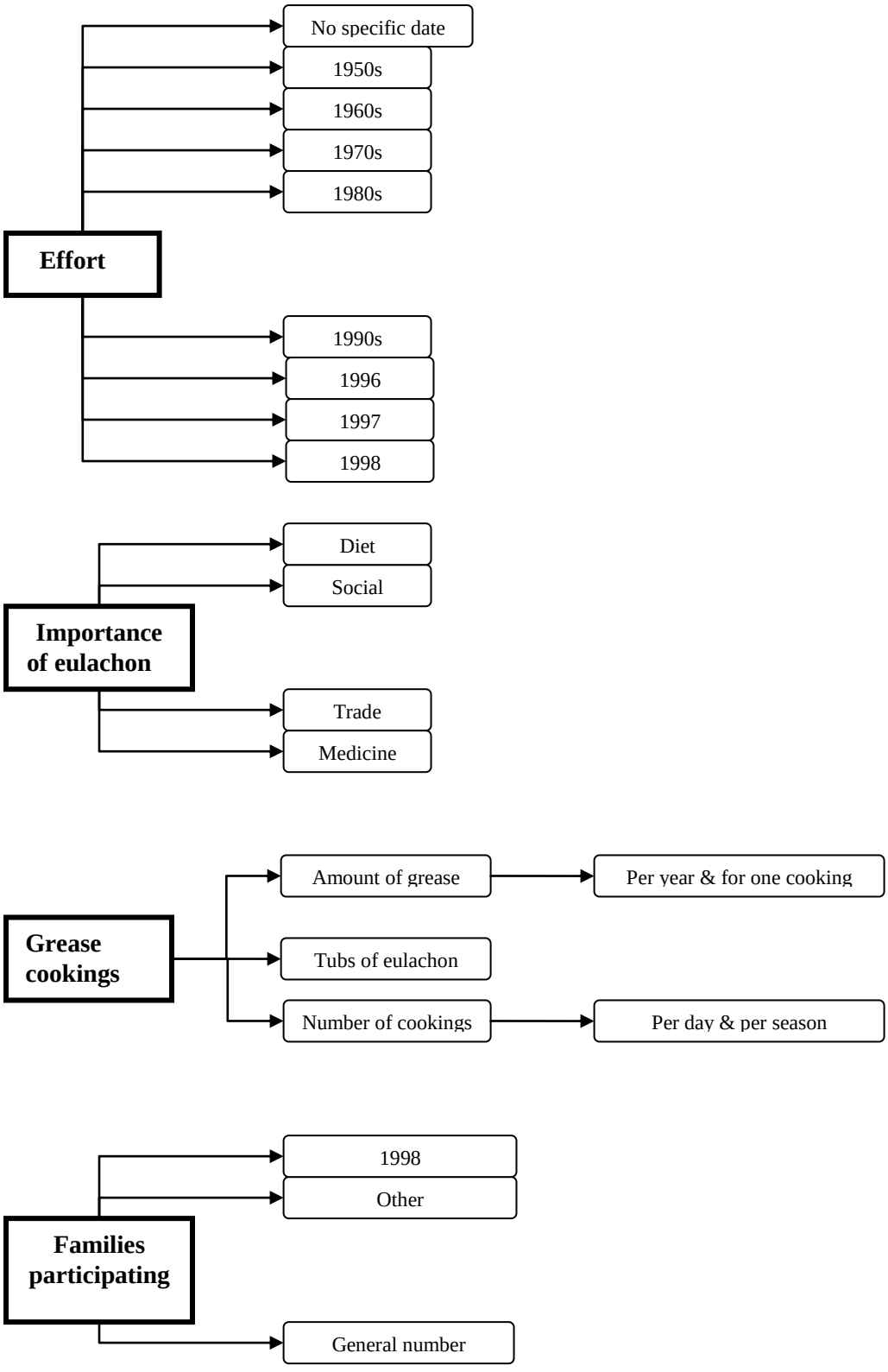
## 2) Tree Node categories




Abundance
Misc.
1960s
1970s
1980s
1990s
1996
1997
1998
1999
After 1999


Gear data
Trap net
Timing & amount
Seine net
Timing & amount
Other


Vessel data
Canoe
Timing & amount
Punt
Timing & amount
Skiff
Timing & amount
Motor
Timing & year banned?
Other


No specific date
1950s
1960s
1970s
1980s
Effort
1990s
1996
1997
1998
Diet
Social
Importance of eulachon
Trade
Medicine
Amount of grease
Per year & for one cooking
Grease cookings
Tubs of eulachon
Number of cookings
Per day & per season
1998
Other
Families participating
General number

Appendix 6. Results from the eulachon grease model including original data

| Years | Total grease prod. (gallons) best estimate | DFO catch (t) | Total grease prod. SD | DFO catch SD | Grease model estimated catch C= (GP/gt) + x | Fresh catch (t) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1998 | 190 | | 29 | | 13.6 | 2.2 |
| 1997 | 125 | | 19 | | 12.6 | 2.6 |
| 1996 | 195 | | 30 | | 13.4 | 1.1 |
| 1995 | 81 | | 13 | | 7.9 | 1.7 |
| 1994 | 255 | | 40 | | 17.9 | 1.8 |
| 1993 | 256 | | 40 | | 20.7 | 2.6 |
| 1992 | 190 | | 29 | | 16.4 | 2.6 |
| 1991 | 340 | | 53 | | 26.5 | 1.5 |
| 1990 | 430 | | 67 | | 32.1 | 2.4 |
| 1989 | 230 | 8.5 | 36 | 0.9 | 19.6 | 1.7 |
| 1988 | 460 | 60 | 71 | 6.4 | 38.6 | 2.8 |
| 1987 | 255 | 15 | 40 | 1.8 | 20.5 | 1.5 |
| 1986 | 365 | 15 | 57 | 1.8 | 25.6 | 1.3 |
| 1985 | 175 | 5 | 27 | 0.6 | 15.0 | 2.1 |
| 1984 | 355 | 30 | 55 | 3.5 | 26.4 | 1.9 |
| 1983 | 282 | 30 | 44 | 3.2 | 23.2 | 2.7 |
| 1982 | 315 | 50 | 49 | 2.3 | 24.4 | 2.3 |
| 1981 | 410 | 35 | 64 | 4.1 | 33.0 | 2.0 |
| 1980 | 380 | 30 | 59 | 3.5 | 30.3 | 2.4 |

| | |
|---|---|
| Estimated (gt) value | 14.07 |
| Standard deviation of (gt) | 0.780 |
| 95%tile (gt) | |
| Upper | 15.58 |
| Lower | 12.37 |

Appendix 7. Sources of data collected from each eulachon system. Catches and CPUE have been displayed in Chapter 2 and all data sources here have been used in Chapter 4 to estimate in-river eulachon abundance status

| River | Sources of data |
|---|---|
| **Klamath** | • Run size comments made in:<br><br>Larson, Z. & Belchik, M. 1998. A preliminary status review of eulachon and Pacific lamprey in the Klamath River Basin. Yurok Tribal Fisheries Program, Klamath, California.<br><br>• Run size comments made in:<br><br>Moyle, P. B., Yoshiyama, R. M., Williams, J. E., and Wikramanayake, E. D. 1995. Fish species of special concern in California (second edition). California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, California. 72 p. |
| **Columbia** | • Catch data (1938-2006)<br>• CPUE data (1988-2005)<br>• Catch (larvae per $m^3$) (1996-2005)<br>• Low effort (1960-1977 limited to 3 ½ days/week, 1965-1966 4 ½ days /week). In 1978 the fishery was expanded to 7 days/week, until 1995)<br>• Report comments- "extremely poor returns of 1994-1999"<br><br>*In*:<br>Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife & Oregon Department of Fish Wildlife. 2001. Washington and Oregon eulachon management plan. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife: Olympia. 32 p.<br><br>Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife & Oregon Department of Fish Wildlife. 2004. Joint staff report concerning commercial seasons for sturgeon and smelt in 2005.<br><br>Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife & Oregon Department of Fish Wildlife. 2005. Joint staff report concerning commercial seasons for sturgeon and smelt in 2006. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Fraser** | • Catch and CPUE data (1941-1953)<br><br>Ricker, W. E., Manzer, D. F., and Neave, E. A. 1954. The Fraser River eulachon fishery, 1941-1953. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Manuscript report no. 583. 35 p.<br><br>• Catch data (1881-1940) adapted from Figure 12 p14<br><br>Clemens, W. & Wilby, G. 1946. Fishes of the Pacific Coast of Canada (1st edition). Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin no.68. 368 p.<br><br>• Catch data (1954-2000)<br><br>Hay, D. E. & McCarter, P. 2000. Status of the eulachon *Thaleichthys pacificus* in Canada. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Canadian Stock Assessment Secretariat, Research Document 2000/145. 92 p.<br><br>• Catch data (2001-2006) and test fishery (1995-2005) and biomass estimates (1995-2006)<br><br>Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 2007. Pacific region integrated fisheries management plan: eulachon- April 1, 2007 to March 31, 2008. 22 p.<br><br>• First Nation catch (1974-1991)<br><br>Fast, E. 1992. Memorandum re: IFF eulachon harvest- Steveston sub-district 1974-1991. January 13. To Al. MacDonald, Biologist, from Elmer Fast, Fisheries Officer in charge. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada.<br><br>• Recreational catch, run size comments and low effort comments<br><br>Forbes, C. & Harris, R. 1974-1989. Eulachons- summary of weekly reports of the fisheries patrol vessel Star Rock and Stuart Post for the Steveston sub-district. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada.<br><br>Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 1940-1979. Fisheries Inspectors weekly reports and annual narrative reports. Districts of: Chilliwack-Hope, Mission-Harrison, Steveston, Chilliwack-Yale. Vancouver, British Columbia.<br><br>• CPUE data (1982-1996 DFO)<br><br>Department of Fisheries and Oceans. 2008. Overview of the eulachon fishery. Pelagics & minor finfish- Pacific Region, Canada. Retrieved January 30, 2008, from: http://www.pac.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/ops/fm/herring/eulachon/default_e.htm#.com |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Kingcome** | • Catch data and run size comments from:<br><br>Berry, M. D. & Jacob, W. 1998. 1997 Eulachon research on the Kingcome and Wannock Rivers. Final report to the Science Council of British Columbia (SCBC #96/97-715). 62 p.<br><br>Common Resources Consulting Ltd. 1998. An historic overview of the Kwawkewlth, Knight, and Kingcome inlet oolachon fishery. A report prepared for the Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Vancouver, British Columbia.<br><br>• Run size comments from (1978, 1993-2007):<br><br>Nicolsen, M. 2006/07. Member of the Tsawataineuk Nation, Kingcome Inlet, BC. Telephone conversation: February 1, 2006<br>Email: September 9, 2007 |
| **Klinaklini** | • Catch data and run size comments from:<br><br>Berry, M. D. & Jacob, W. 1998. 1997 Eulachon research on the Kingcome and Wannock Rivers. Final report to the Science Council of British Columbia (SCBC #96/97-715). 62 p.<br><br>Common Resources Consulting Ltd. 1998. An historic overview of the Kwawkewlth, Knight, and Kingcome inlet oolachon fishery. A report prepared for the Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Vancouver, British Columbia. |
| **Wannock** | • Run size comments from:<br><br>Berry, M. D. & Jacob, W. 1998. 1997 Eulachon research on the Kingcome and Wannock Rivers. Final report to the Science Council of British Columbia (SCBC #96/97-715). 62 p.<br><br>Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 1967-68 & 1971. Fisheries Inspectors weekly reports and annual narrative reports. Rivers Inlet District. Rivers Inlet, British Columbia.<br><br>Burrows, B. 2006. Unpublished. Rivers Inlet oolichan project 2006. Wuikinuxv Fisheries Department. Rivers Inlet, British Columbia. |
| **Bella Coola** | • Catch data, run size and low effort comments from:<br><br>2006 Nuxalk interviews (Thesis Chapter 3)<br><br>Department of Fisheries and Oceans. 1944-1989. Fisheries Inspectors weekly reports and annual narrative reports. Bella Coola District, Bella Coola, British Columbia, Canada.<br><br>Tallio, N. and Webber, W. 1998. Nuxalk Nation eulachon enumeration of the Bella Coola River, 1998. Nuxalk Fisheries Department, Bella Coola, British Columbia. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Kemano** | • Run size and low effort comments from:<br><br>Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 1969-1973. Fisheries Inspectors annual narrative reports. Butedale sub-district. Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Canada. Kitimat, British Columbia.<br><br>Eulachon Conservation Society. 2002. Eulachon Conservation Society workshop minutes, December 5-6, 2002. Prince Rupert, British Columbia. 24 p.<br><br>Eulachon Research Council. 2000. Eulachon Research Council, May 2000. Minutes summarizing meetings in New Westminister, Terrace and Bella Coola, BC. Informal joint report prepared jointly by BC Forests and Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 24 p.<br><br>• Catch data 1969-1973<br><br>Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 1969-1973. Fisheries Inspectors annual narrative reports. Butedale sub-district. Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Canada. Kitimat, British Columbia.<br><br>• Catch data 1988-2004 and CPUE data 1998-2004<br><br>Lewis, A.F.J. & Ganshorn, K. 2004. Alcan's Kemano River eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*) monitoring program: Haisla fishery monitoring 2004. Consultant's report prepared for Alcan Primary Metal Ltd., Kitimat, British Columbia.<br><br>Lewis, A. F.J., McGurk, M.D., & Galesloot, M.G. 2002. Alcan's Kemano River eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*) monitoring program 1988-1998. Consultant's report prepared by Ecofish Research Ltd. For Alcan Primary Metal Ltd., Kitimat, British Columbia. 136 p.<br><br>EcoMetrix Incorporated. 2006. Summary of 2006 eulachon study results and 2007 study design. Report prepared for EUROCAN PULP and PAPER CO., Kitimat, British Columbia. |
| **Kitimat** | • Run size, low effort comments and catch data 1969-1972 from:<br><br>Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 1969-1973. Fisheries Inspectors annual narrative reports. Butedale sub-district. Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Canada. Kitimat, British Columbia.<br><br>Eulachon Research Council. 2000. Eulachon Research Council, May 2000. Minutes summarizing meetings in New Westminister, Terrace and Bella Coola, BC. Informal joint report prepared jointly by BC Forests and Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 24 p.<br><br>• Run size, low effort, CPUE and SSB data from:<br><br>EcoMetrix Incorporated. 2006. Summary of 2006 eulachon study results and 2007 study design. Report prepared for EUROCAN PULP and PAPER CO., Kitimat, British Columbia. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Nass** | • Catch data and run size/low effort comments from several sources, see Appendix 1.<br><br>• Catch and CPUE data 1997-2006 Nisga'a Fisheries in:<br><br>Pickard, D. & Marmorek, D. R. 2007. A workshop to determine research priorities for eulachon, workshop report. Prepared by ESSA Technologies Ltd., Vancouver British Columbia for Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Nanaimo, British Columbia. 58 p. |
| **Skeena** | • Run size comments from:<br><br>Lewis, A. 1997. Skeena eulachon study 1997. Report prepared by Triton Environmental Consultants Ltd., Terrace, BC and the Tsimshian Tribal Council, Prince Rupert, British Columbia for Forest Renewal BC.<br><br>Eulachon Conservation Society. 2002. Eulachon Conservation Society workshop minutes, December 5-6, 2002. Prince Rupert, British Columbia. 24 p.<br><br>Eulachon Research Council. 2000. Eulachon Research Council, May 2000. Minutes summarizing meetings in New Westminister, Terrace and Bella Coola, BC. Informal joint report prepared jointly by BC Forests and Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 24 p.<br><br>Roberts, D. 2006/07. Member of the Kitsumkalum Nation, Terrace BC. Telephone conversation: March 6, 2006 and February 7, 2007 |
| **Unuk** | • Run size comments and catch data from:<br><br>Eulachon Research Council. 2000. Eulachon Research Council, May 2000. Minutes summarizing meetings in New Westminister, Terrace and Bella Coola, BC. Informal joint report prepared jointly by BC Forests and Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 24 p.<br><br>Tisler, T. & Spangler, R. 2003. Unpublished. 2003 eulachon harvest and distribution report. United States Forest Service. Ketchikan, Alaska.<br><br>United States Forest Service. 2006. Unpublished. 2001-2005 Unuk River eulachon survey summary. Ketchikan, Alaska.<br><br>United States Forest Service. 2007. Unpublished. 2006 Unuk River eulachon monitoring summary. Ketchikan, Alaska. |
| **Chilkat** | • Run size and low effort comments from:<br><br>Mills, D. D. 1982. Historical and contemporary fishing for salmon and eulachon at Klukwan: an interim report. Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Division of Subsistence, technical paper no. 69. Juneau. 28 p.<br><br>Morphet, T. 2005. Fish scientist hopes study will help crack eulachon mystery. *The Chilkat Valley News***,** Haines, Alaska, 9 June. Retrieved February 6, 2007, from http://www.chilkatvalleynews.com/archive/2005-22-4.html |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Chilkat** | Morphet, T. 2006. 2006: the year in review. *Chilkat Valley News*, Haines, Alaska, 21 December. Retrieved February 6, 2007, from http://www.chilkatvalleynews.com/archive/2006-50-4.html<br><br>• Catch data 1983 and 1987<br><br>Betts, M. F. 1994. The subsistence hooligan fishery of the Chilkat and Chilkoot Rivers. Alaska Department of Fish and Game: Division of Subsistence, technical paper no. 213, Juneau, Alaska. 69 p. |
| **Copper** | • Run size and low effort comments from:<br><br>Eulachon Research Council. 2000. Eulachon Research Council, May 2000. Minutes summarizing meetings in New Westminister, Terrace and Bella Coola, BC. Informal joint report prepared jointly by BC Forests and Fisheries and Oceans Canada. 24 p.<br><br>Moffitt, S., Marston, B. & Miller, M. 2002. Summary of eulachon research in the Copper River Delta, 1998-2002. Regional information report no. 2A02-34. Anchorage: Alaska Department of Fish and Game.<br><br>• Subsistence use catch: 1984-1985, 1987-1993, 1997, 2002-2003<br><br>Joyce, T. L., Lambert, M. B. & Moffitt, S. 2004. Eulachon subsistence harvest opportunities final report. Office of Subsistence Management, United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Cordova, Alaska.<br><br>• Commercial catch data 1998-2002<br><br>Moffitt, S., Marston, B. & Miller, M. 2002. Summary of eulachon research in the Copper River Delta, 1998-2002. Regional information report no. 2A02-34. Anchorage: Alaska Department of Fish and Game. |
| **Cook Inlet** | • Commercial catch data and low effort data: 1978, 1980, 1998-1999, 2002 and Personal use harvest 1993-2003<br><br>Shields, P. A. 2005. Unpublished. Upper Cook Inlet commercial herring and smelt fisheries, 2004. Alaska Department of Fish and Game. Report to the Board of Fisheries, 2005, Anchorage.<br><br>• Commercial catch data 2006-2007<br><br>Personal communication:<br><br>Shields, P. A. 2007. Alaska Department of Fish and Game. Cook Inlet, Alaska Email: June 26, 2007 |

# Appendix 8. Visual Basics for Applications (VBA) code for the fuzzy expert system used to estimate 15 eulachon system's annual abundance status (Chapter 4)

---

'Class modules used
'Note: the class defines what properties, methods and events an object possesses.

**'cFMF**

```
Option Explicit
Public strMemShape As String
Public intFMFa As Double
Public intFMFb As Double
Public intFMFc As Double
Public intFMFd As Double
Public strCatName As String
Public intMaxC As Integer
```

**'cFMF2**

```
Option Explicit
Public strMemShape2 As String
Public intFMF2a As Double
Public intFMF2b As Double
Public intFMF2c As Double
Public intFMF2d As Double
Public strCatName2 As String
```

**'InputData**

```
Option Explicit
Public strDataName As String

'Fuzzy logic method
Public colFMF As Collection
Public colFMF2 As Collection
```

**'cRiver**

```
Option Explicit
Public strName As String
Public strIndex As String
Public strDataName As String
Public colYearData As Collection
Public colRiverData As Collection
```

**'cRiverdata**

```
Option Explicit
Public bolCA As Boolean
Public bolCPUE As Boolean
Public bolSSB As Boolean
Public bolLS As Boolean
Public bolTF As Boolean
Public bolRC As Boolean
Public bolILC As Boolean
Public bolLE As Boolean
```

**'cYeardata**

```
Option Explicit
```

```
Public strRiver As String
Public dYear As Double

Public strCatch As String
Public strCPUE As String
Public strLE As String
Public strRC As String
Public strILC As String
Public strSSB As String
Public strLS As String
Public strTF As String

Public dL As Double
Public dML As Double
Public dM As Double
Public dMH As Double
Public dH As Double
Public dC1 As Double
Public dC2 As Double
Public dC3 As Double
Public dC4 As Double
Public dC5 As Double
Public dC6 As Double
Public dCPUE1 As Double
Public dCPUE2 As Double
Public dCPUE3 As Double
Public dCPUE4 As Double
Public dCPUE5 As Double
Public dLS1 As Double
Public dLS2 As Double
Public dLS3 As Double
Public dLS4 As Double
Public dLS5 As Double
Public dSSB1 As Double
Public dSSB2 As Double
Public dSSB3 As Double
Public dSSB4 As Double
Public dSSB5 As Double
Public dTF1 As Double
Public dTF2 As Double
Public dTF3 As Double
Public dTF4 As Double
Public dTF5 As Double
Public dRC1 As Double
Public dRC2 As Double
Public dRC3 As Double
Public dRC4 As Double
Public dRC5 As Double
Public dILC1 As Double
Public dILC2 As Double
Public dILC3 As Double
Public dILC4 As Double
Public dILC5 As Double
Public dReachMaxCatch As Integer
```

---

```
Public Sub Main()      'model for estimating eulachon abundance indices for 15 eulachon systems

Dim ColRivers As Collection
Dim ColFuzzyData As Collection
Dim ColFuzzyData2 As Collection
Set ColRivers = Load
Set ColFuzzyData = LoadFMF
Set ColFuzzyData2 = LoadFMF2
```

```
Call Module1.ReadMaxCatch(ColRivers)
Call Module1.GetMembershipCA(ColRivers, ColFuzzyData)
Call Module1.GetMembershipCPUE(ColRivers, ColFuzzyData2)
Call Module1.GetMembershipTF(ColRivers, ColFuzzyData2)
Call Module1.GetMembershipLS(ColRivers, ColFuzzyData2)
Call Module1.GetMembershipSSB(ColRivers, ColFuzzyData2)
Call Module1.GetMembershipRC(ColRivers, ColFuzzyData2)
Call Module1.GetMembershipILC(ColRivers, ColFuzzyData2)
Call Module3.ReadCF
Call Module3.Reasoning(ColRivers)
Worksheets("Results").Activate
Call colcol
MsgBox "yaaaaaa!!!!"
End Sub
```

---

```
Public Function LoadFMF() As Collection
Dim cInputData As cInputData
Dim ColFuzzyData As New Collection
Dim cFMF As cFMF
Dim rngCAFMF As Range
Dim i, j, k As Integer

   Set rngCAFMF = Range("Cafmf")
   Set cInputData = New cInputData
   cInputData.strDataName = CStr(rngCAFMF(1, 1))
   Set cInputData.colFMF = New Collection

 For i = 1 To rngCAFMF.Columns.Count - 1
      Set cFMF = New cFMF
      cFMF.strCatName = rngCAFMF(1, i + 1)
      cFMF.strMemShape = rngCAFMF(2, i + 1)
      cFMF.intMaxC = rngCAFMF(3, i + 1)
      cFMF.intFMFa = rngCAFMF(4, i + 1)
      cFMF.intFMFb = rngCAFMF(5, i + 1)
      cFMF.intFMFc = rngCAFMF(6, i + 1)
      If rngCAFMF(7, i + 1) = "" Then
         cFMF.intFMFd = 0
      Else
         cFMF.intFMFd = rngCAFMF(7, i + 1)
      End If
     Call cInputData.colFMF.Add(cFMF)
   Next i
   Call ColFuzzyData.Add(cInputData, cInputData.strDataName)

  Set LoadFMF = ColFuzzyData
   End Function
```

---

```
Public Function LoadFMF2() As Collection
Dim cInputData As cInputData
Dim ColFuzzyData2 As New Collection
Dim cFMF2 As cFMF2
Dim rngOtherFMF As Range
Dim i, j, k As Integer

   Set rngOtherFMF = Range("Otherfmf")
   Set cInputData = New cInputData
   cInputData.strDataName = CStr(rngOtherFMF(1, 1))
   Set cInputData.colFMF2 = New Collection

For i = 1 To rngOtherFMF.Columns.Count - 1
      Set cFMF2 = New cFMF2
      cFMF2.strCatName2 = rngOtherFMF(1, i + 1)
      cFMF2.strMemShape2 = rngOtherFMF(2, i + 1)
      cFMF2.intFMF2a = rngOtherFMF(3, i + 1)
```

```
      cFMF2.intFMF2b = rngOtherFMF(4, i + 1)
      cFMF2.intFMF2c = rngOtherFMF(5, i + 1)
      If rngOtherFMF(6, i + 1) = "" Then
         cFMF2.intFMF2d = 0
      Else
         cFMF2.intFMF2d = rngOtherFMF(6, i + 1)
      End If
      Call cInputData.colFMF2.Add(cFMF2)
   Next i
   Call ColFuzzyData2.Add(cInputData, cInputData.strDataName)

   Set LoadFMF2 = ColFuzzyData2

End Function

Public Function CheckForData(strData As String) As String
   If strData = vbNullString Then
      CheckForData = ""
   Else
      CheckForData = strData
   End If
End Function
```

---

```
Public Function Load() As Collection                    'this function loads the data for each river

Dim rngRiverMaster As Range
Dim rngData As Range
Dim cRiver As cRiver                            'name the business objects for later use
Dim cYearData As cYearData
Dim cRiverdata As cRiverdata
Dim ColRivers As New Collection                         'name the big collection of rivers
Dim x, y, z As Integer

'read in table of data sets available
Set rngRiverMaster = Range("rngRiverMaster")            'define range of rivers
Set rngData = Range("rngData")                          'define range of data

For x = 1 To rngRiverMaster.Rows.Count          'make a new river object
   Set cRiver = New cRiver
   Set cRiver.colRiverData = New Collection
   cRiver.strName = rngRiverMaster(x, 1)        'set the name and index of the current river
   cRiver.strIndex = rngRiverMaster(x, 2)

    Set cRiverdata = New cRiverdata

'Go to River Master table and look if data exists (CA CPUE SSB LS TF RC ILC LE)

      If rngRiverMaster(x, 3) = 1 Then
         cRiverdata.bolCA = True
        Else
         cRiverdata.bolCA = False
      End If

      If rngRiverMaster(x, 4) = 1 Then
         cRiverdata.bolCPUE = True
      Else
         cRiverdata.bolCPUE = False
      End If

      If rngRiverMaster(x, 5) = 1 Then
         cRiverdata.bolSSB = True
      Else
         cRiverdata.bolSSB = False
      End If
```

```
    If rngRiverMaster(x, 6) = 1 Then
       cRiverdata.bolLS = True
    Else
       cRiverdata.bolLS = False
    End If

    If rngRiverMaster(x, 7) = 1 Then
       cRiverdata.bolTF = True
    Else
       cRiverdata.bolTF = False
    End If

    If rngRiverMaster(x, 8) = 1 Then
       cRiverdata.bolRC = True
    Else
       cRiverdata.bolRC = False
    End If

    If rngRiverMaster(x, 9) = 1 Then
       cRiverdata.bolILC = True
    Else
       cRiverdata.bolILC = False
    End If

    If rngRiverMaster(x, 10) = 1 Then
       cRiverdata.bolLE = True
    Else
       cRiverdata.bolLE = False

      End If

      Call cRiver.colRiverData.Add(cRiverdata)

 Set cRiver.colYearData = New Collection                    'make a new collection of year data for the current river

'if data exists (1) then read in data if no data, go to next data set

 For y = 1 To rngData.Rows.Count                            'loop through data range

 If rngData(y, 2) = cRiver.strName Then                     'the river matches

    Set cYearData = New cYearData                           'make a new year data for the current river
    'set the info for the current year data for the current river

    cYearData.dYear = rngData(y, 1)
    cYearData.strRiver = cRiver.strName

    cYearData.strCatch = CheckForData(rngData(y, 5))
    cYearData.strLE = CheckForData(rngData(y, 6))
    cYearData.strCPUE = CheckForData(rngData(y, 8))
    cYearData.strRC = CheckForData(rngData(y, 10))
    cYearData.strILC = CheckForData(rngData(y, 12))
    cYearData.strSSB = CheckForData(rngData(y, 14))
    cYearData.strLS = CheckForData(rngData(y, 16))
    cYearData.strTF = CheckForData(rngData(y, 18))

  Call cRiver.colYearData.Add(cYearData, CStr(cYearData.dYear))

End If

Next y

    'this river is done, add it to the big collection of all rivers
```

```
    Call ColRivers.Add(cRiver, cRiver.strName)

Next x

    Set Load = ColRivers

End Function
```

---

```
Function Triangle(ByVal x As Double, ByVal a As Double, ByVal b As Double, ByVal c As Double) As Double

'Function for a triangle density function

    Dim temp As Double

    If x <= a Then temp = 0

    If x > a And x < b Then temp = (x - a) / (b - a)

    If x >= b And x < c Then temp = (c - x) / (c - b)

    If x >= c Then temp = 0

    Triangle = temp

  End Function
```

---

```
Function MYCIN(Evidence1 As Double, Evidence2 As Double, Optional Evidence3 As Double, Optional Evidence4 As Double,
Optional Evidence5 As Double, Optional Evidence6 As Double, Optional Evidence7 As Double, Optional Evidence8 As Double,
Optional Evidence9 As Double, Optional Evidence10 As Double, Optional Evidence11 As Double, Optional Evidence12 As
Double, Optional Evidence13 As Double, Optional Evidence14 As Double) As Double

'calculate combined memberships (Function MYCIN)

Dim temp As Double

  temp = 0
  temp = Evidence1
  temp = temp + Evidence2 * (1 - temp)
  temp = temp + Evidence3 * (1 - temp)
  temp = temp + Evidence4 * (1 - temp)
  temp = temp + Evidence5 * (1 - temp)
  temp = temp + Evidence6 * (1 - temp)
  temp = temp + Evidence7 * (1 - temp)
  temp = temp + Evidence8 * (1 - temp)
  temp = temp + Evidence9 * (1 - temp)
  temp = temp + Evidence10 * (1 - temp)
  temp = temp + Evidence11 * (1 - temp)
  temp = temp + Evidence12 * (1 - temp)
  temp = temp + Evidence13 * (1 - temp)
  temp = temp + Evidence14 * (1 - temp)

    MYCIN = temp

End Function
```

---

```
Function trapezoid(ByVal x As Double, ByVal a As Double, ByVal b As Double, ByVal c As Double, ByVal d As Double) As
Double

'Function for a trapezoid density function

Dim temp As Double

    If x <= a Then temp = 0
```

```
    If x > a And x < b Then temp = (x - a) / (b - a)

    If x >= b And x < c Then temp = 1

    If x >= c And x < d Then temp = (d - x) / (d - c)

    If x >= d Then temp = 0

    trapezoid = temp

End Function
```

---

```
'This sub function finds the maximum catch of a data set and sets the year

Sub ReadMaxCatch(ColRivers As Collection)
Dim MaxCatch As Double
Dim MaxCatchYr As Integer
Dim cRiver As cRiver
Dim cYearData As cYearData
Dim i, j As Integer

Set cRiver = New cRiver
Set cYearData = New cYearData

For i = 1 To ColRivers.Count
   Set cRiver = ColRivers(i)
   MaxCatch = 0: MaxCatchYr = 0

    For j = 1 To cRiver.colYearData.Count
   Set cYearData = cRiver.colYearData(j)
      If cYearData.strCatch <> "" Then
         If MaxCatch < CDbl(cYearData.strCatch) Then
           MaxCatch = CDbl(cYearData.strCatch)
           MaxCatchYr = cYearData.dYear
         End If
      End If
   Next j

For j = 1 To cRiver.colYearData.Count
   Set cYearData = cRiver.colYearData(j)
      If cYearData.dYear < MaxCatchYr Then
        ColRivers.Item(i).colYearData(j).dReachMaxCatch = 0
      Else
         ColRivers.Item(i).colYearData(j).dReachMaxCatch = 1
      End If
   Next
Next i

End Sub

Sub GetMembershipCA(ColRivers As Collection, ColFuzzyData As Collection)

'This sub function calculates the membership for the Catch

Dim rngCAFMF As Range
Dim cRiver As cRiver
Dim cRiverdata As cRiverdata
Dim cYearData As cYearData
Dim cInputData As cInputData
Dim cFMF As cFMF
Dim valCAFMF() As Variant
Dim strCACat() As String
```

```
    Dim CAMembership() As Double
    Dim CAMemDeplTemp As Double
    Dim rngCAMem As Range
    Dim i, j, yr, rvcnt As Integer
    Dim IntDeplCount As Integer              'Count the number of consecutive depleted years

    ReDim CAMembership(6)

    Set rngCAFMF = Range("CAfmf")
    Set cRiver = New cRiver
    Set cRiverdata = New cRiverdata
    Set cYearData = New cYearData
    Set cInputData = New cInputData
    Set cInputData = ColFuzzyData(1)
    Set rngCAMem = Range("CAOutput")
    rvcnt = 0

    For i = 1 To ColRivers.Count
       Set cRiver = ColRivers(i)
       Set cRiverdata = cRiver.colRiverData(1)
       If cRiverdata.bolCA = True Then        'if CA data exists
       IntDeplCount = 0    'Clear variable for each data series
       For yr = 1 To cRiver.colYearData.Count

'***********************************************
'loop through each year' catch

Set cYearData = cRiver.colYearData(yr)

    For j = 1 To cInputData.colFMF.Count
       Set cFMF = cInputData.colFMF(j)

       Select Case cFMF.strCatName

    Case "C1"
    If cYearData.strCatch <> "" And cYearData.dReachMaxCatch = cFMF.intMaxC Then
    Select Case cFMF.strMemShape
    Case "Tri"
    CAMembership(1) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strCatch), cFMF.intFMFa, cFMF.intFMFb, cFMF.intFMFc)
    Case "Trap"
    CAMembership(1) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strCatch), cFMF.intFMFa, cFMF.intFMFb, cFMF.intFMFc, cFMF.intFMFd)
    End Select
              'Else
               'CAMembership(1) = 0
    End If

    Case "C2"
    If cYearData.strCatch <> "" And cYearData.dReachMaxCatch = cFMF.intMaxC Then
    Select Case cFMF.strMemShape
    Case "Tri"
    CAMembership(2) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strCatch), cFMF.intFMFa, cFMF.intFMFb, cFMF.intFMFc)
    Case "Trap"
     CAMembership(2) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strCatch), cFMF.intFMFa, cFMF.intFMFb, cFMF.intFMFc, cFMF.intFMFd)
     End Select
              'Else
               'CAMembership(2) = 0
    End If

    Case "C3"
    If cYearData.strCatch <> "" And cYearData.dReachMaxCatch = cFMF.intMaxC Then
    Select Case cFMF.strMemShape
    Case "Tri"
    CAMembership(3) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strCatch), cFMF.intFMFa, cFMF.intFMFb, cFMF.intFMFc)
    Case "Trap"
```

```
 CAMembership(3) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strCatch), cFMF.intFMFa, cFMF.intFMFb, cFMF.intFMFc, cFMF.intFMFd)
 End Select
            'Else
            'CAMembership(3) = 0
           End If

Case "C4"
If cYearData.strCatch <> "" And cYearData.dReachMaxCatch = cFMF.intMaxC Then
Select Case cFMF.strMemShape
Case "Tri"
CAMembership(4) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strCatch), cFMF.intFMFa, cFMF.intFMFb, cFMF.intFMFc)
Case "Trap"
CAMembership(4) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strCatch), cFMF.intFMFa, cFMF.intFMFb, cFMF.intFMFc, cFMF.intFMFd)
End Select
            'Else
            'CAMembership(4) = 0
End If

Case "C5"
If cYearData.strCatch <> "" And cYearData.dReachMaxCatch = cFMF.intMaxC Then
Select Case cFMF.strMemShape
Case "Tri"
CAMembership(5) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strCatch), cFMF.intFMFa, cFMF.intFMFb, cFMF.intFMFc)
Case "Trap"
CAMembership(5) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strCatch), cFMF.intFMFa, cFMF.intFMFb, cFMF.intFMFc, cFMF.intFMFd)
End Select
End If
CAMemDeplTemp = CAMembership(5)

'IF LE exists and >3yrs depleted                    'Dim LETemp As Integer

        If cYearData.strLE = "1" Then               'get whether LE is true or not
           LETemp = 1
        ElseIf cYearData.strLE = "" Then
           LETemp = 0
        End If

            If LETemp = 1 Then
              If CAMembership(5) > 0 Then
              IntDeplCount = IntDeplCount + 1
              Else
              IntDeplCount = 0
              End If

              'If IntDeplCount > 10 Then
              'IndDeplCount = 0
              'End If

           Set cFMF = cInputData.colFMF(8)
Select Case cFMF.strMemShape
Case "Tri"
CAMembership(5) = WorksheetFunction.Min(CAMemDeplTemp, Triangle(CDbl(IntDeplCount), cFMF.intFMFa,
cFMF.intFMFb, cFMF.intFMFc))
Case "Trap"
CAMembership(5) = WorksheetFunction.Min(CAMemDeplTemp, trapezoid(CDbl(IntDeplCount), cFMF.intFMFa,
cFMF.intFMFb, cFMF.intFMFc, cFMF.intFMFd))
End Select

        Set cFMF = cInputData.colFMF(7)

Select Case cFMF.strMemShape
Case "Tri"
CAMembership(6) = WorksheetFunction.Min(CAMemDeplTemp, Triangle(CDbl(IntDeplCount), cFMF.intFMFa,
cFMF.intFMFb, cFMF.intFMFc))
```

```
Case "Trap"
CAMembership(6) = WorksheetFunction.Min(CAMemDeplTemp, trapezoid(CDbl(IntDeplCount), cFMF.intFMFa,
cFMF.intFMFb, cFMF.intFMFc, cFMF.intFMFd))
End Select
            Set cFMF = cInputData.colFMF(j)
End If
End Select
Next j

      For j = 1 To UBound(CAMembership)
            Set cFMF = cInputData.colFMF(j)
               If cYearData.strCatch <> "" Then
               rngCAMem(2 + 7 * (rvcnt) + j, yr + 1) = CAMembership(j)
               rngCAMem(2 + 7 * (rvcnt) + 1, 1) = "C1"
               rngCAMem(2 + 7 * (rvcnt) + 2, 1) = "C2"
               rngCAMem(2 + 7 * (rvcnt) + 3, 1) = "C3"
               rngCAMem(2 + 7 * (rvcnt) + 4, 1) = "C4"
               rngCAMem(2 + 7 * (rvcnt) + 5, 1) = "C5"
               rngCAMem(2 + 7 * (rvcnt) + 6, 1) = "C6"
            Else
               rngCAMem(2 + 7 * (rvcnt) + j, yr + 1) = ""
            End If

'make a new year data for the current river
      'set the info for the current year data for the current river

        Next j

      'Store membership in class
      If cYearData.strCatch <> "" Then
         cYearData.dC1 = CAMembership(1)
         cYearData.dC2 = CAMembership(2)
         cYearData.dC3 = CAMembership(3)
         cYearData.dC4 = CAMembership(4)
         cYearData.dC5 = CAMembership(5)
         cYearData.dC6 = CAMembership(6)
      End If
      ReDim CAMembership(6)
   Next yr

    rngCAMem(2 + 7 * (rvcnt), 1) = cRiver.strName
    rvcnt = rvcnt + 1

   End If

Next i
End Sub
```

---

```
Sub GetMembershipCPUE(ColRivers As Collection, ColFuzzyData2 As Collection)

'This sub function calculates the membership for the CPUE data

Dim rngOtherFMF As Range
Dim cRiver As cRiver
Dim cRiverdata As cRiverdata
Dim cYearData As cYearData
Dim cInputData As cInputData
Dim cFMF2 As cFMF2
Dim rngCPUEMem As Range
Dim i, j, yr, rvcnt As Integer                              'rvcnt = river count
Dim CPUEMembership() As Double

ReDim CPUEMembership(5)
Set rngOtherFMF = Range("Otherfmf")
```

```
Set cRiver = New cRiver
Set cRiverdata = New cRiverdata
Set cYearData = New cYearData
Set cInputData = New cInputData
Set cInputData = ColFuzzyData2(1)
Set rngCPUEMem = Range("CPUEOutput")
rvcnt = 0

For i = 1 To ColRivers.Count
   Set cRiver = ColRivers(i)
   Set cRiverdata = cRiver.colRiverData(1)
   If cRiverdata.bolCPUE = True Then

For yr = 1 To cRiver.colYearData.Count

'loop through each year' catch
   Set cYearData = cRiver.colYearData(yr)

For j = 1 To cInputData.colFMF2.Count
   Set cFMF2 = cInputData.colFMF2(j)
   Select Case cFMF2.strCatName2

Case "C1"
If cYearData.strCPUE <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
CPUEMembership(1) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strCPUE), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
CPUEMembership(1) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strCPUE), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
         'Else
         'CPUEMembership(1) = 0
End If

Case "C2"
If cYearData.strCPUE <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
CPUEMembership(2) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strCPUE), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
CPUEMembership(2) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strCPUE), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
        'Else
        'CPUEMembership(2) = 0
End If

Case "C3"
If cYearData.strCPUE <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
CPUEMembership(3) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strCPUE), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
CPUEMembership(3) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strCPUE), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
         'Else
         'CPUEMembership(3) = 0
End If

Case "C4"
If cYearData.strCPUE <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
```

```
Case "Tri"
CPUEMembership(4) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strCPUE), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
CPUEMembership(4) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strCPUE), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
        'Else
        'CPUEMembership(4) = 0
End If

Case "C5"
If cYearData.strCPUE <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
CPUEMembership(5) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strCPUE), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
CPUEMembership(5) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strCPUE), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
        'Else
        'CPUEMembership(5) = 0

End If
End Select

Next j

   For j = 1 To UBound(CPUEMembership)
            Set cFMF2 = cInputData.colFMF2(j)
            If cYearData.strCPUE <> "" Then
            rngCPUEMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + j, yr + 1) = CPUEMembership(j)
            rngCPUEMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 1, 1) = "C1"
            rngCPUEMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 2, 1) = "C2"
            rngCPUEMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 3, 1) = "C3"
            rngCPUEMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 4, 1) = "C4"
            rngCPUEMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 5, 1) = "C5"
         Else
            rngCPUEMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + j, yr + 1) = ""
         End If
         'CPUEFinalMem(rvcnt, j, yr) = CPUEMembership(j)
   Next j
      'Store membership in class
      If cYearData.strCPUE <> "" Then
         cYearData.dCPUE1 = CPUEMembership(1)
         cYearData.dCPUE2 = CPUEMembership(2)
         cYearData.dCPUE3 = CPUEMembership(3)
         cYearData.dCPUE4 = CPUEMembership(4)
         cYearData.dCPUE5 = CPUEMembership(5)
      End If
      ReDim CPUEMembership(5)
Next yr
            rngCPUEMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt), 1) = cRiver.strName
            rvcnt = rvcnt + 1
End If

Next i

End Sub

Sub GetMembershipTF(ColRivers As Collection, ColFuzzyData2 As Collection)

'This sub function calculates the membership for the TF data

Dim rngOtherFMF As Range
```

```
Dim cRiver As cRiver
Dim cRiverdata As cRiverdata
Dim cYearData As cYearData
Dim cInputData As cInputData
Dim cFMF2 As cFMF2
Dim rngTFMem As Range
Dim i, j, yr, rvcnt As Integer
Dim CPUEMembership() As Double

ReDim TFMembership(5)
Set rngOtherFMF = Range("Otherfmf")
Set cRiver = New cRiver
Set cRiverdata = New cRiverdata
Set cYearData = New cYearData
Set cInputData = New cInputData
Set cInputData = ColFuzzyData2(1)
Set rngTFMem = Range("TFOutput")
rvcnt = 0       'river count

For i = 1 To ColRivers.Count
   Set cRiver = ColRivers(i)
   Set cRiverdata = cRiver.colRiverData(1)
   If cRiverdata.bolTF = True Then

For yr = 1 To cRiver.colYearData.Count

'loop through each year' T.fish
      Set cYearData = cRiver.colYearData(yr)

For j = 1 To cInputData.colFMF2.Count
   Set cFMF2 = cInputData.colFMF2(j)
   Select Case cFMF2.strCatName2

Case "C1"
If cYearData.strTF <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
TFMembership(1) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strTF), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
TFMembership(1) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strTF), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
         'Else
          'TFMembership(1) = 0
End If

Case "C2"
If cYearData.strTF <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
TFMembership(2) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strTF), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
TFMembership(2) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strTF), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
         'Else
         'TFMembership(2) = 0
End If

Case "C3"
If cYearData.strTF <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
TFMembership(3) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strTF), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
```

```
Case "Trap"
TFMembership(3) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strTF), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
        'Else
       'TFMembership(3) = 0
End If

Case "C4"
If cYearData.strTF <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
TFMembership(4) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strTF), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
TFMembership(4) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strTF), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
        'Else
        'TFMembership(4) = 0
End If

Case "C5"
If cYearData.strTF <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
TFMembership(5) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strTF), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
TFMembership(5) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strTF), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
       'Else
       'TFMembership(5) = 0
End If
End Select

Next j

   For j = 1 To UBound(TFMembership)
            Set cFMF2 = cInputData.colFMF2(j)
            If cYearData.strTF <> "" Then
            rngTFMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + j, yr + 1) = TFMembership(j)
            rngTFMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 1, 1) = "C1"
            rngTFMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 2, 1) = "C2"
            rngTFMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 3, 1) = "C3"
            rngTFMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 4, 1) = "C4"
            rngTFMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 5, 1) = "C5"
          Else
            rngTFMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + j, yr + 1) = ""
            End If
   Next j
     'Store membership in class
     If cYearData.strTF <> "" Then
        cYearData.dTF1 = TFMembership(1)
        cYearData.dTF2 = TFMembership(2)
        cYearData.dTF3 = TFMembership(3)
        cYearData.dTF4 = TFMembership(4)
        cYearData.dTF5 = TFMembership(5)
      End If
ReDim TFMembership(5)

Next yr
            rngTFMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt), 1) = cRiver.strName
            rvcnt = rvcnt + 1
End If
```

```
    Next i

End Sub

Sub GetMembershipLS(ColRivers As Collection, ColFuzzyData2 As Collection)

'This sub function calculates the membership for the LS data

Dim rngOtherFMF As Range
Dim cRiver As cRiver
Dim cRiverdata As cRiverdata
Dim cYearData As cYearData
Dim cInputData As cInputData
Dim cFMF2 As cFMF2
Dim rngLSMem As Range
Dim i, j, yr, rvcnt As Integer
Dim LSMembership() As Double

ReDim LSMembership(5)
Set rngOtherFMF = Range("Otherfmf")
Set cRiver = New cRiver
Set cRiverdata = New cRiverdata
Set cYearData = New cYearData
Set cInputData = New cInputData
Set cInputData = ColFuzzyData2(1)
Set rngLSMem = Range("LSOutput")
rvcnt = 0       'river count

For i = 1 To ColRivers.Count
   Set cRiver = ColRivers(i)
   Set cRiverdata = cRiver.colRiverData(1)
   If cRiverdata.bolLS = True Then

For yr = 1 To cRiver.colYearData.Count

'loop through each year' Larval surveys
       Set cYearData = cRiver.colYearData(yr)

For j = 1 To cInputData.colFMF2.Count
   Set cFMF2 = cInputData.colFMF2(j)
   Select Case cFMF2.strCatName2

Case "C1"
 If cYearData.strLS <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
LSMembership(1) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strLS), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
LSMembership(1) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strLS), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
         'Else
         'LSMembership(1) = 0
End If

Case "C2"
If cYearData.strLS <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
LSMembership(2) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strLS), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
LSMembership(2) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strLS), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
```

```
        'Else
        'LSMembership(2) = 0
End If

Case "C3"
If cYearData.strLS <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
LSMembership(3) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strLS), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
LSMembership(3) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strLS), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
        'Else
        'LSMembership(3) = 0
End If

Case "C4"
If cYearData.strLS <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
LSMembership(4) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strLS), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
LSMembership(4) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strLS), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
        'Else
        'LSMembership(4) = 0
End If

Case "C5"
If cYearData.strLS <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
LSMembership(5) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strLS), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
LSMembership(5) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strLS), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
        'Else
        'LSMembership(5) = 0

End If
End Select

Next j

   For j = 1 To UBound(LSMembership)
        Set cFMF2 = cInputData.colFMF2(j)
        If cYearData.strLS <> "" Then
           rngLSMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + j, yr + 1) = LSMembership(j)
           rngLSMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 1, 1) = "C1"
           rngLSMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 2, 1) = "C2"
           rngLSMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 3, 1) = "C3"
           rngLSMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 4, 1) = "C4"
           rngLSMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 5, 1) = "C5"
        Else
           rngLSMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + j, yr + 1) = ""
           End If
   Next j

    'Store membership in class
   If cYearData.strLS <> "" Then
      cYearData.dLS1 = LSMembership(1)
```

```
        cYearData.dLS2 = LSMembership(2)
        cYearData.dLS3 = LSMembership(3)
        cYearData.dLS4 = LSMembership(4)
        cYearData.dLS5 = LSMembership(5)
    End If

     ReDim LSMembership(5)

Next yr
    rngLSMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt), 1) = cRiver.strName
    rvcnt = rvcnt + 1
End If

Next i

End Sub

Sub GetMembershipSSB(ColRivers As Collection, ColFuzzyData2 As Collection)

'This sub function calculates the membership for the SSB data

Dim rngOtherFMF As Range
Dim cRiver As cRiver
Dim cRiverdata As cRiverdata
Dim cYearData As cYearData
Dim cInputData As cInputData
Dim cFMF2 As cFMF2
Dim rngSSBMem As Range
Dim i, j, yr, rvcnt As Integer
Dim SSBMembership()

ReDim SSBMembership(Range("Otherfmf").Columns.Count - 1)
Set rngOtherFMF = Range("Otherfmf")
Set cRiver = New cRiver
Set cRiverdata = New cRiverdata
Set cYearData = New cYearData
Set cInputData = New cInputData
Set cInputData = ColFuzzyData2(1)
Set rngSSBMem = Range("SSBOutput")
rvcnt = 0       'river count

For i = 1 To ColRivers.Count
    Set cRiver = ColRivers(i)
    Set cRiverdata = cRiver.colRiverData(1)
    If cRiverdata.bolSSB = True Then

For yr = 1 To cRiver.colYearData.Count

'loop through each year' SSB estimates
        Set cYearData = cRiver.colYearData(yr)

For j = 1 To cInputData.colFMF2.Count
    Set cFMF2 = cInputData.colFMF2(j)
    Select Case cFMF2.strCatName2

Case "C1"
If cYearData.strSSB <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
SSBMembership(1) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strSSB), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
SSBMembership(1) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strSSB), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
```

```
          'Else
          'SSBMembership(1) = 0
End If

Case "C2"
If cYearData.strSSB <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
SSBMembership(2) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strSSB), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
SSBMembership(2) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strSSB), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
          'Else
          'SSBMembership(2) = 0
End If

Case "C3"
If cYearData.strSSB <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
SSBMembership(3) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strSSB), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
SSBMembership(3) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strSSB), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
         'Else
         'SSBMembership(3) = 0
End If

Case "C4"
If cYearData.strSSB <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
SSBMembership(4) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strSSB), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
SSBMembership(4) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strSSB), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
         'Else
         'SSBMembership(4) = 0
End If

Case "C5"
If cYearData.strSSB <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
SSBMembership(5) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strSSB), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
SSBMembership(5) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strSSB), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
         ' Else
         'SSBMembership(5) = 0
End If
End Select

Next j

   For j = 1 To UBound(SSBMembership)
         Set cFMF2 = cInputData.colFMF2(j)
            If cYearData.strSSB <> "" Then
            rngSSBMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + j, yr + 1) = SSBMembership(j)
            rngSSBMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 1, 1) = "C1"
```

```
            rngSSBMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 2, 1) = "C2"
            rngSSBMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 3, 1) = "C3"
            rngSSBMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 4, 1) = "C4"
            rngSSBMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 5, 1) = "C5"
         Else
         rngSSBMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + j, yr + 1) = ""
         End If
   Next j
    'Store membership in class
   If cYearData.strSSB <> "" Then
      cYearData.dSSB1 = SSBMembership(1)
      cYearData.dSSB2 = SSBMembership(2)
      cYearData.dSSB3 = SSBMembership(3)
      cYearData.dSSB4 = SSBMembership(4)
      cYearData.dSSB5 = SSBMembership(5)
   End If

ReDim SSBMembership(Range("Otherfmf").Columns.Count - 1)

Next yr
    rngSSBMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt), 1) = cRiver.strName
    rvcnt = rvcnt + 1
End If

Next i

End Sub

Sub GetMembershipRC(ColRivers As Collection, ColFuzzyData2 As Collection)

'This sub function calculates the membership for the Report Comments data

Dim rngOtherFMF As Range
Dim cRiver As cRiver
Dim cRiverdata As cRiverdata
Dim cYearData As cYearData
Dim cInputData As cInputData
Dim cFMF2 As cFMF2
Dim rngRCMem As Range
Dim i, j, yr, rvcnt As Integer
Dim RCMembership() As Double

ReDim RCMembership(Range("Otherfmf").Columns.Count - 1)
Set rngOtherFMF = Range("Otherfmf")
Set cRiver = New cRiver
Set cRiverdata = New cRiverdata
Set cYearData = New cYearData
Set cInputData = New cInputData
Set cInputData = ColFuzzyData2(1)
Set rngRCMem = Range("RCOutput")
rvcnt = 0       'river count

For i = 1 To ColRivers.Count
   Set cRiver = ColRivers(i)
   Set cRiverdata = cRiver.colRiverData(1)
   If cRiverdata.bolRC = True Then

For yr = 1 To cRiver.colYearData.Count

'loop through each year' RC comment data
      Set cYearData = cRiver.colYearData(yr)

For j = 1 To cInputData.colFMF2.Count
   Set cFMF2 = cInputData.colFMF2(j)
```

```
   Select Case cFMF2.strCatName2

Case "C1"
If cYearData.strRC <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
RCMembership(1) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strRC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
RCMembership(1) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strRC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
          'Else
          'RCMembership(1) = 0
End If

      Case "C2"
If cYearData.strRC <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
      Case "Tri"
RCMembership(2) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strRC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
RCMembership(2) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strRC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
          'Else
          'RCMembership(2) = 0
End If

Case "C3"
If cYearData.strRC <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
RCMembership(3) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strRC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
RCMembership(3) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strRC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
         'Else
         'RCMembership(3) = 0
End If

Case "C4"
If cYearData.strRC <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
RCMembership(4) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strRC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
RCMembership(4) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strRC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
        'Else
        'RCMembership(4) = 0
End If

Case "C5"
If cYearData.strRC <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
RCMembership(5) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strRC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
RCMembership(5) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strRC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
       'Else
```

```
        'RCMembership(5) = 0
End If
End Select

Next j

   For j = 1 To UBound(RCMembership)
         Set cFMF2 = cInputData.colFMF2(j)
            If cYearData.strRC <> "" Then
            rngRCMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + j, yr + 1) = RCMembership(j)
            rngRCMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 1, 1) = "C1"
            rngRCMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 2, 1) = "C2"
            rngRCMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 3, 1) = "C3"
            rngRCMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 4, 1) = "C4"
            rngRCMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 5, 1) = "C5"
         Else
         rngRCMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + j, yr + 1) = ""
         End If
   Next j

    'Store membership in class

     If cYearData.strRC <> "" Then
      cYearData.dRC1 = RCMembership(1)
      cYearData.dRC2 = RCMembership(2)
      cYearData.dRC3 = RCMembership(3)
      cYearData.dRC4 = RCMembership(4)
      cYearData.dRC5 = RCMembership(5)
   End If

ReDim RCMembership(Range("Otherfmf").Columns.Count - 1)

Next yr
    rngRCMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt), 1) = cRiver.strName
    rvcnt = rvcnt + 1
End If

Next i

End Sub

Sub GetMembershipILC(ColRivers As Collection, ColFuzzyData2 As Collection)

'This sub function calculates the membership for the Interview or Local Comments

Dim rngOtherFMF As Range
Dim cRiver As cRiver
Dim cRiverdata As cRiverdata
Dim cYearData As cYearData
Dim cInputData As cInputData
Dim cFMF2 As cFMF2
Dim rngILCMem As Range
Dim i, j, yr, rvcnt As Integer
Dim ILCMembership() As Double

ReDim ILCMembership(Range("Otherfmf").Columns.Count - 1)
Set rngOtherFMF = Range("Otherfmf")
Set cRiver = New cRiver
Set cRiverdata = New cRiverdata
Set cYearData = New cYearData
Set cInputData = New cInputData
Set cInputData = ColFuzzyData2(1)
Set rngILCMem = Range("ILCOutput")
rvcnt = 0       'river count
```

```
For i = 1 To ColRivers.Count
   Set cRiver = ColRivers(i)
   Set cRiverdata = cRiver.colRiverData(1)
   If cRiverdata.bolILC = True Then

For yr = 1 To cRiver.colYearData.Count

'loop through each year' RC comment data
      Set cYearData = cRiver.colYearData(yr)

For j = 1 To cInputData.colFMF2.Count
   Set cFMF2 = cInputData.colFMF2(j)
   Select Case cFMF2.strCatName2

Case "C1"
If cYearData.strILC <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
ILCMembership(1) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strILC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
ILCMembership(1) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strILC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
          'Else
          'ILCMembership(1) = 0
      End If

Case "C2"
If cYearData.strILC <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
ILCMembership(2) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strILC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
ILCMembership(2) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strILC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
          'Else
          'ILCMembership(2) = 0
End If

Case "C3"
If cYearData.strILC <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
ILCMembership(3) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strILC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
ILCMembership(3) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strILC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
         'Else
         I'LCMembership(3) = 0
End If

Case "C4"
If cYearData.strILC <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
ILCMembership(4) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strILC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
ILCMembership(4) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strILC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
        'Else
```

```
        'ILCMembership(4) = 0
End If

Case "C5"
If cYearData.strILC <> "" Then
Select Case cFMF2.strMemShape2
Case "Tri"
ILCMembership(5) = Triangle(CDbl(cYearData.strILC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c)
Case "Trap"
ILCMembership(5) = trapezoid(CDbl(cYearData.strILC), cFMF2.intFMF2a, cFMF2.intFMF2b, cFMF2.intFMF2c,
cFMF2.intFMF2d)
End Select
        'Else
        'ILCMembership(5) = 0
End If
End Select

Next j

   For j = 1 To UBound(ILCMembership)
         Set cFMF2 = cInputData.colFMF2(j)
            If cYearData.strILC <> "" Then
            rngILCMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + j, yr + 1) = ILCMembership(j)
            rngILCMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 1, 1) = "C1"
            rngILCMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 2, 1) = "C2"
            rngILCMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 3, 1) = "C3"
            rngILCMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 4, 1) = "C4"
            rngILCMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + 5, 1) = "C5"
         Else
         rngILCMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt) + j, yr + 1) = ""
         End If
   Next j
              'Store membership in class
   If cYearData.strILC <> "" Then
      cYearData.dILC1 = ILCMembership(1)
      cYearData.dILC2 = ILCMembership(2)
      cYearData.dILC3 = ILCMembership(3)
      cYearData.dILC4 = ILCMembership(4)
      cYearData.dILC5 = ILCMembership(5)
   End If

ReDim ILCMembership(Range("Otherfmf").Columns.Count - 1)

Next yr
    rngILCMem(2 + 6 * (rvcnt), 1) = cRiver.strName
    rvcnt = rvcnt + 1
End If

Next i

End Sub

Public CF() As Double                                   'Get confidence factor from table
Public dCAFinalMem() As Double
Public dCPUEFinalMem() As Double
Public dTFFinalMem() As Double
Public dSSBFinalMem() As Double
Public dLSFinalMem() As Double
Public dRCFinalMem() As Double
Public dILCFinalMem() As Double
Public FinalMembership() As Double
Public ABDN() As Double                         'ABDN(abundance level, data type)
Sub ReadCF()
Dim rngCF As Range
```

```
Dim i As Integer
Set rngCF = Range("rngCF")
ReDim CF(rngCF.Rows.Count)

For i = 1 To rngCF.Rows.Count
   CF(rngCF(i, 1)) = rngCF(i, 2)
Next

End Sub
```

---

```
Public Sub Reasoning(ColRivers As Collection)
Dim rngData As Range
Dim cRiver As cRiver                              'name the business objects for later use
Dim cYearData As cYearData
Dim cRiverdata As cRiverdata
Dim LETemp As Integer
Dim CAMemTemp() As Double
Dim CPUEMemTemp() As Double
Dim TFMemTemp() As Double
Dim LSMemTemp() As Double
Dim SSBMemTemp() As Double
Dim RCMemTemp() As Double
Dim ILCMemTemp() As Double
Dim RngResults As Range
Dim FinalAbd As Double
Dim SumMemTemp As Double

Set RngResults = Range("rngresults")
RngResults.ClearContents
Set cRiver = New cRiver
Set cRiverdata = New cRiverdata
Set cYearData = New cYearData
Dim i, j, k, yr, rvcnt As Integer

For i = 1 To RngResults.Columns.Count
   RngResults(1, i + 1) = 1877 + i
Next i
rvcnt = 0
For i = 1 To ColRivers.Count                      'loop by river
   Set cRiver = ColRivers(i)
   Set cRiverdata = cRiver.colRiverData(1)

   For yr = 1 To cRiver.colYearData.Count         'loop by year
      Set cYearData = cRiver.colYearData(yr)
      FinalAbd = 0: SumMemTemp = 0

      ReDim CAMemTemp(6)
      ReDim CPUEMemTemp(5)
      ReDim TFMemTemp(5)
      ReDim LSMemTemp(5)
      ReDim SSBMemTemp(5)
      ReDim RCMemTemp(5)
      ReDim ILCMemTemp(5)

      If cYearData.strLE = "1" Then               'get whether LE is true or not
         LETemp = 1
      ElseIf cYearData.strLE = "" Then
         LETemp = 0
      End If

      'store membership in temp variables
      'For j = 1 To 5

      CAMemTemp(1) = cYearData.dC1
```

```
        CAMemTemp(2) = cYearData.dC2
        CAMemTemp(3) = cYearData.dC3
        CAMemTemp(4) = cYearData.dC4
        CAMemTemp(5) = cYearData.dC5
        CAMemTemp(6) = cYearData.dC6

        CPUEMemTemp(1) = cYearData.dCPUE1
        CPUEMemTemp(2) = cYearData.dCPUE2
        CPUEMemTemp(3) = cYearData.dCPUE3
        CPUEMemTemp(4) = cYearData.dCPUE4
        CPUEMemTemp(5) = cYearData.dCPUE5

        LSMemTemp(1) = cYearData.dLS1
        LSMemTemp(2) = cYearData.dLS2
        LSMemTemp(3) = cYearData.dLS3
        LSMemTemp(4) = cYearData.dLS4
        LSMemTemp(5) = cYearData.dLS5

        SSBMemTemp(1) = cYearData.dSSB1
        SSBMemTemp(2) = cYearData.dSSB2
        SSBMemTemp(3) = cYearData.dSSB3
        SSBMemTemp(4) = cYearData.dSSB4
        SSBMemTemp(5) = cYearData.dSSB5

        TFMemTemp(1) = cYearData.dTF1
        TFMemTemp(2) = cYearData.dTF2
        TFMemTemp(3) = cYearData.dTF3
        TFMemTemp(4) = cYearData.dTF4
        TFMemTemp(5) = cYearData.dTF5

        RCMemTemp(1) = cYearData.dRC1
        RCMemTemp(2) = cYearData.dRC2
        RCMemTemp(3) = cYearData.dRC3
        RCMemTemp(4) = cYearData.dRC4
        RCMemTemp(5) = cYearData.dRC5

        ILCMemTemp(1) = cYearData.dILC1
        ILCMemTemp(2) = cYearData.dILC2
        ILCMemTemp(3) = cYearData.dILC3
        ILCMemTemp(4) = cYearData.dILC4
        ILCMemTemp(5) = cYearData.dILC5

        'repeat with other data types
        'Next

        Call Rules(CAMemTemp(), CPUEMemTemp(), SSBMemTemp(), TFMemTemp(), LSMemTemp(), RCMemTemp(),
ILCMemTemp(), LETemp)

          For j = 1 To 5
              RngResults(2 + 7 * (rvcnt) + j, yr + 1) = FinalMembership(j - 1)
            SumMemTemp = SumMemTemp + FinalMembership(j - 1)                'is the sum of all memberships
        Next j
        If SumMemTemp > 0 Then                                              'if sum is greater than 0 then...
            FinalAbd = FinalMembership(0) * 100 + FinalMembership(1) * 75 + FinalMembership(2) * 50 + FinalMembership(3) *
25 + FinalMembership(4) * 1
            FinalAbd = FinalAbd / SumMemTemp
        Else
            FinalAbd = 0
        End If

        RngResults(2 + 7 * (rvcnt) + 1, 1) = "ABDN1"
        RngResults(2 + 7 * (rvcnt) + 2, 1) = "ABDN2"
        RngResults(2 + 7 * (rvcnt) + 3, 1) = "ABDN3"
        RngResults(2 + 7 * (rvcnt) + 4, 1) = "ABDN4"
```

```
      RngResults(2 + 7 * (rvcnt) + 5, 1) = "ABDN5"
      RngResults(2 + 7 * (rvcnt) + 6, 1) = "Final"

      If FinalAbd > 0 Then                                    'Store final abundance membership to FinalAbd()
         RngResults(2 + 7 * (rvcnt) + 6, yr + 1) = FinalAbd   'Print FinalAbd() on worksheet
      Else
         RngResults(2 + 7 * (rvcnt) + 6, yr + 1) = ""
      End If

    Next yr
   RngResults(2 + 7 * (rvcnt), 1) = cRiver.strName
   rvcnt = rvcnt + 1
Next i

End Sub

Public Sub Rules(CAMembership() As Double, CPUEMembership() As Double, SSBMembership() As Double,
TFMembership() As Double, LSMembership() As Double, RCMembership() As Double, ILCMembership() As Double, LE As
Integer)

'shift membership according to rule matrices      Or = Max function    And = Min function

Dim i As Integer
Dim ConfRCILC(5) As Double
ReDim FinalMembership(5)
ReDim ABDN(4, 14)

For i = 1 To 5

    If RCMembership(i) * CF(6) > ILCMembership(i) * CF(7) Then
        ConfRCILC(i) = RCMembership(i)
    Else
        ConfRCILC(i) = ILCMembership(i)
   End If

Next i

If WorksheetFunction.Max(RCMembership(1), RCMembership(2), RCMembership(3), RCMembership(4), RCMembership(5))
* CF(6) > 0 Or WorksheetFunction.Max(ILCMembership(1), ILCMembership(2), ILCMembership(3), ILCMembership(4),
ILCMembership(5)) > 0 Then

       'If RC Is L Then ABDN = L
      ABDN(4, 6) = RCMembership(5) * CF(6)
      'If RC Is ML Then ABDN = ML
      ABDN(3, 6) = RCMembership(4) * CF(6)
      'If RC Is M Then ABDN = M
      ABDN(2, 6) = RCMembership(3) * CF(6)
      'If RC Is MH Then ABDN = MH
      ABDN(1, 6) = RCMembership(2) * CF(6)
      'If RC Is H Then ABDN = H
      ABDN(0, 6) = RCMembership(1) * CF(6)

         'If ILC Is L Then ABDN = L
      ABDN(4, 7) = ILCMembership(5) * CF(7)
      'If ILC Is ML Then ABDN = ML
      ABDN(3, 7) = ILCMembership(4) * CF(7)
      'If ILC Is M Then ABDN = M
      ABDN(2, 7) = ILCMembership(3) * CF(7)
      'If ILC Is MH Then ABDN = MH
      ABDN(1, 7) = ILCMembership(2) * CF(7)
      'If ILC Is H Then ABDN = H
      ABDN(0, 7) = ILCMembership(1) * CF(7)
```

```
 'rules when RC or ILC exist and LS exists AND = min   OR = max

ABDN(4, 9) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(LSMembership(5), LSMembership(4), LSMembership(3)),
ConfRCILC(5)) * CF(9)
ABDN(3, 9) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(LSMembership(2), LSMembership(1)), ConfRCILC(5)) *
CF(9)
ABDN(3, 9) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(LSMembership(5),
LSMembership(4), LSMembership(3)), ConfRCILC(4)) * CF(9), ABDN(3, 9))
ABDN(2, 9) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(LSMembership(2), LSMembership(1)), ConfRCILC(4)) *
CF(9)
ABDN(3, 9) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(LSMembership(5), ConfRCILC(3)) * CF(9), ABDN(3, 9))
ABDN(2, 9) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(LSMembership(4),
LSMembership(3), LSMembership(2), LSMembership(1)), ConfRCILC(3)) * CF(9), ABDN(2, 9))
ABDN(2, 9) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(LSMembership(5),
LSMembership(4)), ConfRCILC(2)) * CF(9), ABDN(2, 9))
ABDN(1, 9) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(LSMembership(3), LSMembership(2), LSMembership(1)),
ConfRCILC(2)) * CF(9)
ABDN(2, 9) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(LSMembership(5),
LSMembership(4)), ConfRCILC(1)) * CF(9), ABDN(2, 9))
ABDN(1, 9) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(LSMembership(3),
LSMembership(2)), ConfRCILC(1)) * CF(9), ABDN(1, 9))
ABDN(0, 9) = WorksheetFunction.Min(LSMembership(1), ConfRCILC(1)) * CF(9)
```

---

```
'Rules when SSB and RC or ILC exist

ABDN(4, 10) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(SSBMembership(5), SSBMembership(4),
SSBMembership(3)), ConfRCILC(5)) * CF(10)
ABDN(3, 10) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(SSBMembership(2), SSBMembership(1)), ConfRCILC(5)) *
CF(10)
ABDN(3, 10) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(SSBMembership(5),
SSBMembership(4), SSBMembership(3)), ConfRCILC(4)) * CF(10), ABDN(3, 10))
ABDN(2, 10) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(SSBMembership(2), SSBMembership(1)), ConfRCILC(4)) *
CF(10)
ABDN(3, 10) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(SSBMembership(5), ConfRCILC(3)) * CF(10), ABDN(3,
10))
ABDN(2, 10) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(SSBMembership(4),
SSBMembership(3), SSBMembership(2), SSBMembership(1)), ConfRCILC(3)) * CF(10), ABDN(2, 10))
ABDN(2, 10) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(SSBMembership(5),
SSBMembership(4)), ConfRCILC(2)) * CF(10), ABDN(2, 10))
ABDN(1, 10) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(SSBMembership(3), SSBMembership(2),
SSBMembership(1)), ConfRCILC(2)) * CF(10)
ABDN(2, 10) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(SSBMembership(5),
SSBMembership(4)), ConfRCILC(1)) * CF(10), ABDN(2, 10))
ABDN(1, 10) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(SSBMembership(3),
SSBMembership(2)), ConfRCILC(1)) * CF(10), ABDN(1, 10))
ABDN(0, 10) = WorksheetFunction.Min(LSMembership(1), ConfRCILC(1)) * CF(10)
```

---

```
'Rules when TF and RC or ILC exist

ABDN(4, 11) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(TFMembership(5), TFMembership(4), TFMembership(3)),
ConfRCILC(5)) * CF(11)
ABDN(3, 11) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(TFMembership(2), TFMembership(1)), ConfRCILC(5)) *
CF(11)
ABDN(3, 11) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(TFMembership(5),
TFMembership(4), TFMembership(3)), ConfRCILC(4)) * CF(11), ABDN(3, 11))
ABDN(2, 11) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(TFMembership(2), TFMembership(1)), ConfRCILC(4)) *
CF(11)
ABDN(3, 11) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(TFMembership(5), ConfRCILC(3)) * CF(11), ABDN(3, 11))
ABDN(2, 11) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(TFMembership(4),
TFMembership(3), TFMembership(2), TFMembership(1)), ConfRCILC(3)) * CF(11), ABDN(2, 11))
ABDN(2, 11) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(TFMembership(5),
TFMembership(4)), ConfRCILC(2)) * CF(11), ABDN(2, 11))
```

```
ABDN(1, 11) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(TFMembership(3), TFMembership(2), TFMembership(1)),
ConfRCILC(2)) * CF(11)
ABDN(2, 11) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(TFMembership(5),
TFMembership(4)), ConfRCILC(1)) * CF(11), ABDN(2, 11))
ABDN(1, 11) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(TFMembership(3),
TFMembership(2)), ConfRCILC(1)) * CF(11), ABDN(1, 11))
ABDN(0, 11) = WorksheetFunction.Min(TFMembership(1), ConfRCILC(1)) * CF(11)
```

---

```
'Rules when CPUE and  RC or ILC exist

ABDN(4, 12) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CPUEMembership(5), CPUEMembership(4),
CPUEMembership(3)), ConfRCILC(5)) * CF(12)
ABDN(3, 12) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CPUEMembership(2), CPUEMembership(1)),
ConfRCILC(5)) * CF(12)
ABDN(3, 12) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CPUEMembership(5),
CPUEMembership(4), CPUEMembership(3)), ConfRCILC(4)) * CF(12), ABDN(3, 12))
ABDN(2, 12) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CPUEMembership(2), CPUEMembership(1)),
ConfRCILC(4)) * CF(12)
ABDN(3, 12) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(CPUEMembership(5), ConfRCILC(3)) * CF(12), ABDN(3,
12))
ABDN(2, 12) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CPUEMembership(4),
CPUEMembership(3), CPUEMembership(2), CPUEMembership(1)), ConfRCILC(3)) * CF(12), ABDN(2, 12))
ABDN(2, 12) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CPUEMembership(5),
CPUEMembership(4)), ConfRCILC(2)) * CF(12), ABDN(2, 12))
ABDN(1, 12) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CPUEMembership(3), CPUEMembership(2),
CPUEMembership(1)), ConfRCILC(2)) * CF(12)
ABDN(2, 12) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CPUEMembership(5),
CPUEMembership(4)), ConfRCILC(1)) * CF(12), ABDN(2, 12))
ABDN(1, 12) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CPUEMembership(3),
CPUEMembership(2)), ConfRCILC(1)) * CF(12), ABDN(1, 12))
ABDN(0, 12) = WorksheetFunction.Min(CPUEMembership(1), ConfRCILC(1)) * CF(12)
```

---

```
'When LE, RC/ILC AND CA exist                Or = Max function    And = Min function

        If LE = 1 Then

        ReDim CAMemTemp(6)

        CAMemTemp(4) = WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMembership(5), CAMembership(6)) * CF(0)
        ABDN(3, 1) = WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMembership(5), CAMembership(6)) * CF(0)

        CAMemTemp(3) = CAMembership(4) * CF(0)
        ABDN(2, 1) = CAMembership(4) * CF(0)

        CAMemTemp(2) = WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMembership(2), CAMembership(3)) * CF(0)
        ABDN(1, 1) = WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMembership(2), CAMembership(3)) * CF(0)

        CAMemTemp(1) = CAMembership(1) * CF(0)
        ABDN(0, 1) = CAMembership(1) * CF(0)

ABDN(3, 13) = WorksheetFunction.Min(CAMemTemp(6), ConfRCILC(5)) * CF(13)
ABDN(4, 13) = WorksheetFunction.Min(CAMemTemp(4), ConfRCILC(5)) * CF(13)
ABDN(3, 13) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(CAMemTemp(3), ConfRCILC(5)) * CF(13), ABDN(3, 13))
ABDN(2, 13) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMemTemp(2), CAMemTemp(1)), ConfRCILC(5)) *
CF(13)
ABDN(3, 13) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(CAMemTemp(6), CAMemTemp(4), CAMemTemp(3),
ConfRCILC(4)) * CF(13), ABDN(3, 13))
ABDN(2, 13) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMemTemp(2),
CAMemTemp(1)), ConfRCILC(4)) * CF(13), ABDN(2, 13))
ABDN(2, 13) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMemTemp(6),
CAMemTemp(4), CAMemTemp(3), CAMemTemp(2)), ConfRCILC(3)) * CF(13), ABDN(2, 13))
ABDN(1, 13) = WorksheetFunction.Min(CAMemTemp(1), ConfRCILC(3)) * CF(13)
```

```
ABDN(2, 13) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMemTemp(6),
CAMemTemp(4)), ConfRCILC(2)) * CF(13), ABDN(2, 13))
ABDN(1, 13) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMemTemp(3),
CAMemTemp(2), CAMemTemp(1)), ConfRCILC(2)) * CF(13), ABDN(1, 13))
ABDN(2, 13) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(CAMemTemp(6), ConfRCILC(1)) * CF(13), ABDN(2, 13))
ABDN(1, 13) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMemTemp(3),
CAMemTemp(4)), ConfRCILC(1)) * CF(13), ABDN(1, 13))
ABDN(0, 13) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMemTemp(1), CAMemTemp(2)), ConfRCILC(1)) *
CF(13)
```

---

```
        Else

'Abundance changes if catch and RC/ILC occur but not LE                AND = min      OR = max

ABDN(4, 8) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMembership(5), CAMembership(4)), ConfRCILC(5)) *
CF(8)
ABDN(3, 8) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMembership(3), CAMembership(2)), ConfRCILC(5)) *
CF(8)
ABDN(2, 8) = WorksheetFunction.Min(CAMembership(1), ConfRCILC(5)) * CF(8)
ABDN(3, 8) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMembership(5),
CAMembership(4), CAMembership(3)), ConfRCILC(4)) * CF(8), ABDN(3, 8))
ABDN(2, 8) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMembership(2),
CAMembership(1)), ConfRCILC(4)) * CF(8), ABDN(2, 8))
ABDN(2, 8) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMembership(5),
CAMembership(4), CAMembership(3), CAMembership(2)), ConfRCILC(3)) * CF(8), ABDN(2, 8))
ABDN(1, 8) = WorksheetFunction.Min(CAMembership(1), ConfRCILC(3)) * CF(8)
ABDN(2, 8) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMembership(5),
CAMembership(4)), ConfRCILC(2)) * CF(8), ABDN(2, 8))
ABDN(1, 8) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMembership(3),
CAMembership(2), CAMembership(1)), ConfRCILC(2)) * CF(8), ABDN(1, 8))
ABDN(2, 8) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(CAMembership(5), ConfRCILC(2)) * CF(8), ABDN(2, 8))
ABDN(1, 8) = WorksheetFunction.Max(WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMembership(4),
CAMembership(3)), ConfRCILC(1)) * CF(8), ABDN(1, 8))
ABDN(0, 8) = WorksheetFunction.Min(WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMembership(2), CAMembership(1)), ConfRCILC(1)) *
CF(8)

        End If

Else    'NO RC or ILC exist             'RULE SET 1 (YES LOW EFFORT)

        If LE = 1 Then

        ABDN(3, 1) = WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMembership(5), CAMembership(6)) * CF(0)
        ABDN(2, 1) = WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMembership(4), CAMembership(6)) * CF(0)
        ABDN(1, 1) = WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMembership(2), CAMembership(3)) * CF(0)
        ABDN(0, 1) = CAMembership(1) * CF(0)


        Else    'RULES SET FOR Catch with NO LOW EFFORT

ABDN(4, 1) = CAMembership(5) * CF(1) 'If CA Is L Then ABDN L
        ABDN(3, 1) = CAMembership(5) * CF(1) 'If CA Is ML Then ABDN L
        ABDN(3, 1) = WorksheetFunction.Max(ABDN(3, 1), CAMembership(4)) * CF(1)
        ABDN(2, 1) = CAMembership(4) * CF(1)
        ABDN(2, 1) = WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMembership(3), ABDN(2, 1)) * CF(1)
         ABDN(2, 1) = WorksheetFunction.Max(CAMembership(2), ABDN(2, 1)) * CF(1)
        ABDN(1, 1) = CAMembership(2) * CF(1)
        ABDN(0, 1) = CAMembership(1) * CF(1)

        End If

        ABDN(4, 4) = LSMembership(5) * CF(4)
        ABDN(3, 4) = LSMembership(4) * CF(4)
```

```
        ABDN(2, 4) = LSMembership(3) * CF(4)
        ABDN(1, 4) = LSMembership(2) * CF(4)
        ABDN(0, 4) = LSMembership(1) * CF(4)

        ABDN(4, 3) = SSBMembership(5) * CF(3)
        ABDN(3, 3) = SSBMembership(4) * CF(3)
        ABDN(2, 3) = SSBMembership(3) * CF(3)
        ABDN(1, 3) = SSBMembership(2) * CF(3)
        ABDN(0, 3) = SSBMembership(1) * CF(3)

        ABDN(4, 5) = TFMembership(5) * CF(5)
        ABDN(3, 5) = TFMembership(4) * CF(5)
        ABDN(2, 5) = TFMembership(3) * CF(5)
        ABDN(1, 5) = TFMembership(2) * CF(5)
        ABDN(0, 5) = TFMembership(1) * CF(5)

        ABDN(4, 2) = CPUEMembership(5) * CF(2)
        ABDN(3, 2) = CPUEMembership(4) * CF(2)
        ABDN(2, 2) = CPUEMembership(3) * CF(2)
        ABDN(1, 2) = CPUEMembership(2) * CF(2)
        ABDN(0, 2) = CPUEMembership(1) * CF(2)

End If

For i = 0 To 4

FinalMembership(i) = MYCIN(ABDN(i, 0), ABDN(i, 1), ABDN(i, 2), ABDN(i, 3), ABDN(i, 4), ABDN(i, 5), ABDN(i, 8),
ABDN(i, 9), ABDN(i, 10), ABDN(i, 11), ABDN(i, 12), ABDN(i, 13))                    ' Abundance level/data type

Next i

If WorksheetFunction.Max(FinalMembership(0), FinalMembership(1), FinalMembership(2), FinalMembership(3),
FinalMembership(4)) = 0 Then

        ABDN(4, 6) = RCMembership(5) * CF(6)
        ABDN(3, 6) = RCMembership(4) * CF(6)
        ABDN(2, 6) = RCMembership(3) * CF(6)
        ABDN(1, 6) = RCMembership(2) * CF(6)
        ABDN(0, 6) = RCMembership(1) * CF(6)

        ABDN(4, 7) = ILCMembership(5) * CF(7)
        ABDN(3, 7) = ILCMembership(4) * CF(7)
        ABDN(2, 7) = ILCMembership(3) * CF(7)
        ABDN(1, 7) = ILCMembership(2) * CF(7)
        ABDN(0, 7) = ILCMembership(1) * CF(7)

For i = 0 To 4
    FinalMembership(i) = MYCIN(ABDN(i, 6), ABDN(i, 7)) ' Abundance level/data type
Next i

End If

End Sub

Sub colcol()
Rem colors sell interior according cell value
Rem color scale here entered inside subroutine to use flexibly
Rem this version conceals the cell contents by colouring same as background

Dim colscale(11)
colscale(1) = 3: colscale(2) = 46: colscale(3) = 45: colscale(4) = 44: colscale(5) = 36
colscale(6) = 20: colscale(7) = 37: colscale(8) = 41: colscale(9) = 32: colscale(10) = 25
colscale(11) = 25
```

```
For i = 3 To 17
For j = 3 To 134

vali = Worksheets("FINAL").Cells(i, j).Value
If vali > 10 Then col = Null: GoTo skip
If vali < 0 Then col = Null: GoTo skip
If vali = "" Then col = 2: GoTo skip
If vali = 0 Then col = 2: GoTo skip
If vali < 0 > 1 Then col = 3: GoTo skip
vali = Int(vali + 0.01) + 1
col = colscale(vali)
skip: Worksheets("FINAL").Cells(i, j).Interior.ColorIndex = col
Worksheets("FINAL").Cells(i, j).Font.ColorIndex = col

Next j
Next i
End Sub
```

# Appendix 9. Results from correlation analysis (Chapter 5)

| **Shrimp Results** | **No LAG** | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Nass** | **Kemano** | **Bella Coola** | **Kingcome** | **Klinaklini** | **Fraser** | **Columbia** |
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.220588 | 0.096753 | -0.333683 | -0.318015 | -0.17019 | 0.0257 | -0.51793 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.220588 | 0.093812 | -0.379291 | -0.409614 | -0.21522 | 0.022895 | -0.5252 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 0.875911 | 0.410726 | -2.354819 | -1.73901 | -1.16616 | 0.131556 | -3.54534 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 15 | 19 | 33 | 15 | 28 | 33 | 33 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.131 | 2.093 | 2.042 | 2.131 | 2.048 | 2.042 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.753 | 1.729 | 1.697 | 1.753 | 1.701 | 1.697 | 1.697 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 636 | 1391 | 9522.5 | 1075.5 | 5260 | 6956.5 | 10838 |
| D-square value (expected) | 816 | 1540 | 7140 | 816 | 4495 | 7140 | 7140 |
| Standard Deviation | 204 | 344.3545 | 1224.499898 | 204 | 834.7005 | 1224.5 | 1224.5 |
| z-Test | -0.88235 | -0.43269 | 1.945692 | 1.272059 | 0.916496 | -0.14986 | 3.020008 |
| Probability | 0.3734 | 0.66 | 0.0512 | 0.2006 | 0.3576 | 0.8808 | 0.0024 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 17 | 21 | 35 | 17 | 30 | 35 | 35 |
| COD | 0.048659 | 0.008801 | 0.143861663 | 0.1677836 | 0.04632 | 0.000524 | 0.275831 |

| **Shrimp Results** | **2 Year lag** | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Nass** | **Kemano** | **Bella Coola** | **Kingcome** | **Klinaklini** | **Fraser** | **Columbia** |
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.332143 | -0.18816 | -0.486547 | -0.011607 | -0.54105 | -0.15099 | -0.66076 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.332143 | -0.19287 | -0.54763 | -0.099304 | -0.61509 | -0.15494 | -0.66886 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 1.269637 | -0.81043 | -3.644076 | -0.359823 | -3.97783 | -0.87323 | -5.00953 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 13 | 17 | 31 | 13 | 26 | 31 | 31 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.16 | 2.11 | 2.042 | 2.16 | 2.056 | 2.042 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.771 | 1.74 | 1.697 | 1.771 | 1.706 | 1.697 | 1.697 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 374 | 1354.5 | 8895.5 | 566.5 | 5631 | 6887.5 | 9938 |
| D-square value (expected) | 560 | 1140 | 5984 | 560 | 3654 | 5984 | 5984 |
| Standard Deviation | 149.6663 | 268.7006 | 1057.831745 | 149.6663 | 703.2126 | 1057.832 | 1057.832 |
| z-Test | -1.24277 | 0.798286 | 2.752328 | 0.04343 | 2.811383 | 0.854106 | 3.737835 |
| Probability | 0.2112 | 0.4238 | 0.0058 | 0.9602 | 0.0048 | 0.3898 | 0.0002 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 15 | 19 | 33 | 15 | 28 | 33 | 33 |
| COD | 0.110319 | 0.037198 | 0.299898617 | 0.0098613 | 0.378334 | 0.024007 | 0.44737 |

| **Shrimp Results** | **3 Year lag** | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Nass** | **Kemano** | **Bella Coola** | **Kingcome** | **Klinaklini** | **Fraser** | **Columbia** |
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.557143 | -0.50044 | -0.514571 | 0.102679 | -0.52627 | -0.30269 | -0.6382 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.557143 | -0.50639 | -0.583175 | 0.025313 | -0.59959 | -0.30761 | -0.64605 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 2.419035 | -2.42129 | -3.932038 | 0.091296 | -3.82018 | -1.7707 | -4.63587 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 13 | 17 | 30 | 13 | 26 | 30 | 30 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.16 | 2.11 | 2.042 | 2.16 | 2.056 | 2.042 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.771 | 1.74 | 1.697 | 1.771 | 1.706 | 1.697 | 1.697 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 248 | 1710.5 | 8263.5 | 502.5 | 5577 | 7107.5 | 8938 |
| D-square value (expected) | 560 | 1140 | 5456 | 560 | 3654 | 5456 | 5456 |
| Standard Deviation | 149.6663 | 268.7006 | 979.926528 | 149.6663 | 703.2126 | 979.9265 | 979.9265 |
| z-Test | -2.08464 | 2.123181 | 2.865011 | -0.384188 | 2.734593 | 1.68533 | 3.553328 |
| Probability | 0.0366 | 0.0332 | 0.0042 | 0.6966 | 0.0062 | 0.091 | 0.0004 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 15 | 19 | 32 | 15 | 28 | 32 | 32 |
| COD | 0.310408 | 0.25643 | 0.340093081 | 0.0006407 | 0.359508 | 0.094623 | 0.417377 |

| **HakeB Results** | **No LAG** | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Nass** | **Kemano** | **Bella Coola** | **Kingcome** | **Klinaklini** | **Fraser** | **Columbia** |
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | -0.25692 | 0.697174 | 0.551829 | 0.347368 | 0.502252 | 0.289852 | 0.623563 |
| Correlation (corrected) | -0.26128 | 0.69572 | 0.54107 | 0.315587 | 0.487069 | 0.287867 | 0.622132 |
| t-Test (n>10) | -1.24042 | 4.542892 | 4.017918 | 1.371276 | 3.251879 | 1.87719 | 4.962516 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 21 | 22 | 39 | 17 | 34 | 39 | 39 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.08 | 2.074 | 2.042 | 2.11 | 2.042 | 2.042 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.721 | 1.717 | 1.697 | 1.74 | 1.697 | 1.697 | 1.697 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 2544 | 696.5 | 5145 | 744 | 3867.5 | 8152.5 | 4321.5 |
| D-square value (expected) | 2024 | 2300 | 11480 | 1140 | 7770 | 11480 | 11480 |
| Standard Deviation | 431.5183 | 479.5832 | 1815.147377 | 268.70058 | 1313.37 | 1815.147 | 1815.1474 |
| z-Test | 1.205048 | -3.34353 | -3.490075 | -1.473759 | -2.971364 | -1.83318 | -3.943757 |
| Probability | 0.2262 | 0.0008 | 0.0004 | 0.1388 | 0.0028 | 0.0658 | 0 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 23 | 24 | 41 | 19 | 36 | 41 | 41 |
| COD | 0.068267 | 0.484026 | 0.292756745 | 0.0995952 | 0.237236 | 0.082867 | 0.3870482 |

| HakeB Results | 2 yr LAG | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | -0.31299 | 0.716087 | 0.478239 | 0.069143 | 0.480948 | 0.285374 | 0.676215 |
| Correlation (corrected) | -0.31769 | 0.714411 | 0.464228 | 0.013149 | 0.461909 | 0.283089 | 0.674801 |
| t-Test (n>10) | -1.46046 | 4.788852 | 3.188147 | 0.0526 | 2.804575 | 1.795407 | 5.561868 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 19 | 22 | 37 | 16 | 29 | 37 | 37 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.093 | 2.074 | 2.042 | 2.12 | 2.045 | 2.042 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.729 | 1.717 | 1.697 | 1.746 | 1.699 | 1.697 | 1.697 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 2022 | 653 | 5155 | 902 | 2574.5 | 7060.5 | 3199 |
| D-square value (expected) | 1540 | 2300 | 9880 | 969 | 4960 | 9880 | 9880 |
| Standard Deviation | 344.3545 | 479.5832 | 1602.747641 | 235.01702 | 905.568 | 1602.748 | 1602.7476 |
| z-Test | 1.39972 | -3.43423 | -2.948062 | -0.285086 | -2.634258 | -1.75917 | -4.168467 |
| Probability | 0.1616 | 0.0006 | 0.0032 | 0.7718 | 0.0082 | 0.0784 | 0 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 21 | 24 | 39 | 18 | 31 | 39 | 39 |
| COD | 0.100929 | 0.510383 | 0.215507636 | 0.0001729 | 0.21336 | 0.080139 | 0.4553564 |

| HakeB Results | 3 yr LAG | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | -0.32669 | 0.731957 | 0.438779 | 0.210526 | 0.567155 | 0.096619 | 0.611062 |
| Correlation (corrected) | -0.32919 | 0.730729 | 0.422915 | 0.163264 | 0.548234 | 0.093644 | 0.609226 |
| t-Test (n>10) | -1.47908 | 5.020637 | 2.800236 | 0.661938 | 3.27764 | 0.564342 | 4.609547 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 18 | 22 | 36 | 16 | 25 | 36 | 36 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.101 | 2.074 | 2.042 | 2.12 | 2.06 | 2.042 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.734 | 1.717 | 1.697 | 1.746 | 1.708 | 1.697 | 1.697 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 1764.5 | 616.5 | 5129 | 765 | 1418 | 8256 | 3554.5 |
| D-square value (expected) | 1330 | 2300 | 9139 | 969 | 3276 | 9139 | 9139 |
| Standard Deviation | 305.1229 | 479.5832 | 1502.442345 | 235.01702 | 642.4765 | 1502.442 | 1502.4423 |
| z-Test | 1.424016 | -3.51034 | -2.668988 | -0.868022 | -2.891935 | -0.58771 | -3.716948 |
| Probability | 0.1528 | 0.0004 | 0.0076 | 0.3844 | 0.0038 | 0.5552 | 0.0002 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 20 | 24 | 38 | 18 | 27 | 38 | 38 |
| COD | 0.108367 | 0.533965 | 0.178857097 | 0.0266551 | 0.300561 | 0.008769 | 0.3711563 |

**Hake total catch results** **No LAG**

| Statistic | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.289102 | -0.28483 | -0.329034 | -0.356553 | -0.328291 | -0.03476 | -0.407927 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.288701 | -0.28897 | -0.360858 | -0.413035 | -0.366326 | -0.03685 | -0.412367 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 1.34853 | -1.38325 | -2.385188 | -1.814113 | -2.261593 | -0.2273 | -2.79029 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 20 | 21 | 38 | 16 | 33 | 38 | 38 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.086 | 2.08 | 2.042 | 2.12 | 2.042 | 2.042 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.725 | 1.721 | 1.697 | 1.746 | 1.697 | 1.697 | 1.697 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 1259 | 2600.5 | 14167.5 | 1314.5 | 9484 | 11030.5 | 15008.5 |
| D-square value (expected) | 1771 | 2024 | 10660 | 969 | 7140 | 10660 | 10660 |
| Standard Deviation | 386.4639 | 431.5183 | 1706.96612 | 235.01702 | 1224.5 | 1706.966 | 1706.9661 |
| z-Test | -1.32483 | 1.335981 | 2.054815 | 1.470106 | 1.914251 | 0.217052 | 2.547502 |
| Probability | 0.1836 | 0.1802 | 0.0394 | 0.1388 | 0.0548 | 0.8258 | 0.0108 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 22 | 23 | 40 | 18 | 35 | 40 | 40 |
| COD | 0.083348 | 0.083505 | 0.130218496 | 0.1705979 | 0.134195 | 0.001358 | 0.1700465 |

**Hake total catch results** **2 yr LAG**

| Statistic | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.190602 | -0.27989 | -0.315625 | -0.130515 | -0.397226 | -0.17436 | -0.443976 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.190297 | -0.28402 | -0.350852 | -0.186724 | -0.444543 | -0.17713 | -0.449292 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 0.82239 | -1.35743 | -2.248019 | -0.736127 | -2.763149 | -1.07987 | -3.017458 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 18 | 21 | 36 | 15 | 31 | 36 | 36 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.101 | 2.08 | 2.042 | 2.131 | 2.042 | 2.042 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.734 | 1.721 | 1.697 | 1.753 | 1.697 | 1.697 | 1.697 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 1076.5 | 2590.5 | 12023.5 | 922.5 | 8361 | 10732.5 | 13196.5 |
| D-square value (expected) | 1330 | 2024 | 9139 | 816 | 5984 | 9139 | 9139 |
| Standard Deviation | 305.1229 | 431.5183 | 1502.442345 | 204 | 1057.832 | 1502.442 | 1502.4423 |
| z-Test | -0.83081 | 1.312807 | 1.919874 | 0.522059 | 2.247049 | 1.060606 | 2.700603 |
| Probability | 0.4008 | 0.1868 | 0.0548 | 0.5962 | 0.0244 | 0.2846 | 0.0068 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 20 | 23 | 38 | 17 | 33 | 38 | 38 |
| COD | 0.036213 | 0.080665 | 0.123097126 | 0.0348659 | 0.197618 | 0.031376 | 0.2018633 |

**Hake total catch results** **3 yr LAG**

| | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.110526 | -0.43355 | -0.498815 | -0.103554 | -0.441624 | -0.28141 | -0.440671 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.110526 | -0.43817 | -0.541036 | -0.158394 | -0.487528 | -0.28446 | -0.446418 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 0.458521 | -2.23379 | -3.805966 | -0.621299 | -3.05839 | -1.7554 | -2.951469 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 17 | 21 | 35 | 15 | 30 | 35 | 35 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.11 | 2.08 | 2.042 | 2.131 | 2.042 | 2.042 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.74 | 1.721 | 1.697 | 1.753 | 1.697 | 1.697 | 1.697 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 1014 | 2901.5 | 12644 | 900.5 | 7865.5 | 10810 | 12153.5 |
| D-square value (expected) | 1140 | 2024 | 8436 | 816 | 5456 | 8436 | 8436 |
| Standard Deviation | 268.7006 | 431.5183 | 1406 | 204 | 979.9265 | 1406 | 1406 |
| z-Test | -0.46892 | 2.033518 | 2.992888 | 0.414216 | 2.458858 | 1.688478 | 2.644026 |
| Probability | 0.6384 | 0.0414 | 0.0026 | 0.6744 | 0.0138 | 0.091 | 0.008 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 19 | 23 | 37 | 17 | 32 | 37 | 37 |
| COD | 0.012216 | 0.191991 | 0.292719953 | 0.0250887 | 0.237684 | 0.080917 | 0.199289 |

**Hake CAN CA results** **No LAG**

| | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.298701 | 0.062994 | -0.163274 | -0.416409 | -0.210364 | -0.11327 | -0.512054 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.298305 | 0.059976 | -0.191093 | -0.475421 | -0.244986 | -0.11552 | -0.516824 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 1.397697 | 0.275338 | -1.200093 | -2.161595 | -1.451571 | -0.71694 | -3.721465 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 20 | 21 | 38 | 16 | 33 | 38 | 38 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.086 | 2.08 | 2.042 | 2.12 | 2.042 | 2.042 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.725 | 1.721 | 1.697 | 1.746 | 1.697 | 1.697 | 1.697 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 1242 | 1896.5 | 12400.5 | 1372.5 | 8642 | 11867.5 | 16118.5 |
| D-square value (expected) | 1771 | 2024 | 10660 | 969 | 7140 | 10660 | 10660 |
| Standard Deviation | 386.4639 | 431.5183 | 1706.96612 | 235.01702 | 1224.5 | 1706.966 | 1706.9661 |
| z-Test | -1.36882 | -0.29547 | 1.019645 | 1.716897 | 1.226623 | 0.707395 | 3.197779 |
| Probability | 0.1706 | 0.7642 | 0.3078 | 0.0854 | 0.2186 | 0.4776 | 0.0014 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 22 | 23 | 40 | 18 | 35 | 40 | 40 |
| COD | 0.088986 | 0.003597 | 0.036516535 | 0.2260251 | 0.060018 | 0.013346 | 0.267107 |

**Hake CAN CA results** **2 yr LAG**

| | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.116917 | 0.088686 | -0.017781 | -0.272672 | -0.37734 | 0.014608 | -0.418262 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.116585 | 0.08575 | -0.044952 | -0.336104 | -0.423975 | 0.012284 | -0.423483 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 0.498025 | 0.394409 | -0.269986 | -1.382129 | -2.606451 | 0.07371 | -2.804822 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 18 | 21 | 36 | 15 | 31 | 36 | 36 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.101 | 2.08 | 2.042 | 2.131 | 2.042 | 2.042 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.734 | 1.721 | 1.697 | 1.753 | 1.697 | 1.697 | 1.697 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 1174.5 | 1844.5 | 9301.5 | 1038.5 | 8242 | 9005.5 | 12961.5 |
| D-square value (expected) | 1330 | 2024 | 9139 | 816 | 5984 | 9139 | 9139 |
| Standard Deviation | 305.1229 | 431.5183 | 1502.442345 | 204 | 1057.832 | 1502.442 | 1502.4423 |
| z-Test | -0.50963 | -0.41597 | 0.108157 | 1.090686 | 2.134555 | -0.08886 | 2.544191 |
| Probability | 0.61 | 0.6744 | 0.9124 | 0.2714 | 0.0324 | 0.9282 | 0.0108 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 20 | 23 | 38 | 17 | 33 | 38 | 38 |
| COD | 0.013592 | 0.007353 | 0.002020682 | 0.1129659 | 0.179755 | 0.000151 | 0.1793379 |

**Hake CAN CA results** **3 yr LAG**

| | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | -0.12281 | -0.21863 | -0.174964 | -0.052083 | -0.421096 | 0.000474 | -0.33766 |
| Correlation (corrected) | -0.12281 | -0.22255 | -0.207978 | -0.104308 | -0.46634 | -0.0019 | -0.342996 |
| t-Test (n>10) | -0.51021 | -1.04611 | -1.257923 | -0.406199 | -2.887442 | -0.01125 | -2.160238 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 17 | 21 | 35 | 15 | 30 | 35 | 35 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.11 | 2.08 | 2.042 | 2.131 | 2.042 | 2.042 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.74 | 1.721 | 1.697 | 1.753 | 1.697 | 1.697 | 1.697 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 1280 | 2466.5 | 9912 | 858.5 | 7753.5 | 8432 | 11284.5 |
| D-square value (expected) | 1140 | 2024 | 8436 | 816 | 5456 | 8436 | 8436 |
| Standard Deviation | 268.7006 | 431.5183 | 1406 | 204 | 979.9265 | 1406 | 1406 |
| z-Test | 0.521026 | 1.025449 | 1.049787 | 0.208333 | 2.344564 | -0.00285 | 2.02596 |
| Probability | 0.5962 | 0.303 | 0.2938 | 0.8336 | 0.0188 | 0.992 | 0.0424 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 19 | 23 | 37 | 17 | 32 | 37 | 37 |
| COD | 0.015082 | 0.04953 | 0.043254848 | 0.0108802 | 0.217473 | 3.61E-06 | 0.1176463 |

| Hake US CA results | No LAG | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.225296 | -0.31052 | -0.341979 | -0.237874 | -0.326331 | 0.010178 | -0.309053 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.224859 | -0.31475 | -0.374116 | -0.28934 | -0.364308 | 0.008178 | -0.313181 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 1.032028 | -1.51959 | -2.486793 | -1.209075 | -2.247225 | 0.050413 | -2.032842 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 20 | 21 | 38 | 16 | 33 | 38 | 38 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.086 | 2.08 | 2.042 | 2.12 | 2.042 | 2.042 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.725 | 1.721 | 1.697 | 1.746 | 1.697 | 1.697 | 1.697 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 1372 | 2652.5 | 14305.5 | 1199.5 | 9470 | 10551.5 | 13954.5 |
| D-square value (expected) | 1771 | 2024 | 10660 | 969 | 7140 | 10660 | 10660 |
| Standard Deviation | 386.4639 | 431.5183 | 1706.96612 | 235.01702 | 1224.4999 | 1706.966 | 1706.9661 |
| z-Test | -1.03244 | 1.456485 | 2.13566 | 0.98078 | 1.902818 | -0.06356 | 1.930032 |
| Probability | 0.2984 | 0.1442 | 0.0324 | 0.3222 | 0.0562 | 0.9442 | 0.0524 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 22 | 23 | 40 | 18 | 35 | 40 | 40 |
| COD | 0.050562 | 0.099066 | 0.139962781 | 0.0837176 | 0.1327203 | 6.69E-05 | 0.0980823 |

| Hake US CA results | 2 yr LAG | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.183083 | -0.30904 | -0.379418 | 0.033701 | -0.283422 | -0.21616 | -0.399442 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.182775 | -0.31326 | -0.41637 | -0.014165 | -0.326839 | -0.21903 | -0.404593 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 0.788737 | -1.51163 | -2.747728 | -0.054867 | -1.925515 | -1.34689 | -2.654531 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 18 | 21 | 36 | 15 | 31 | 36 | 36 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.101 | 2.08 | 2.042 | 2.131 | 2.042 | 2.042 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.734 | 1.721 | 1.697 | 1.753 | 1.697 | 1.697 | 1.697 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 1086.5 | 2649.5 | 12606.5 | 788.5 | 7680 | 11114.5 | 12789.5 |
| D-square value (expected) | 1330 | 2024 | 9139 | 816 | 5984 | 9139 | 9139 |
| Standard Deviation | 305.1229 | 431.5183 | 1502.442345 | 204 | 1057.8317 | 1502.442 | 1502.4423 |
| z-Test | -0.79804 | 1.449533 | 2.307909 | -0.134804 | 1.60328 | 1.314859 | 2.429711 |
| Probability | 0.4238 | 0.147 | 0.0208 | 0.8886 | 0.1074 | 0.1868 | 0.015 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 20 | 23 | 38 | 17 | 33 | 38 | 38 |
| COD | 0.033407 | 0.098132 | 0.173363977 | 0.0002006 | 0.1068237 | 0.047974 | 0.1636955 |

| Hake US CA results | 3 yr LAG | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.082456 | -0.44392 | -0.564486 | -0.079044 | -0.386089 | -0.34412 | -0.398708 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.082456 | -0.44858 | -0.608574 | -0.132639 | -0.430205 | -0.34732 | -0.404288 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 0.341137 | -2.30003 | -4.537353 | -0.518286 | -2.610226 | -2.19115 | -2.615039 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 17 | 21 | 35 | 15 | 30 | 35 | 35 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.11 | 2.08 | 2.042 | 2.131 | 2.042 | 2.042 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.74 | 1.721 | 1.697 | 1.753 | 1.697 | 1.697 | 1.697 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 1046 | 2922.5 | 13198 | 880.5 | 7562.5 | 11339 | 11799.5 |
| D-square value (expected) | 1140 | 2024 | 8436 | 816 | 5456 | 8436 | 8436 |
| Standard Deviation | 268.7006 | 431.5183 | 1406 | 204 | 979.92653 | 1406 | 1406 |
| z-Test | -0.34983 | 2.082183 | 3.386913 | 0.316176 | 2.149651 | 2.064723 | 2.392248 |
| Probability | 0.7264 | 0.0366 | 0.0006 | 0.749 | 0.0316 | 0.0384 | 0.0164 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 19 | 23 | 37 | 17 | 32 | 37 | 37 |
| COD | 0.006799 | 0.201221 | 0.370362313 | 0.0175931 | 0.1850763 | 0.120628 | 0.1634488 |

| UI Results- North | No LAG | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola |
| Statistic | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | -0.03201 | 0.168696 | 0.298043 |
| Correlation (corrected) | -0.03295 | 0.165795 | 0.289697 |
| t-Test (n>10) | -0.2111 | 0.788561 | 2.324897 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 41 | 22 | 59 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.021 | 2.074 | 2.021 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.684 | 1.717 | 1.684 |
| | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 13668 | 1912 | 26548 |
| D-square value (expected) | 13244 | 2300 | 37820 |
| Standard Deviation | 2043.594 | 479.5832 | 4882.541005 |
| z-Test | 0.207478 | -0.80904 | -2.308634 |
| Probability | 0.8336 | 0.418 | 0.0208 |
| | | | |
| Observations | 43 | 24 | 61 |
| COD | 0.001086 | 0.027488 | 0.083924352 |

| **UI Results- North** | **2 yr LAG** | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **Nass** | **Kemano** | **Bella Coola** |
| Statistic | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.157186 | 0.126522 | 0.245902 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.156341 | 0.123474 | 0.238009 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 0.988507 | 0.583609 | 1.850092 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 39 | 22 | 57 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.042 | 2.074 | 2.021 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.697 | 1.717 | 1.684 |
| | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 9675.5 | 2009 | 25805.25 |
| D-square value (expected) | 11480 | 2300 | 34220 |
| Standard Deviation | 1815.147 | 479.5832 | 4493.306132 |
| z-Test | -0.99413 | -0.60678 | -1.87273 |
| Probability | 0.3174 | 0.5418 | 0.0602 |
| | | | |
| Observations | 41 | 24 | 59 |
| COD | 0.024443 | 0.015246 | 0.056648284 |

| **UI Results- North** | **3 yr LAG** | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **Nass** | **Kemano** | **Bella Coola** |
| Statistic | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.306989 | 0.137826 | 0.155157 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.30624 | 0.134818 | 0.145653 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 1.983071 | 0.638177 | 1.101714 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 38 | 22 | 56 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.042 | 2.074 | 2.021 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.697 | 1.717 | 1.684 |
| | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 7387.5 | 1983 | 27465 |
| D-square value (expected) | 10660 | 2300 | 32509 |
| Standard Deviation | 1706.966 | 479.5832 | 4305.92224 |
| z-Test | -1.91714 | -0.66099 | -1.17141 |
| Probability | 0.0548 | 0.5028 | 0.238 |
| | | | |
| Observations | 40 | 24 | 58 |
| COD | 0.093783 | 0.018176 | 0.021214796 |

| **UI Results- Central** | **No LAG** | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Kemano** | **Bella Coola** | **Klinaklini** | **Kingcome** |
| Statistic | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.06087 | 0.261779 | -0.047511 | -0.048739 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.057592 | 0.252978 | -0.068592 | -0.07631 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 0.270579 | 2.008491 | -0.500533 | -0.432936 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 22 | 59 | 53 | 32 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.074 | 2.021 | 2.021 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.717 | 1.684 | 1.684 | 1.697 |
| | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 2160 | 27919.5 | 29037 | 6864 |
| D-square value (expected) | 2300 | 37820 | 27720 | 6545 |
| Standard Deviation | 479.58315 | 4882.541005 | 3772.2142 | 1139.33826 |
| z-Test | -0.29192 | -2.027735 | 0.349132 | 0.279987 |
| Probability | 0.7642 | 0.0424 | 0.7264 | 0.7794 |
| | | | | |
| Observations | 24 | 61 | 55 | 34 |
| COD | 0.0033168 | 0.063997868 | 0.00470486 | 0.00582322 |

| **UI Results- Central** | **2 yr LAG** | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Kemano** | **Bella Coola** | **Klinaklini** | **Kingcome** |
| Statistic | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.304783 | 0.257978 | 0.071793 | 0.107286 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.302358 | 0.249528 | 0.052058 | 0.084518 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 1.487822 | 1.945436 | 0.375907 | 0.472264 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 22 | 57 | 52 | 31 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.074 | 2.021 | 2.021 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.717 | 1.684 | 1.684 | 1.697 |
| | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 1599 | 25392 | 24351.5 | 5342 |
| D-square value (expected) | 2300 | 34220 | 26235 | 5984 |
| Standard Deviation | 479.58315 | 4493.306132 | 3603.6544 | 1057.83175 |
| z-Test | -1.461686 | -1.9647 | -0.522664 | -0.606902 |
| Probability | 0.1416 | 0.0488 | 0.5962 | 0.5418 |
| | | | | |
| Observations | 24 | 59 | 54 | 33 |
| COD | 0.0914204 | 0.062264223 | 0.00271004 | 0.00714329 |

| UI Results- Central | 3 yr LAG | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Kemano** | **Bella Coola** | **Klinaklini** | **Kingcome** |
| Statistic | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.287826 | 0.153773 | 0.145803 | 0.257436 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.285186 | 0.144213 | 0.128489 | 0.238487 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 1.395596 | 1.09059 | 0.925267 | 1.36729 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 22 | 56 | 51 | 31 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.074 | 2.021 | 2.021 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.717 | 1.684 | 1.684 | 1.697 |
| | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 1638 | 27510 | 21187.5 | 4443.5 |
| D-square value (expected) | 2300 | 32509 | 24804 | 5984 |
| Standard Deviation | 479.58315 | 4305.92224 | 3439.69592 | 1057.83175 |
| z-Test | -1.380365 | -1.160959 | -1.051401 | -1.456281 |
| Probability | 0.1646 | 0.242 | 0.2892 | 0.1442 |
| | | | | |
| Observations | 24 | 58 | 53 | 33 |
| COD | 0.0813311 | 0.020797389 | 0.01650942 | 0.05687605 |

| UI Results- South | No LAG | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Bella Coola** | **Klinaklini** | **Kingcome** | **Fraser** | **Columbia** |
| Statistic | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.196444 | -0.16434 | 0.027349 | 0.11835 | 0.172528 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.186857 | -0.187794 | 0.001804 | 0.116844 | 0.170335 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 1.461007 | -1.391927 | 0.010204 | 0.903686 | 1.327769 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 59 | 53 | 32 | 59 | 59 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.021 | 2.021 | 2.042 | 2.021 | 2.021 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.684 | 1.684 | 1.697 | 1.684 | 1.684 |
| | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 30390.5 | 32275.5 | 6366 | 33344 | 31295 |
| D-square value (expected) | 37820 | 27720 | 6545 | 37820 | 37820 |
| Standard Deviation | 4882.541005 | 3772.2142 | 1139.3383 | 4882.541 | 4882.541 |
| z-Test | -1.521646 | 1.207646 | -0.157109 | -0.91674 | -1.33639 |
| Probability | 0.126 | 0.2262 | 0.8728 | 0.3576 | 0.1802 |
| | | | | | |
| Observations | 61 | 55 | 34 | 61 | 61 |
| COD | 0.034915538 | 0.03526659 | 3.254E-06 | 0.013653 | 0.029014 |

**UI Results- South** **2 year lag**

| Statistic | Bella Coola | Klinaklini | Kingcome | Fraser | Columbia |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.174313 | 0.119783 | 0.081885 | -0.21905 | 0.198758 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.164904 | 0.101097 | 0.05846 | -0.22136 | 0.197363 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 1.262278 | 0.732776 | 0.326046 | -1.71371 | 1.519953 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 57 | 52 | 31 | 57 | 57 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.021 | 2.021 | 2.042 | 2.021 | 2.021 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.684 | 1.684 | 1.697 | 1.684 | 1.684 |
| | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 28255 | 23092.5 | 5494 | 41716 | 27418.5 |
| D-square value (expected) | 34220 | 26235 | 5984 | 34220 | 34220 |
| Standard Deviation | 4493.306132 | 3603.6544 | 1057.8317 | 4493.306 | 4493.306 |
| z-Test | -1.32753 | -0.872031 | -0.463212 | 1.668259 | -1.5137 |
| Probability | 0.1836 | 0.3788 | 0.6384 | 0.095 | 0.1286 |
| | | | | | |
| Observations | 59 | 54 | 33 | 59 | 59 |
| COD | 0.027193329 | 0.0102206 | 0.0034176 | 0.048998 | 0.038952 |

**UI Results- South** **3 yr LAG**

| Statistic | Bella Coola | Klinaklini | Kingcome | Fraser | Columbia |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.109862 | 0.130745 | 0.051387 | -0.14893 | 0.195777 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.099803 | 0.113141 | 0.027089 | -0.15111 | 0.19465 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 0.750601 | 0.813208 | 0.150881 | -1.14391 | 1.485028 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 56 | 51 | 31 | 56 | 56 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.021 | 2.021 | 2.042 | 2.021 | 2.021 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.684 | 1.684 | 1.697 | 1.684 | 1.684 |
| | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 28937.5 | 21561 | 5676.5 | 37350.5 | 26144.5 |
| D-square value (expected) | 32509 | 24804 | 5984 | 32509 | 32509 |
| Standard Deviation | 4305.92224 | 3439.69592 | 1057.8317 | 4305.922 | 4305.922 |
| z-Test | -0.829439 | -0.942816 | -0.290689 | 1.124382 | -1.47808 |
| Probability | 0.4066 | 0.3422 | 0.7642 | 0.2584 | 0.1388 |
| | | | | | |
| Observations | 58 | 53 | 33 | 58 | 58 |
| COD | 0.009960639 | 0.01280089 | 0.0007338 | 0.022833 | 0.037889 |

| NOI Results | No LAG | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.16115 | -0.211522 | 0.240912 | 0.07612 | 0.006842 | 0.456224 | 0.142227 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.159356 | -0.218142 | 0.231651 | 0.05165 | -0.015317 | 0.454767 | 0.140053 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 1.008058 | -1.048428 | 1.797832 | 0.287957 | -0.110468 | 3.855124 | 1.067903 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 39 | 22 | 57 | 31 | 52 | 57 | 57 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.042 | 2.074 | 2.021 | 2.042 | 2.021 | 2.021 | 2.021 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.697 | 1.717 | 1.684 | 1.697 | 1.684 | 1.684 | 1.684 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 9630 | 2786.5 | 25976 | 5528.5 | 26055.5 | 18608 | 29353 |
| D-square value (expected) | 11480 | 2300 | 34220 | 5984 | 26235 | 34220 | 34220 |
| Standard Deviation | 1815.147 | 479.58315 | 4493.306132 | 1057.8317 | 3603.6544 | 4493.3061 | 4493.3061 |
| z-Test | -1.019201 | 1.014423 | -1.834729 | -0.430598 | -0.049811 | -3.474502 | -1.083167 |
| Probability | 0.3078 | 0.3078 | 0.0658 | 0.66 | 0.9602 | 0.0006 | 0.2758 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 41 | 24 | 59 | 33 | 54 | 59 | 59 |
| COD | 0.025394 | 0.0475859 | 0.053662186 | 0.0026677 | 0.0002346 | 0.206813 | 0.0196148 |

| NOI Results | 2 yr LAG | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.125051 | 0.147609 | 0.252965 | 0.553886 | -0.009775 | 0.158608 | 0.236097 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.123276 | 0.142764 | 0.243492 | 0.542388 | -0.031489 | 0.156284 | 0.234646 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 0.755621 | 0.676551 | 1.861819 | 3.536102 | -0.222771 | 1.173449 | 1.790158 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 37 | 22 | 55 | 30 | 50 | 55 | 55 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.042 | 2.074 | 2.021 | 2.042 | 2.021 | 2.021 | 2.021 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.697 | 1.717 | 1.684 | 1.697 | 1.684 | 1.684 | 1.684 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 8644.5 | 1960.5 | 23050.5 | 2434 | 23655 | 25962 | 23571 |
| D-square value (expected) | 9880 | 2300 | 30856 | 5456 | 23426 | 30856 | 30856 |
| Standard Deviation | 1602.748 | 479.58315 | 4123.30644 | 979.92653 | 3280.2961 | 4123.3064 | 4123.3064 |
| z-Test | -0.770864 | -0.707906 | -1.89302 | -3.083905 | 0.069811 | -1.186912 | -1.766786 |
| Probability | 0.4354 | 0.4776 | 0.0574 | 0.002 | 0.9442 | 0.234 | 0.0768 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 39 | 24 | 57 | 32 | 52 | 57 | 57 |
| COD | 0.015197 | 0.0203816 | 0.059288354 | 0.2941847 | 0.0009916 | 0.0244247 | 0.0550587 |

| NOI Results | 3 yr LAG | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.34588 | 0.26913 | 0.189833 | 0.439617 | -0.077738 | 0.082587 | 0.066388 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.344446 | 0.264655 | 0.179 | 0.4256 | -0.102299 | 0.080261 | 0.064533 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 2.201385 | 1.287238 | 1.336968 | 2.532762 | -0.719869 | 0.591705 | 0.475211 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 36 | 22 | 54 | 29 | 49 | 54 | 54 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.042 | 2.074 | 2.021 | 2.045 | 2.021 | 2.021 | 2.021 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.697 | 1.717 | 1.684 | 1.699 | 1.684 | 1.684 | 1.684 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 5978 | 1681 | 23705.5 | 2779.5 | 23818 | 26843.5 | 27317.5 |
| D-square value (expected) | 9139 | 2300 | 29260 | 4960 | 22100 | 29260 | 29260 |
| Standard Deviation | 1502.442 | 479.58315 | 3945.417595 | 905.56796 | 3125.412 | 3945.4176 | 3945.4176 |
| z-Test | -2.103908 | -1.290704 | -1.407836 | -2.407881 | 0.549688 | -0.612483 | -0.492343 |
| Probability | 0.0348 | 0.1936 | 0.1586 | 0.016 | 0.5824 | 0.5352 | 0.617 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 38 | 24 | 56 | 31 | 51 | 56 | 56 |
| COD | 0.118643 | 0.0700423 | 0.032041 | 0.1811354 | 0.0104651 | 0.0064418 | 0.0041645 |

| SST total avg Results | No LAG | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | -0.08574 | 0.071522 | -0.324557 | -0.139496 | 0.052068 | -0.38251 | -0.176341 |
| Correlation (corrected) | -0.08646 | 0.068078 | -0.339932 | -0.169482 | 0.033931 | -0.38454 | -0.183499 |
| t-Test (n>10) | -0.59497 | 0.320057 | -2.799829 | -0.972806 | 0.249484 | -3.35854 | -1.504974 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 47 | 22 | 60 | 32 | 54 | 65 | 65 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.021 | 2.074 | 2 | 2.042 | 2.021 | 2 | 2 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.684 | 1.717 | 1.671 | 1.697 | 1.684 | 1.671 | 1.671 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 21280.5 | 2135.5 | 52599.5 | 7458 | 27736.5 | 69286 | 58953.5 |
| D-square value (expected) | 19600 | 2300 | 39711 | 6545 | 29260 | 50116 | 50116 |
| Standard Deviation | 2829.016 | 479.5832 | 5084.472539 | 1139.3383 | 3945.418 | 6168.853 | 6168.8532 |
| z-Test | 0.594023 | -0.34301 | 2.534875 | 0.801342 | -0.386144 | 3.107547 | 1.4326 |
| Probability | 0.5484 | 0.7264 | 0.011 | 0.418 | 0.6966 | 0.0018 | 0.1498 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 49 | 24 | 62 | 34 | 56 | 67 | 67 |
| COD | 0.007475 | 0.004635 | 0.115553765 | 0.0287241 | 0.001151 | 0.147873 | 0.0336719 |

| SST total avg Results | 2 yr LAG | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | -0.15099 | -0.14261 | -0.307196 | -0.291138 | 0.010304 | -0.13981 | -0.182627 |
| Correlation (corrected) | -0.15195 | -0.14735 | -0.322541 | -0.325366 | -0.008639 | -0.14156 | -0.189139 |
| t-Test (n>10) | -1.03132 | -0.69875 | -2.595093 | -1.946461 | -0.063489 | -1.13506 | -1.528838 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 45 | 22 | 58 | 32 | 54 | 63 | 63 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.021 | 2.074 | 2.021 | 2.042 | 2.021 | 2 | 2 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.684 | 1.717 | 1.684 | 1.697 | 1.684 | 1.671 | 1.671 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 19907.5 | 2628 | 47046 | 8450.5 | 28958.5 | 52157.5 | 54117 |
| D-square value (expected) | 17296 | 2300 | 35990 | 6545 | 29260 | 45760 | 45760 |
| Standard Deviation | 2550.156 | 479.5832 | 4685.498906 | 1139.3383 | 3945.418 | 5720 | 5720 |
| z-Test | 1.024055 | 0.683927 | 2.359621 | 1.672462 | -0.076418 | 1.118444 | 1.461014 |
| Probability | 0.303 | 0.4902 | 0.0182 | 0.093 | 0.9362 | 0.2628 | 0.1416 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 47 | 24 | 60 | 34 | 56 | 65 | 65 |
| COD | 0.02309 | 0.021711 | 0.104032697 | 0.105863 | 7.46E-05 | 0.02004 | 0.0357736 |

| SST total avg Results | 3 yr LAG | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | -0.33787 | -0.03217 | -0.242198 | -0.251795 | 0.100068 | -0.10761 | -0.067033 |
| Correlation (corrected) | -0.33906 | -0.03646 | -0.256515 | -0.28497 | 0.082763 | -0.1094 | -0.072065 |
| t-Test (n>10) | -2.39071 | -0.1711 | -2.003692 | -1.681767 | 0.610275 | -0.86664 | -0.56892 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 44 | 22 | 57 | 32 | 54 | 62 | 62 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.021 | 2.074 | 2.021 | 2.042 | 2.021 | 2 | 2 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.684 | 1.717 | 1.684 | 1.697 | 1.684 | 1.671 | 1.671 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 21693.5 | 2374 | 42508 | 8193 | 26332 | 48380.5 | 46608 |
| D-square value (expected) | 16215 | 2300 | 34220 | 6545 | 29260 | 43680 | 43680 |
| Standard Deviation | 2417.189 | 479.5832 | 4493.306132 | 1139.3383 | 3945.418 | 5503.163 | 5503.1627 |
| z-Test | 2.266475 | 0.154301 | 1.844522 | 1.446454 | -0.742127 | 0.854145 | 0.532058 |
| Probability | 0.0232 | 0.8728 | 0.0644 | 0.147 | 0.4532 | 0.3898 | 0.5892 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 46 | 24 | 59 | 34 | 56 | 64 | 64 |
| COD | 0.114964 | 0.001329 | 0.065799945 | 0.0812079 | 0.00685 | 0.011969 | 0.0051934 |

**SST 3 mo avg Results**

| | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | -0.15245 | 0.086087 | -0.32273 | -0.35134 | -0.12936 | -0.4824 | -0.18806 |
| Correlation (corrected) | -0.15501 | 0.08049 | -0.3398 | -0.38912 | -0.15244 | -0.48618 | -0.19659 |
| t-Test (n>10) | -1.07572 | 0.37876 | -2.79864 | -2.38955 | -1.13346 | -4.48554 | -1.6165 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 47 | 22 | 60 | 32 | 54 | 65 | 65 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.021 | 2.074 | 2 | 2.042 | 2.021 | 2 | 2 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.684 | 1.717 | 1.671 | 1.697 | 1.684 | 1.671 | 1.671 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 22588 | 2102 | 52527 | 8844.5 | 33045 | 74292 | 59541 |
| D-square value (expected) | 19600 | 2300 | 39711 | 6545 | 29260 | 50116 | 50116 |
| Standard Deviation | 2829.016 | 479.5832 | 5084.473 | 1139.338 | 3945.418 | 6168.853 | 6168.853 |
| z-Test | 1.056198 | -0.41286 | 2.520615 | 2.018277 | 0.959341 | 3.919043 | 1.527837 |
| Probability | 0.2892 | 0.6744 | 0.0114 | 0.0434 | 0.337 | 0 | 0.126 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 49 | 24 | 62 | 34 | 56 | 67 | 67 |
| COD | 0.024029 | 0.006479 | 0.115467 | 0.151417 | 0.023238 | 0.236373 | 0.038648 |

**SST 3 mo avg Results** **2 yr LAG**

| | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Statistic | | | | | | | |
| Correlation (not corrected) | -0.06606 | -0.3971 | -0.27667 | -0.43789 | 0.03474 | -0.16891 | -0.08131 |
| Correlation (corrected) | -0.06772 | -0.43629 | -0.29345 | -0.47487 | 0.014964 | -0.17208 | -0.08853 |
| t-Test (n>10) | -0.45534 | -2.74282 | -2.33781 | -2.58778 | 0.109978 | -1.3865 | -0.70541 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 45 | 32 | 58 | 23 | 54 | 63 | 63 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.021 | 2.042 | 2.021 | 2.069 | 2.021 | 2 | 2 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.684 | 1.697 | 1.684 | 1.714 | 1.684 | 1.671 | 1.671 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 18438.5 | 9144 | 45947.5 | 3738.5 | 28243.5 | 53489.5 | 49480.5 |
| D-square value (expected) | 17296 | 6545 | 35990 | 2600 | 29260 | 45760 | 45760 |
| Standard Deviation | 2550.156 | 1139.338 | 4685.499 | 530.7228 | 3945.418 | 5720 | 5720 |
| z-Test | 0.448012 | 2.281149 | 2.125174 | 2.145188 | -0.25764 | 1.351311 | 0.650437 |
| Probability | 0.6528 | 0.022 | 0.0332 | 0.0316 | 0.7948 | 0.1738 | 0.5092 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 47 | 34 | 60 | 25 | 56 | 65 | 65 |
| COD | 0.004586 | 0.190345 | 0.086115 | 0.225501 | 0.000224 | 0.02961 | 0.007837 |

**SST 3 mo avg Results** **3 yr LAG**

| Statistic | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Correlation (not corrected) | -0.24875 | -0.18717 | -0.23523 | -0.49649 | 0.016405 | -0.12751 | -0.03357 |
| Correlation (corrected) | -0.25192 | -0.19418 | -0.25129 | -0.53968 | -0.00384 | -0.1307 | -0.03972 |
| t-Test (n>10) | -1.72672 | -0.92847 | -1.96011 | -3.62636 | -0.0282 | -1.03807 | -0.31296 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 44 | 22 | 57 | 32 | 54 | 62 | 62 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.021 | 2.074 | 2.021 | 2.042 | 2.021 | 2 | 2 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.684 | 1.717 | 1.684 | 1.697 | 1.684 | 1.671 | 1.671 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 20248.5 | 2730.5 | 42269.5 | 9794.5 | 28780 | 49249.5 | 45146.5 |
| D-square value (expected) | 16215 | 2300 | 34220 | 6545 | 29260 | 43680 | 43680 |
| Standard Deviation | 2417.189 | 479.5832 | 4493.306 | 1139.338 | 3945.418 | 5503.163 | 5503.163 |
| z-Test | 1.668673 | 0.897655 | 1.791443 | 2.852094 | -0.12166 | 1.012054 | 0.266483 |
| Probability | 0.095 | 0.3682 | 0.0718 | 0.0042 | 0.8966 | 0.3078 | 0.7872 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 46 | 24 | 59 | 34 | 56 | 64 | 64 |
| COD | 0.063462 | 0.037707 | 0.063148 | 0.291259 | 1.47E-05 | 0.017084 | 0.001577 |

**Seal/Sealion Results** **No LAG**

| Statistic | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Correlation (not corrected) | -0.2 | -0.00074 | -0.252658 | -0.613636 | -0.16117 | -0.09778 | -0.59146 |
| Correlation (corrected) | -0.2 | -0.01114 | -0.31151 | -0.675538 | -0.22566 | -0.09929 | -0.60027 |
| t-Test (n>10) | -0.70711 | -0.0417 | -1.795549 | -2.897281 | -1.15815 | -0.54655 | -4.11077 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 12 | 14 | 30 | 10 | 25 | 30 | 30 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.179 | 2.145 | 2.042 | 2.228 | 2.06 | 2.042 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.782 | 1.761 | 1.697 | 1.812 | 1.708 | 1.697 | 1.697 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 546 | 680.5 | 6834.5 | 461.5 | 3804 | 5989.5 | 8683 |
| D-square value (expected) | 455 | 680 | 5456 | 286 | 3276 | 5456 | 5456 |
| Standard Deviation | 126.1943 | 175.5752 | 979.926528 | 86.232245 | 642.4765 | 979.9265 | 979.9265 |
| z-Test | 0.72111 | 0.002848 | 1.406738 | 2.035202 | 0.82182 | 0.544429 | 3.293104 |
| Probability | 0.4654 | 0.992 | 0.1586 | 0.0414 | 0.4066 | 0.5824 | 0.001 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 14 | 16 | 32 | 12 | 27 | 32 | 32 |
| COD | 0.04 | 0.000124 | 0.09703848 | 0.4563516 | 0.05092 | 0.009859 | 0.360319 |

**Seal/Sealion Results** **2 Year lag**

| Statistic | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0 | -0.13824 | -0.266496 | -0.49011 | -0.40202 | -0.15735 | -0.58633 |
| Correlation (corrected) | -0.0022 | -0.14497 | -0.314154 | -0.570118 | -0.46057 | -0.16022 | -0.59555 |
| t-Test (n>10) | -0.00763 | -0.54822 | -1.812453 | -2.403893 | -2.59437 | -0.88905 | -4.06058 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 12 | 14 | 30 | 12 | 25 | 30 | 30 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.179 | 2.145 | 2.042 | 2.179 | 2.06 | 2.042 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.782 | 1.761 | 1.697 | 1.782 | 1.708 | 1.697 | 1.697 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 455 | 774 | 6910 | 678 | 4593 | 6314.5 | 8655 |
| D-square value (expected) | 455 | 680 | 5456 | 455 | 3276 | 5456 | 5456 |
| Standard Deviation | 126.1943 | 175.5752 | 979.926528 | 126.1943 | 642.4765 | 979.9265 | 979.9265 |
| z-Test | 0 | 0.535383 | 1.483785 | 1.767116 | 2.049881 | 0.876086 | 3.26453 |
| Probability | 0.992 | 0.5892 | 0.1362 | 0.0768 | 0.0404 | 0.3788 | 0.001 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 14 | 16 | 32 | 14 | 27 | 32 | 32 |
| COD | 4.85E-06 | 0.021017 | 0.098692736 | 0.3250345 | 0.212121 | 0.025671 | 0.354677 |

**Seal/Sealion Results** **3 Year lag**

| Statistic | Nass | Kemano | Bella Coola | Kingcome | Klinaklini | Fraser | Columbia |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Correlation (not corrected) | 0.095604 | -0.31765 | -0.231305 | -0.298077 | -0.46688 | -0.07286 | -0.56782 |
| Correlation (corrected) | 0.09461 | -0.32447 | -0.278111 | -0.365998 | -0.54873 | -0.07611 | -0.5778 |
| t-Test (n>10) | 0.329214 | -1.28348 | -1.585837 | -1.304384 | -3.2819 | -0.41809 | -3.87754 |
| Degrees of Freedom | 12 | 14 | 30 | 11 | 25 | 30 | 30 |
| Critical 2-sided T-value (5%) | 2.179 | 2.145 | 2.042 | 2.201 | 2.06 | 2.042 | 2.042 |
| Critical 1-sided T-value (5%) | 1.782 | 1.761 | 1.697 | 1.796 | 1.708 | 1.697 | 1.697 |
| | | | | | | | |
| D-square value (calculated) | 411.5 | 896 | 6718 | 472.5 | 4805.5 | 5853.5 | 8554 |
| D-square value (expected) | 455 | 680 | 5456 | 364 | 3276 | 5456 | 5456 |
| Standard Deviation | 126.1943 | 175.5752 | 979.926528 | 105.07775 | 642.4765 | 979.9265 | 979.9265 |
| z-Test | -0.34471 | 1.230242 | 1.287852 | 1.032569 | 2.380632 | 0.405643 | 3.161462 |
| Probability | 0.7264 | 0.215 | 0.197 | 0.2984 | 0.0168 | 0.6818 | 0.0016 |
| | | | | | | | |
| Observations | 14 | 16 | 32 | 13 | 27 | 32 | 32 |
| COD | 0.008951 | 0.105278 | 0.077345728 | 0.1339545 | 0.301108 | 0.005793 | 0.333856 |